COLLEGE LINEAR ALGEBRA

THEORY OF MATRICES

WITH APPLICATIONS

PROFESSOR MD. ABDUR RAHMAN

Table of Contents

CHAPTER ONE

CHAPTER TWO

CHAPTER THREE

CHAPTER FOUR

CHAPTER FIVE

CHAPTER SIX

CONTENTS

CHAPTEP ONE

SYSTEM OF LINEAR EQUATIONS

Articles		Pages
1.1	Introduction	1
1.2	Degenerate and non-degenerate linear equations.	4
1.3	Solution of a homogeneous system of linear equations	4
1.4	Solution of a non-homogeneous system of linear equations	5
	EXERCISES–1	29

CHAPTER TWO

DETERMINANTS

2.1	Introduction	41
2.2	Definition of determinant	41
2.3	Sarrus diagrams for determinants	42
2.3.1	Sarrus diagram for determinant of order 2	42
2.3.2	Sarrus diagram for determinant of order 3	42
2.4	Minors and cofactors	43
2.5	Fundamental properties of determinants	43
2.6	Expansion of determinant **(Leplace's expansion)**	44
2.7	Application of determinant to linear equations **(Crammer's rule)**	45
2.8	Multiplication of two determinants of finite order.	46
2.8.1	Multiplication of two determinants of the same order	47
2.8.2	Multiplication to two determinants of different orders	48
2.8.3	Multiplication theorem	49
	EXERCISES–2 (A)	71
2.9	Adjoint determinant	79
2.10	Inverse or reciprocal determinant	79
2.11	Symmetric and skew-symmetric determinants	82
2.11.1	Properties of symmetric determinant	83
2.11.2	Ortho-symmetric determinant	83

CamScanner

2.11.3 Properties of skew-symmetric determinant 84
2.12 Skew-determinant 85
2.13 Differentiation of a determinant 85

EXERCISES–2 (B) 91

CHAPTER THREE
MATRIX ALGEBRA

3.1 Introduction 93
3.2 Definition of matrix 93
3.3 Addition and scalar multiplication of matrices 95
3.4 Matrix multiplication 96
3.5 Transpose of a matrix 97
9.6 Complex conjugate (or conjugate) of a matrix 97
3.7 Conjugate transpose of a complex matrix 98
3.8 Special types of matrices with examples 98
3.9 Theorems on transpose matrix. 103
3.10 Theorems on complex conjugate of a matrix 104
3.11 Theorems on the conjugate transpose of a complex matrix 106
3.12 Theorems on symmetric and skew-symmetric matrices 107
3.13 Theorems on Hermitian and skew-Hermitian matrices 110
3.14 Theorems on idempotent matrices 113
3.15 Singular and non-singular matrices 114
3.16 Inverse matrix 115
3.17 Adjoint or adjugate matrix 116
3.18 Process of finding the inverse of a square matrix 117
3.19 Theorems on inverse matrix 117
3.20 Theorems on orthogonal matrices 119
3.21 Theorems on unitary matrices 120
3.22 Theorems on involutory matrix 122
3.23 Solution of linear equations by applying matrices 122

EXERCISES–3 142

CamScanner

CHAPTER FOUR
RANK OF A MATRIX

4.1	Necessary definitions applied in rank	153
4.2	Trace of a matrix and properties of trace	154
4.3	Definition of rank of a matrix	158
4.4	Reduction of a matrix to the normal form	162
4.5	Sylvester's law	167
4.6	Condition for consistency of a system of linear equations	167
4.7	Sweep out method and its applications	182
	EXERCISES–4	184

CHAPTER FIVE
VECTORS IN $\mathbb{R}^n$ AND C^n

5.1	Introduction to vectors	195
5.2	Euclidean n- space $\mathbb{R}^n$	195
5.3	Vector addition and scalar multiplication in $\mathbb{R}^n$	196
5.4	Basic properties of the vectors in $\mathbb{R}^n$ under vector addition and scalar multiplication	196
5.5	Dot or scalar product of two vectors in $\mathbb{R}^n$	198
5.6	Distance and norm in $\mathbb{R}^n$	198
5.7	Basic properties of dot product in $\mathbb{R}^n$	199
5.8	Cauchy-Schwartz inequality	200
5.9	Minkowski's inequatily	201
5.10	Curves in $\mathbb{R}^n$	202
5.11	Lines in $\mathbb{R}^n$	203
5.12	Spatial vectors and $\hat{i}, \hat{j}, \hat{k}$, notations in $\mathbb{R}^3$	203
5.13	Cross product of two vectors in $\mathbb{R}^3$	204
5.14	Complex numbers	204
5.15	Vectors in C^n	205
	EXERCISES–5	210

CHAPTER SIX
VECTOR SPACES

6.1	Binary operation (or composition) on a set	213
6.2	Definition of group with examples	213
6.3	Definition of ring with examples	214
6.4	Definition of field with examples	215
6.5	Field properties of real numbers	215

CamScanner

6.6 Definition of a vector space (or linear space) 216
6.7 Examples of vector space 217
6.8 Subspaces of a vector space 224
6.9 Examples of subspaces 225
6.10 Linear combination of vectors 233
6.11 Linear span of a subset of a vector space 238
6.12 Row space and column space of a matrix 244
6.13 Direct sum of subspaces. 245
EXERCISES–6(A) 246
6.14 Linear dependence and linear independence 253
EXERCISES–6(B) 271
6.15 Basis and dimension of a vector space 275
6.16 Quotient space 281
6.17 Dimension of quotient space 284
6.18 Coordinates of a vector relative to a basis. 285
6.19 Solution space of a homogeneons system of linear equations. 286
6.20 Basis and dimension for the general solution of a homogeneous linear system. 287
6.21 Procedure of finding the basis and dimension of the solution space of homogeneous linear system. 287
EXERCISES–6(C) 310

CHAPTER SEVEN
LINEAR TRASFORMATION

7.1 Introduction to linear transformation 317
7.2 Properties of linear transformations 322
7.3 Kernal and range of a linear transformation 323
7.4 Isomorphism of vector spaces 324
7.5 Rank and nullity of linear transformation 330
7.6 Singular and non-singular linear transformations 332
7.7 Projections 356
7.8 Invariance and reducibility 366
7.9 Difference between invariance and reducibility 367
7.10 Involution 367
EXERCISES–7 372

CamScanner

CHAPTER EIGHT
MATRIX REPRESENTATION

8.1 Matrix representation of a linear transformation 381
8.2 Matrix representation of a linear operator 382
EXERCISES–8 396

CHAPTER NINE
EIGENVALUES AND EIGENVECTORS

9.1 Polynomials 401
9.2 Definition of eigenvalues and eigenvectors 403
9.3 Characteristic polynomial and characteristic equation 403
9.4 Diagonalization 417
9.5 Cayley-Hamilton theorem 430
9.6 Minimal (or minimum) polynomial of a matrix 434
EXERCISES–9 436

CHAPTER TEN
LINEAR FUNCTIONALS AND DUAL SPACES

10.1 Linear functionals 451
10.2 Zero functional 451
10.3 Examples of linear functionals 452
10.4 Dual spaces 454
10.5 Dual basis 459
10.6 Second dual space 462
10.7 Reflexivity 464
10.8 Annihilators 473
10.9 Dimension of annihilator 474
10.10 Annihilator of an annihilator 476
10.11 The adjoint or the transpose of a linear transformation. 480
10.12 Properties of adjoints (or transpose) of the linear transformations (or operators) on a vector space 485
10.13 Adjoints of projections 491
EXERCISES–10 493

CHAPTER ELEVEN
INNER PRODUCT SPACES

11.1 Introducton 497
11.2 Properties of inner product in $\mathbb{R}_{n,1}$ 499
11.3 Properties of inner product in $C_{n,1}$. 499

CamScanner

11.4	Definiton of inner product space	500
11.5	Cauchy-Schwartz inequality	505
11.6	Metric space	506
11.7	Orthogonality	508
11.8	Orthonormal bases and Gram-Schmidt process	510
11.9	Gram-schmidt orthogonalization process	513
11.10	Adjoint and self-adjoint operators	521
11.11	Normal, orthogonal and unitary operators	522
11.12	Perpendicular and orthogonal projections	523
11.13	Spectral theorem	523
11.13.1	Spectral theorem for a normal operator	524
11.13.2	Spectral theorem for a self-adjoint oporator	527
	EXERCISES–11	531

CHAPTER TWELVE

BILINEAR, QUADRATIC AND HERMITIAN FORMS

12.1	Bilinear form	537
12.2	Matrices of bilinear forms	540
12.3	Criteria for a bilinear form to be symmetric and skew-symmetric.	545
12.4	Quadratic form	548
12.5	Degenerate and non-degenerate bilinear form	550
12.6	Canonical form (Reduction of quadratic form into sum of squares)	550
12.7	Index and signature of real quadratic form	552
12.8	Hermitian form	557
12.9	Triangularization of a matrix	566
12.10	Jordan canonical form	570
12.11	Procedure for reducing a matrix to Jordan canonical form	574
	EXERCISES–12	577

CHAPTER THIRTEEN

GENERALISED INVERSE OF A MATRIX

13.1	Introduction	583
13.2	Definition of generalised inverse of a matrix	583
13.3	Methods of finding g-inverses	585
13.4	Computing formulas or algorithm for g-inverse	601
13.5	Different classes of generalised inverses	606
13.6	Properties of different types of g-inverses	613
13.7	Uses or applications of g-inverses	620
13.8	Solution of linear equations using g-inverse.	621

CamScanner

13.9 Kronecker (direct) sum and product of matrices 625
13.10 On an application of Cayley-Hamilton theorem to generalized matrix inversion. 629

EXERCISES–13 631

CHAPTER FOURTEEN

APPLICATIONS OF LINEAR ALGEBRA

14.1 Applications of Linear Algebra in constructing curves and surfaces through specified points 635

EXERCISES–14(A) 648

14.2 Applications of Linear Algebra in Business and Economics 651
14.2.1 Applications of determinant **(Cramer's rule)** in Business and Economics. 651
14.2.2 Applications of matrices in Business & Economics 655
14.2.3 Applications of the system of linear equations and matrices in Business and Economics. 659
14.2.4 Application of matrices in the Leontief economic models 663
14.2.5 Hawkins–Simon conditions for the viability of the system 667
14.2.6 Application of matrices in the determination of equilibrium prices 667

EXERCISES–14(B) 676

14.3 Application of Linear Algebra in the electrical networks 684

EXERCISES–14(C) 689

CHAPTER FIFTEEN

LINEAR PROGRAMMING

15.1 Introduction 691
15.2 General linear Programming Problem 692
15.2.1 Canonical form of linear programming problem 693
15.3 Some more important definitions 696

CamScanner

15.4	Reduction of a feasible solution to a basic feasible solution.	704
15.5	Formulation of Linear Programming Problem (L. P. P.)	712
15.6	Different types of problems in the Linear Programming	713
15.6a	The deit problem	713
15.6b	The production allocation problem	714
15.6c	The transportation problem	716
15.7	Convex sets and their properties	717
15.7.1	Closure, Interior and Boundary of a convex set	720
15.8	Convex function	723
15.9	Some important theorems related to the convex set.	723
	EXERCISES–15(A)	737
15.10	Graphical method of the solution of L. P. P.	743
15.11	Simplex Method	748
15.11.1	Slack and surplus variables.	749
15.12	Reformulation of general L. P. P	750
15.13	Computational aspect of simplex method	751
15.14	Linear programming problem involving an unbounded solution	769
15.15	Artificial variable	774
15.16	Big – M method (or Penalty method)	775
15.17	Duality in Linear Programming	787
15.18	Formulation of the dual problem	787
15.19	Dual formulation procedure	788
15.20	Primal and dual problems in matrix–form	790
15.21	Some important duality theorems	791
	EXERCISES–15(B)	802
	REFERENCES	813

CamScanner

CHAPTER ONE

SYSTEM OF LINEAR EQUATIONS

1.1 Introduction

Matrix theory is more generally known as **Linear Algebra** which is originated in the study of the system of linear equations in several variables (or unknowns) and in the attempt to find general methods for their solutions. An equation in two or more variables (or unknowns) is **linear** if it contains no terms of second degree or greater, that is, if it contains no products or powers of the variables or roots of the variables. All variables occur only to the first degree. and do not appear as arguments for trigonometric, logarithmic, or exponential functions.

A straight line in the cartesian xy-plane can be represented algebraically by an equation of the form $ax + by = c$ where a, b and c are real constants (or real numbers) and x and y are variables. An equation of this kind is called a **linear equation** in two variables x and y. Similarly, $ax + by + cz + d = o$ is a **linear equation** in three variables x, y and z which represents a plane in three dimensional space. In general, an equation is called **linear** if it is of the form $a_1x_1 + a_2x_2 + \dots \dots + a_n x_n = b$ (1) where $a_1, a_2, \dots \dots, a_n$ and b are real numbers and $x_1, x_2, \dots \dots, x_n$ are n variables which are to be determined.

If b = o, then (1) is called a **homogeneous linear equation** and if b ≠ o then (1) is called a **non-homogeneous linear equation.**

Examples of linear equations.

(i) $x - y = o$ which is a homogeneous linear equation representing the straight line passing through the origin.

CamScanner

(ii) $3x + 2y = 6$ which is a non-homogeneous linear equation representing a straight line not passing through the origin.

(iii) $2x + 3y + 7z = 41$ which is a non-homogeneous linear equation representing a plane.

(iv) $x + 2y + 3z + 4t = 30$ (Non-homogeneous)

(v) $x_1 + x_2 + \dots \dots + x_n = 1$ (Non-homogeneous)

Examples of non-linear equations

(i) $x^2 + 4ay = o$

(ii) $9x^2 + 4y^2 = 36$

(iii) $xy = c$

(iv) $x^2 + y^2 + 2gx + 2fy + c = o$

(v) $ax^2 + 2hxy + by^2 = o$

(vi) $6x^2 + 13xy + 6y^2 - 5x - 5y + 1 = o$

Equation

(i) represents a parabola,

(ii) represents an ellipse,

(iii) represents a hyperbola,

(iv) represents a circle,

(v) represents a pair of straight lines passing through the origin and

(vi) represents a pair of straight lines not passing through the origin.

Let IR be the set of real numbers. Then a **solution** of the linear equation $a_1x_1 + a_2x_2 + \dots \dots + a_nx_n = b$ is any n-tuple $(\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots \dots, \alpha_n)$ of elements of IR such that the equation is satisfied when we substitute $x_1 = \alpha_1, x_2 = \alpha_2, \dots \dots, x_n = \alpha_n$. The set of all such solutions of this linear equation is called the **solution set.**

Now we consider the following two linear equations :

$$\left.\begin{aligned} a_1x + b_1y &= c_1 \\ a_2x + b_2y &= c_2 \end{aligned}\right\}$$

If we interpret x, y as coordinates in the xy-plane, then each of the above two linear equations represents a straight line and (α, β) is a solution of the above two equations if and only if the point P with coordinates α, β lies on both lines. Hence there are three possible cases : 2.

Case 1 No solu
case II Precise
case III Infinite

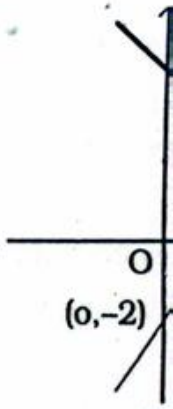
These cases are illus

Example 1. The line

since the straight line
equations are parallel.

Example 2. The linea

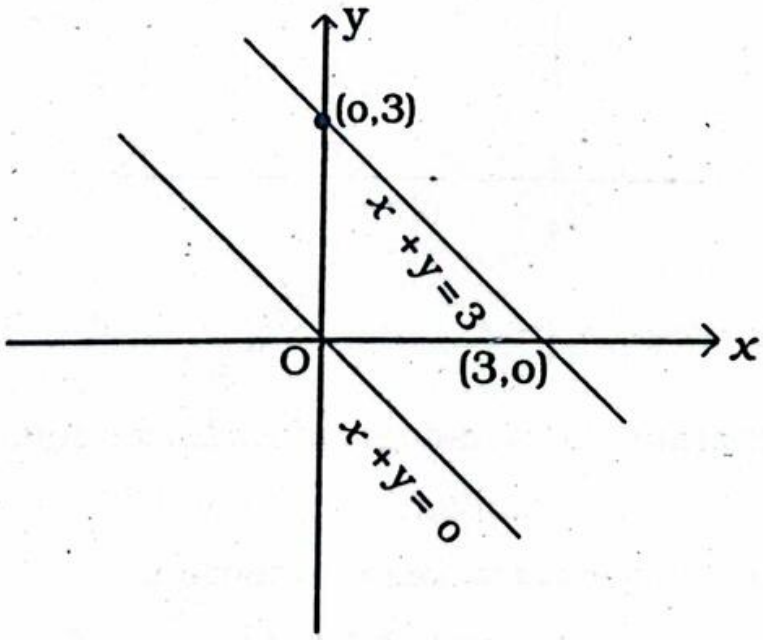
solution, since the straig
equations intersect at (3, 1



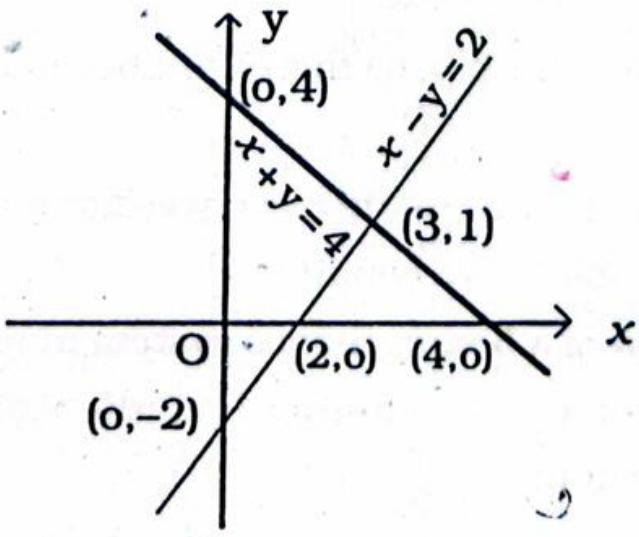
Case I No solution if the lines are parallel
case II Precisely one solution if they intersect
case III Infinitely many solutions if they coincide.

These cases are illustrated by the following examples :

Example 1. The linear system $\left.\begin{array}{l} x+y=3 \\ x+y=0 \end{array}\right\}$ has no solution, since the straight lines represented by these two linear equations are parallel.

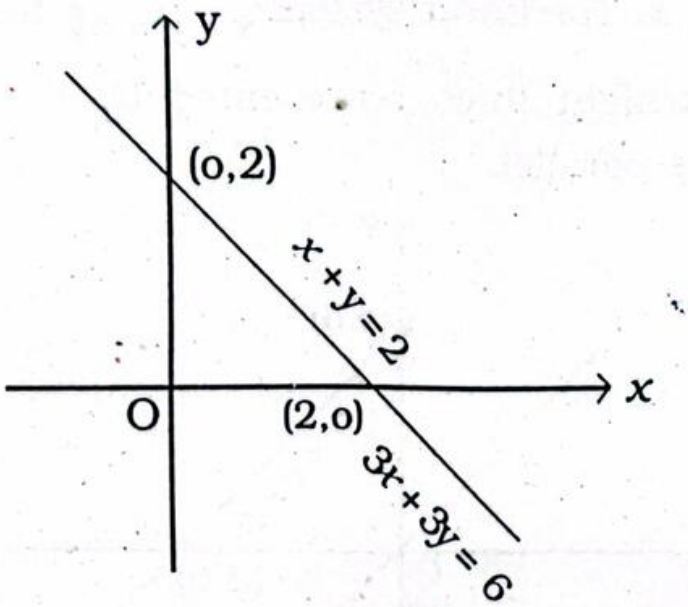


Example 2. The linear system $\left.\begin{array}{l} x+y=4 \\ x-y=2 \end{array}\right\}$ has only one solution, since the straight lines represented by these two equations intersect at (3, 1).



Example 3. The linear system $\left.\begin{array}{r} x + \ \ y = 2 \\ 3x + 3y = 6 \end{array}\right\}$

has infinitely many solutions, since the straight lines represented by these equations coincide.



1.2 Degenerate and non-degenerate linear equations.

The general linear equation $a_1x_1 + a_2x_2 + \ \ldots \ \ldots + a_nx_n = b$ is also called **non-degenerate linear equation.**

A linear equation is said to be **degenerate** if it has the form $ox_1 + ox_2 + \ldots\ldots + ox_n = b$. That is, if every coefficient of the variable is equal to zero. The solution of such a degenerate linear equation is as follows :

(i) If the constant $b \neq o$, then the above equation has no solution.

(ii) If the constant $b = o$, then every vector $u = (\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \ldots, \alpha_n)$ is a solution of the above equation.

1.3 Solution of a homogeneous system of linear equations.

A system of linear equations of the following form is called **homogeneous :**

$$\left.\begin{array}{l} a_{11}x_1 + a_{12}x_2 + \ldots + a_{1n}x_n = 0 \\ a_{21}x_1 + a_{22}x_2 + \ldots + a_{2n}x_n = 0 \\ \ldots \quad \ldots \quad \ldots \quad \ldots \\ a_{m1}x_1 + a_{m2}x_2 + \ldots + a_{mn}x_n = 0 \end{array}\right\} \quad (1)$$

Every homegeneous system of linear equations is consistent, Since $x_1 = 0, x_2 = 0, \ldots, x_n = o$ is always a solution of the system. This solution is called the **trivial solution.** If the other solutions exist, they are called the **non-trivial solutions.** Thus the above homogeneous system can always be reduced to an equivalent homogeneous system in echelon form:

$$\left.\begin{array}{l} a_{11}x_1 + a_{12}x_2 + a_{13}x_3 + \ldots + a_{1n}x_n = 0 \\ a_{2j_2}x_{j_2} + a_{2j_2+1}x_{j_2+1} + \ldots + a_{2n}x_n = 0 \\ \quad \ldots \quad \ldots \quad \ldots \\ a_{rj_r}x_{j_r} + a_{rj_r+1}x_{j_r+1} + \ldots + a_{rn}x_n = 0 \end{array}\right\} \quad (2)$$

Hence we have the following two possibilities:

(i) if r = n i. e. the number of equations is equal to the number of unknowns then the system has only the zero solution.

(ii) if r <n i. e. the number of equations is less than the number of unknowns, then the system has an infinite number of non-zero solutions.

1.4 Solution of a non-homogeneous system of linear equations :

A system of linear equations (or a set of m simultaneous linear equations) in n variables (or unknowns) $x_1, x_2, \ldots \ldots, x_n$ is a set of equations of the form

$$\left.\begin{array}{l} a_{11}x_1 + a_{12}x_2 + \ldots \ldots + a_{1n}x_n = b_1 \\ a_{21}x_1 + a_{22}x_2 + \ldots \ldots + a_{2n}x_n = b_2 \\ \ldots \quad \ldots \quad \ldots \quad \ldots \quad \ldots \quad \ldots \\ \ldots \quad \ldots \quad \ldots \quad \ldots \quad \ldots \quad \ldots \\ a_{m1}x_1 + a_{m2}x_2 + \ldots \ldots + a_{mn}x_n = b_m \end{array}\right\} \quad (1)$$

where the coefficients $a_{ij}, \left.\begin{array}{l} i = 1,2, \ldots, m \\ j = 1,2, \ldots, n \end{array}\right\}$

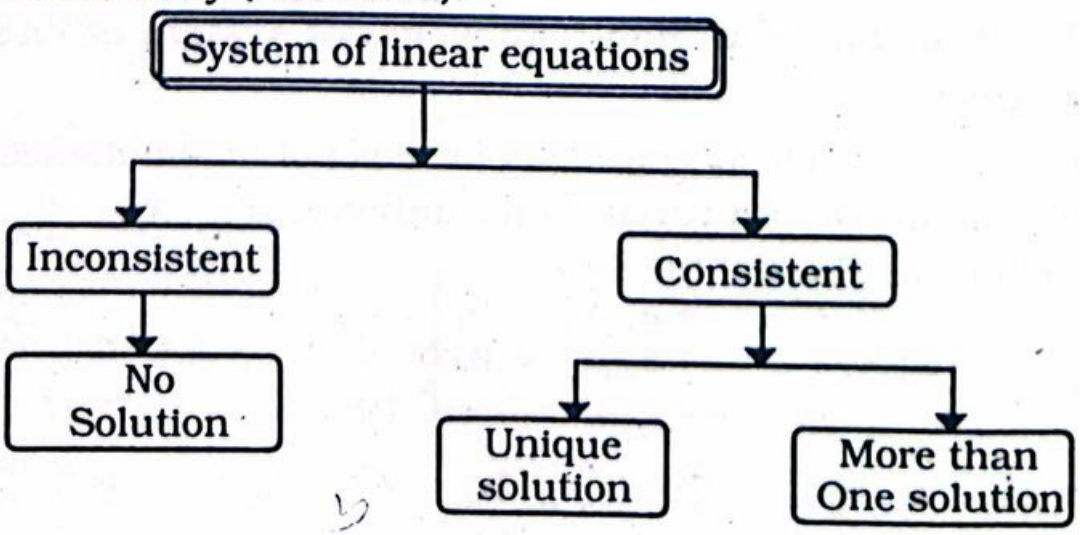
of the variables and the free terms b_i, $i = 1,2, \ldots, m$ are real numbers taken from IR, the set of real numbers. If the b_i are all zero, then the system (1) is called a **homogeneous system.** If at least one b_i is not zero, then the system (1) is called a **non-homogeneous system.** A sequence of numbers $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \ldots, \alpha_n$ is called **solution** of the system of linear equations given by (1) if $x_1 = \alpha_1, x_2 = \alpha_2, \ldots \ldots, x_n = \alpha_n$ is a solution of every equation in the system (1).

A **solution vector** of (1) is a vector x whose components constitute a solution of (1). If (1) is homogeneous, it has at least the **trivial (or zero) solution** $x_1 = 0, \ x_2 = 0, \ldots, x_n = 0$.

If $x = (\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \ldots, \alpha_n)$ is a solution of the homogeneous system and at least one $\alpha_i \neq 0$, then it is called a **non-zero** or **non-trivial solution** of the homogeneous system.

A system of linear equations is called **consistent** if it has at least one solution and **inconsistent** if it has no solution. A consistent system is called **determinate** if it has a unique solution and **indeterminate** if it has more than one solution. An indeterminate system of linear equations always has an infinite number of solutions.

Two systems of linear equations are called **equivalent** if every solution of the first system is a solution of the second and conversely (vice versa).



A straightforward method of solution, known as **Gaussian elimination method** involves a successive "Whitling away" of the variables in order to isolate their values. This method is based on the following **three elementary operations** which alter the form of the equations, but not the solutions :

(i) Interchange a pair of equations.

(ii) Multiplying an equation through by a non–zero number.

(iii) Adding a multiple of one equation to another equation

or, equivalently, if we consider a system of m linear equations in the n unknowns $x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_n$ given by (1), we can reduce it to a simpler system as follows :

Prosess 1

(i) Interchange equations so that the first unknown x_1 has a non-zero co-efficient in the first equation i, e, $a_{11} \neq 0$.

(ii) For each i>1, apply the operation $L_i \to -a_{i1}L_1 + a_{11}L_i$

That is, replace the linear equation L_i by the equation obtained by multiplying the first equation L_1 by $-a_{i1}$, and the ith equation L_i by a_{11} and then adding. We then obtain the following system which is equivalent to the system (1)

$$\left.\begin{array}{l} a_{11}x_1 + a_{12}x_2 + \ldots\ldots + a_{1n}x_n = b_1 \\ a'_{2j_2}x_{j_2} + a'_{2j_2+1}x_{j_2+1} + \ldots + a'_{2n}x_n = b'_2 \\ \ldots\ \ldots\ \ldots\ \ldots\ \ldots\ \ldots\ \ldots\ \ldots\ \ldots \\ a'_{mj_2}x_{j_2} + a'_{mj_2+1}x_{j_2+1} + \ldots + a'_{mn}x_n = b'_m \end{array}\right\} \quad (2)$$

where $a_{11} \neq 0$ and x_{j_2} denotes the first unknown with $a'_{2j_2} \neq 0$ in an equation except the first. Here i> 1 and so $x_{j_2} \neq x_1$.

It is to be noted that the system (2) of equations excluding the first equation, form a subsystem which has fewer equations and fewer unknowns than the original system (1). Repeating the above process with each new smaller subsystem

we obtain by induction that the system (1) is either **inconsistent** or is reducible to an equivalent system of the following form which is known as **echelon form :**

$$\left.\begin{array}{l} a_{11}x_1 + a_{12}x_2 + \dots \dots + a_{1n}x_n = b_1 \\ a'_{2j_2}x_{j_2} + a'_{2j_2+1}x_{j_2+1} + \dots + a'_{2n}x_n = b'_2 \\ \dots \quad \dots \quad \dots \quad \dots \quad \dots \quad \dots \\ a'_{rj_2}x_{j_2} + a'_{rj_2+1}x_{j_2+1} + \dots + a'_{rn}x_n = b'_r \end{array}\right\} \quad (3)$$

where $1 < j_2 < \dots < j_r$ and the leading co-efficients are not zero

i. e, $a_{11} \neq 0$, $a'_{2j_2} \neq 0$, ..., $a_{rj_r} \neq 0$.

Definition : In reduced echelon form the unknowns x_i which do not appear at the beginning of any equation

($i \neq 1, j_2, \dots j_r$) are known as **free variables.** We also note that

(i) if an equation $0x_1 + 0x_2 + \dots + 0x_n = b$, $b \neq 0$ occurs, then the system is **inconsistent** and has no solution.

(ii) if an equation $0x_1 + 0x_2 + \dots + 0x_n = 0$ occurs, then the equation can be deleted without affecting the solution.

Process 2 : Consider the following system of m linear equations (or set of m simultaneous linear equations) in n unknowns $x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n$

$$\left.\begin{array}{l} a_{11}x_1 + a_{12}x_2 + \dots + a_{1n}x_n = b_1 \\ a_{21}x_1 + a_{22}x_2 + \dots + a_{2n}x_n = b_2 \\ \dots \quad \dots \quad \dots \quad \dots \quad \dots \quad \dots \\ a_{m1}x_1 + a_{m2}x_2 + \dots + a_{mn}x_n = b_m \end{array}\right\} \quad (1)$$

We reduce the system (1) to a simpler system as follows :

First step Eliminations of x_1 from the second, third, ..., mth equations. We may assume that the order (rule) of the equations and the order (rule) of the unknowns in each equation such that $a_{11} \neq 0$. The variable x_1 can then be

eliminated from the second, third, ..., mth equations by subtracting

$\frac{a_{21}}{a_{11}}$ times the first equation from the second equation

$\frac{a_{31}}{a_{11}}$ times the first equation from the third equation

... ...

$\frac{a_{m1}}{a_{11}}$ times the first equation from the mth equation

This gives a new system of equations of the form

$$\left.\begin{array}{l} a_{11}x_1 + a_{12}x_2 + \ldots + a_{1n}x_n = b_1 \\ \qquad\quad c_{22}x_2 + \ldots + c_{2n}x_n = b^*_2 \\ \ldots \quad \ldots \quad \ldots \\ \quad c_{m2}x_2 + \ldots + c_{mn}x_n = b^*_m \end{array}\right\} \quad (2)$$

Any solution of the system (1) is a solution of the system (2) and conversely.

Second step Elimination of x_2 from the third, fourth, ..., mth equations in the system (2). If the co-efficients c_{22}, c_{23} ..., c_{mn}, in the system (2) are not all zero, we may assume that the order (rule) of the equations and the unknowns such that $c_{22} \neq 0$. Then we may eliminate x_2 from the third, fourth, ..., mth equations of the system (2) by subtracting

$\frac{c_{32}}{c_{22}}$ times the second equation from the third equation

$\frac{c_{42}}{c_{22}}$ times the second equation from the fourth equation

... ...

$\frac{c_{m2}}{c_{22}}$ times the second equation from the mth equation.

The further steps are now obvious. In the third step we eliminate x_3, in the fourth step we eliminate x_4 etc.

This process will terminate only when no equations are left or when the co-efficients of all the unknowns in the remaining equations are zero. We have a system of the following form :

$$\left.\begin{array}{r} a_{11}x_1 + a_{12}x_2 + \ldots + a_{1n}x_n = b_1 \\ c_{22}x_2 + \ldots + c_{2n}x_n = b'_2 \\ \ldots \quad \ldots \quad \ldots \\ k_{rs}x_r + \ldots + k_{rm}x_n = \bar{b}_r \\ o = \bar{b}_{r+1} \\ \ldots \ldots \ldots \\ o = \bar{b}_m \end{array}\right\} \quad (3)$$

where $r \leq m$. We see that there are three possible cases

(i) No solution if $r < m$ and one of the numbers $\bar{b}_{r+1}, \ldots, b_m$ is not zero.

(ii) Precisely one solution if $r = n$ and $\bar{b}_{r+1}, \ldots, \bar{b}_m$ if present are zero.

This solution is obtained by solving the nth equation of the system (3) for x_n, then the (n–1) th equation for x_{n-1} and so on up to the line.

(iii) Infinitely many solutions if $r < n$ and $\bar{b}_{r+1}, \ldots, \bar{b}_m$ if present, are zero, Then any of these solutions is obtained by choosing values at pleasure for the unknowns $x_{r+1}, \ldots, x_n$ solving the rth equation for x_r then (r–1) th equation for x_{r-1}, and so on up to the line.

Theorem : Given the following system in echelon form :

$$\begin{array}{l} a_{11}x_1 + a_{12}x_2 + a_{13}x_3 + \ldots + a_{1n}x_n = b_1 \\ \qquad a_{2j_2}x_{j_2} + a_{2j_2+1}x_{j_2+1} + \ldots + a_{2n}x_n = b_2 \\ \qquad \ldots \quad \ldots \quad \ldots \quad \ldots \\ \qquad a_{rj_r}x_{rj_r} + a_{rj_r+1}x_{j_r+1} + \ldots + a_{rn}x_n = b_r \end{array}$$

where $1 < j_2 < \ldots < j_r$ and $a_{11} \neq 0, a_{2j_2} \neq 0, \ldots, a_{rj_r} \neq 0$

Then the solution of the given system is as follows :

There are two cases

(i) if $r = n$, i. e. if there are as many equations as unknowns then the system has a unique solution.

(ii) if $r < n$ i. e. if there are fewer equations than unknowns then we can arbitrarily assign values to $n-r$ free variables and obtain a solution of the system.

Proof : The proof is done by induction on the number of equations in the system. If $r = 1$ then we get the single linear equation $a_1x_1 + a_2x_2 + \ldots + a_nx_n = b$, where $a_1 \neq 0$.

The free variables are $x_2, \ldots, x_n$. Let the free variables be assigned arbitrary values, say $x_2 = \alpha_2, x_3 = \alpha_3, \ldots, x_n = \alpha_n$.

Putting these values into the above equation and solving for x_1 we get

$$x_1 = \frac{1}{a_1}(b - a_2\alpha_2 - a_3\alpha_3 - \ldots - a_n\alpha_n).$$

These values give a solution of the equation. Since putting these values we get

$$a_1\left[\frac{1}{a_1}(b - a_2\alpha_2 - \ldots - a_n\alpha_n)\right] + a_2\alpha_2 + \ldots + a_n\alpha_n = b$$

or, $b = b$ which is a true statement.

Furthermore, if $r = n = 1$, then we have $ax = b$ where $a \neq 0$.

It is to be noted that $x = \frac{b}{a}$ is a solution, because $a\left(\frac{b}{a}\right) = b$ is true. Moreover if $x = \alpha$ is a solution, i. e. $a\alpha = b$, then $\alpha = \frac{b}{a}$. Thus the equation has a unique solution as desired.

New let us assume that $r > 1$ and the theorem is true for a system of $(r-1)$ equations.

$$a_{2j_2}x_{j_2} + a_{2j_2+1}x_{j_2+1} + \ldots + a_{2n}x_n = b_2$$

$$\ldots \quad \ldots \quad \ldots \quad \ldots$$

$$a_{rj_r}x_{rj_r} + a_{rj_r+1}x_{j_r+1} + \ldots + a_{m}x_n = b_r.$$

as a system in the unknowns $x_{j_2}, \ldots, x_n$.

Now the system is in echelon form. By induction we can arbitrarily assign values to the $(n - j_2 + 1) - (r-1)$ free variables in the reduced system to obtain a solution

(say $x_{j_2} = \alpha_{j_2}, \ldots, x_n = \alpha_n$).

As in case r = 1, these values and arbitrary values for the additional $j_2 - 2$ free variables (say $x_2 = \alpha_2, \ldots, x_{j_2-1} = \alpha_{j_2-1}$). yield a solution of the equation with

$$x_1 = \frac{1}{a_{11}}(b_1 - a_{12}\alpha_2 - \ldots - a_{1n}\alpha_n).$$

(Note that there are $(n-j_2+1)-(r-1)+(j_2-2) = n-r$ free variables). Furthermore, these values for $x_1, x_2, \ldots\ldots, x_n$ also satisfy the other equations, since in these equations, the co-efficients of $x_1, \ldots, x_{j_2-1}$ are zero.

Now if r = n then $j_2 = 2$. Thus by induction we obtain a unique solution of the subsystem and then a unique solution of the entire system. Hence the theorem is proved.

WORKED OUT EXAMPLES

Example 1. Find the non-trivial solution of the following system of homogeneous linear equations:

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x + y + 2z &= 0 \\ y + z &= 0 \\ -2x + 3y + z &= 0 \end{aligned}\right\} \quad (1)$$

Solution: Reduce the system to echelon form by the elementary operations. Interchange second and third equations of the given system (1). Then we get the equivalent system.

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x + y + 2z &= 0 \\ -2x + 3y + z &= 0 \\ y + z &= 0 \end{aligned}\right\} \quad (2)$$

Let us represent the three linear equations of the system (2) by L_1. L_2 and L_3 respectively. Reduce the system to an echelon form by the elementary operations. Eliminate x from the second equation by the operation $L_2 \to L_2 + 2L_1$

$$\begin{aligned} L_2 &: -2x + 3y + z = 0 \\ 2L_1 &: 2x + 2y + 4z = 0 \\ \hline L_2 + 2L_2 &: 5y + 5z = 0 \end{aligned}$$

Thus we obtain the equivalent system

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x + y + 2z &= 0 \\ 5y + 5z &= 0 \\ y + z &= 0 \end{aligned}\right\} \quad (3)$$

Dividing the second equation of the system (3) by 5. we get the equivalent system

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x - y + 2z &= 0 \\ y + z &= 0 \\ y + z &= 0 \end{aligned}\right\} \quad (4)$$

Since the second and third equations are identical we can disregard one of them. Hence we have the equivalent system

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x + y + 2z &= 0 \\ y + z &= 0 \end{aligned}\right\} \text{ which is in echelon form.}$$

In this echelon form there are only two equations in three unknowns, hence the system has an infinite number of non-zero solutions. The system has $3 - 2 = 1$ free variable which is z. Let $z = a$. Thus the general solution is $x = -a$, $y = -a$, $z = a$ or $(-a, -a, a)$, where a is any real number.

For particular solution, let $a = 1$. then $x = -1$, $y = -1$, $z = 1$, or $(-1, -1, 1)$ is a particular solution of the system.

Example 2. Find the solution of the following system of homogeneous linear equations:

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x_1 - x_2 - x_3 - x_4 &= 0 \\ x_1 + 3x_2 - x_3 + x_4 &= 0 \\ 3x_1 - 7x_2 - x_3 - 6x_4 &= 0 \\ 2x_1 + 2x_2 - 2x_3 &= 0 \\ 6x_1 - 2x_2 - 4x_3 - 5x_4 &= 0 \end{aligned}\right\} \quad (1)$$

Solution: Let us represent the five linear equations of the system (1) by L_1, L_2, L_3, L_4, and L_5 respectively. Reduce the system to echelon form by the elementary operations. Eliminate x_1 from the second, third, fourth and fifth equations by the operations

$L_2 \to L_2 - L_1$, $L_3 \to L_3 - 3L_1$, $L_4 \to L_4 - 2L_1$ and $L_5 \to L_5 - 6L_1$ respectively.

$$\begin{array}{rl}
L_2 - L_1: & 4x_2 + 0 + 2x_4 = 0 \\
L_3: & 3x_1 - 7x_2 - x_3 - 6x_4 = 0 \\
-3L_1: & -3x_1 + 3x_2 + 3x_3 + 3x_4 = 0 \\
\hline
L_3 - 3L_1: & -4x_2 + 2x_3 - 3x_4 = 0 \\
L_4: & 2x_1 + 2x_2 - 2x_3 = 0 \\
-2L_1: & -2x_1 + 2x_2 + 2x_3 + 2x_4 = 0 \\
\hline
L_4 - 2L_1: & 4x_2 + 0 + 2x_4 = 0 \\
L_5: & 6x_1 - 2x_2 - 4x_3 - 5x_4 = 0 \\
-6L_1: & -6x_1 + 6x_2 + 6x_3 + 6x_4 = 0 \\
\hline
L_5 - 6L_1: & 4x_2 + 2x_3 + x_4 = 0
\end{array}$$

Thus we obtain the equivalent system

$$\left.\begin{array}{r}
x_1 - x_2 - x_3 - x_4 = 0 \\
4x_2 + 2x_4 = 0 \\
-4x_2 + 2x_3 - 3x_4 = 0 \\
4x_2 + 2x_4 = 0 \\
4x_2 + 2x_3 + x_4 = 0
\end{array}\right\} \quad (2)$$

In the system (2) the second and fourth equations are identical we can disregard one of them. So, the system (2) reduces to

$$\left.\begin{array}{r}
x_1 - x_2 - x_3 - x_4 = 0 \\
4x_2 + 2x_4 = 0 \\
-4x_2 + 2x_3 - 3x_4 = 0 \\
4x_2 + 2x_3 + x_4 = 0
\end{array}\right\} \quad (3)$$

Let us represent the four linear equations of the system (3) by L'_1, L'_2, L'_3, and L_4' respectively. Eliminate x_2 from the third and fourth equations by the operations $L'_3 \to L'_3 + L'_2$, and $L'_4 \to L'_4 - L'_2$

$$L'_3 + L'_2: 2x_3 - x_4 = 0$$
$$L'_4 - L'_2: 2x_3 - x_4 = 0$$

Thus the system (3) reduces to

$$\left.\begin{array}{r}
x_1 - x_2 - x_3 - x_4 = 0 \\
4x_2 + 2x_4 = 0 \\
2x_3 - x_4 = 0 \\
2x_3 - x_4 = 0
\end{array}\right\} \quad (4)$$

In the system (4) the third and fourth equations are identical we can disregard one of them. Thus we obtain the following equivalent system

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x_1 - x_2 - x_3 - x_4 &= 0 \\ 4x_2 \qquad + 2x_4 &= 0 \\ 2x_3 - x_4 &= 0 \end{aligned}\right\} \quad (5)$$

In this echelon form there are only three equations in four unknowns, hence the system has an infinite number of solutions and $4 - 3 = 1$ free variable which is x_4. Let $x_4 = a$, where a is any real number. Then $x_3 = \frac{a}{2}$, $x_2 = -\frac{a}{2}$ and $x_1 = a$.

Thus the general solution is $x_1 = a$, $x_2 = -\frac{a}{2}$, $x_3 = \frac{a}{2}$, $x_4 = a$.

$$\text{Or, } \left(a \cdot -\frac{a}{2}, \frac{a}{2}, a\right).$$

For particular solution, let $a = 2$. Then $x_1 = 2$, $x_2 = -1$, $x_3 = 1$, $x_4 = 2$ or, $(2 - 1, 1, 2)$ is a particular solution of the given system.

Example 3. Find the solution space of the following homogeneous system of linear equations:

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x_1 + 2x_2 \qquad + 3x_4 + x_5 &= 0 \\ 2x_1 + 3x_2 \qquad + 3x_4 + x_5 &= 0 \\ x_1 + x_2 + x_3 + 2x_4 + x_5 &= 0 \\ 3x_1 + 5x_2 \qquad + 6x_4 + 2x_5 &= 0 \\ 2x_1 + 3x_2 + 2x_3 + 5x_4 + 2x_5 &= 0 \end{aligned}\right\} \quad \textbf{[D. U. P. 1987]}$$

Solution : Reduce the system to echelon form by the elementary operations. We multiply 1st equation by 2, 1, 3 and 2 and then subtract from 2nd, 3rd, 4th and 5th equations respectively. Then we have the following equivalent system :

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x_1 + 2x_2 \qquad + 3x_4 + x_5 &= 0 \\ -x_2 \qquad - 3x_4 - x_5 &= 0 \\ -x_2 + x_3 - x_4 \qquad &= 0 \\ -x_2 \qquad - 3x_4 - x_5 &= 0 \\ -x_2 + 2x_3 - x_4 \qquad &= 0 \end{aligned}\right\}$$

We subtract 2nd equation from 3rd, 4th and 5th equations. Then we have the following equivalent system :

$$\left.\begin{array}{rrrrrl} x_1 & +2x_2 & & +3x_4 & +x_5 & =0 \\ & -x_2 & & -3x_4 & -x_5 & =0 \\ & & x_3 & +2x_4 & +x_5 & =0 \\ & & & 0+0 & +0 & =0 \\ & & 2x_3 & +2x_4 & +x_5 & =0 \end{array}\right\}$$

$$\Rightarrow \left.\begin{array}{rrrrl} x_1 + 2x_2 & + 3x_4 & + x_5 & = 0 \\ -x_2 & - 3x_4 & - x_5 & = 0 \\ x_3 & + 2x_4 & + x_5 & = 0 \\ 2x_3 & + 2x_4 & + x_5 & = 0 \end{array}\right\}$$

We multiply 3rd equation by 2 and then subtract from 4th equation. Then we have the following equivalent system :

$$\left.\begin{array}{rrrrl} x_1 + 2x_2 & + 3x_4 & + x_5 & = 0 \\ -x_2 & - 3x_4 & - x_5 & = 0 \\ x_3 & + 2x_4 & + x_5 & = 0 \\ & - 2x_4 & - x_5 & = 0 \end{array}\right\}$$

This system is in echelon form having four equations in five unknowns. So the system has $5 - 4 = 1$ free variable which is x_5 and it has non-zero solution.

Let $x_5 = 2a$ where a is any real number. Putting $x_5 = 2a$ in the 4th equation we get $-2x_4 - 2a = 0$, that is, $x_4 = -a$. Putting $x_4 = -a$ and $x_5 = 2a$ in the 2nd & 3rd equations we get $x_2 = a$ and $x_3 = 0$. Finally putting $x_2 = a$, $x_4 = -a$ and $x_5 = 2a$ in the 1st equation, we get

$x_1 + 2a - 3a + 2a = 0$, i.e $x_1 = -a$.

Hence the solution space of the given system is

$W = \{(-a, a, o, -a, 2a) : a \in \mathbb{R}\}$.

Example 4. Solve the following system of linear equations :

$$\left.\begin{array}{rrrl} x_1 - 2x_2 + 3x_3 & = & 7 \\ 2x_1 + x_2 - x_3 & = & 1 \\ x_1 - x_2 - x_3 & = & -6 \end{array}\right\} \quad (1)$$

Let us represent the three linear equations of the system (1) by L_1, L_2 and L_3 respectively. Reduce the system to echelon form by the elementary operations, Eliminate x_1 from the second and third equations by the following operations :

$L_2 \to -2L_1 + L_2$ and $L_3 \to -1.L_1 + L_3$.

$$\begin{array}{lrl}
-2L_1 : & -2x_1 + 4x_2 - 6x_3 & = -14 \\
L_2 : & 2x_1 + x_2 - x_3 & = 1 \\
\hline
-2L_1 + L_2 : & 5x_2 - 7x_3 & = -13 \\
-1.L_1 : & -x_1 + 2x_2 - 3x_3 & = -7 \\
L_3 : & x_1 - x_2 - x_3 & = -6 \\
\hline
-1.L_1 + L_3 : & x_2 - 4x_3 & = -13
\end{array}$$

Thus we obtain the equivalent system (with the same solutions as the system (1))

$$\left.\begin{array}{r}
x_1 - 2x_2 + 3x_3 = 7 \\
5x_2 - 7x_3 = -13 \\
x_2 - 4x_3 = -13
\end{array}\right\} \quad (2)$$

Interchange second and third equations. Then we have the equivalent system

$$\left.\begin{array}{r}
x_1 - 2x_2 + 3x_3 = 7 \\
x_2 - 4x_3 = -13 \\
5x_2 - 7x_3 = -13
\end{array}\right\} \quad (3)$$

Let us represent the three linear equations of the new system (3) by L'_1, L'_2 and L'_3 respectively. Eliminate x_2 from the third equation by the operation $L'_3 \to L'_3 - 5L'_2$

$$\begin{array}{lrl}
L'_3 : & 5x_2 - 7x_3 & = -13 \\
-5L'_2 : & -5x_2 + 20x_3 & = 65 \\
\hline
L'_3 - 5L'_2 : & 13x_3 & = 52
\end{array}$$

Thus we obtain another equivalent system (with the same solutions as the system (1))

$$\left.\begin{array}{r}
x_1 - 2x_2 + 3x_3 = 7 \\
x_2 - 4x_3 = -13 \\
13x_3 = 52
\end{array}\right\} \quad (4)$$

CamScanner

Multiplying the third equation of the system (4) by $\frac{1}{13}$, we get the equivalent system

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x_1 - 2x_2 + 3x_3 &= 7 \\ x_2 - 4x_3 &= -13 \\ x_3 &= 4 \end{aligned}\right\} \quad (5)$$ which is in echelon form.

Substituting $x_3 = 4$ in the second equation of (5) we get $x_2 = 3$. Again, substituting $x_2 = 3$, $x_3 = 4$ in the first equation of the system (5), we get $x_1 = 1$.

Thus $x_1 = 1$, $x_2 = 3$, $x_3 = 4$ or, in other words, the 3 – tuple (1, 3, 4) is the unique solution of the given system.

Example 5. Solve the following system of linear equations:

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x_1 + 2x_2 - x_3 &= 2 \\ 2x_1 + x_2 + x_3 &= 1 \\ x_1 + 5x_2 - 4x_3 &= 5 \end{aligned}\right\} \quad (1)$$

Let us represent the three linear equations of the system (1) by L_1, L_2 and L_3 respectively, Reduce the system to echelon form by the elementary operations. Eliminate x_1 from the second and the third equations by the following operations :

$L_2 \to -2L_1 + L_2$ and $L_3 \to -1.L_1 + L_3$.

$$\begin{array}{rl} -2L_1 : & -2x_1 - 4x_2 + 2x_3 = -4 \\ L_2 : & 2x_1 + x_2 + x_3 = 1 \\ \hline -2L_1 + L_2 : & -3x_2 + 3x_3 = -3 \\ & \text{or, } x_2 - x_3 = 1 \\ -1L_1 : & -x_1 - 2x_2 + x_3 = -2 \\ L_3 : & x_1 + 5x_2 - 4x_3 = 5 \\ \hline -1.L_1 + L_3 : & 3x_2 - 3x_3 = 3 \\ & \text{or, } x_2 - x_3 = 1 \end{array}$$

Thus we obtain the following equivalent system of linear equations with the same solutions as the system (1) :

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x_1 + 2x_2 - x_3 &= 2 \\ x_2 - x_3 &= 1 \\ x_2 - x_3 &= 1 \end{aligned}\right\} \quad (2)$$

CamScanner

Since the second and the third equations of the new system (2) are identical, we can disregard any one of them. Hence we can simply write.

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x_1 + 2x_2 - x_3 &= 2 \\ x_2 - x_3 &= 1 \end{aligned}\right\} \quad (3)$$

This system (3) is in echelon form and has two equations in three unknowns and so it has 3–2 = 1 free variable which is x_3 and hence it has an infinite number of solutions.

Let x_3 = a (where a is arbitrary real number), then $x_2 = 1 + a$ and $x_1 = -a$, Thus the general solution is $x_1 = -a$, $x_2 = 1 + a$, $x_3 = a$, where a is any real number. Now a particular solution can be obtained by giving any value for a. Let a =1, then $x_1 = -1$, $x_2 = 2$, $x_3 = 1$ or, in other words, the 3-tuple (–1, 2, 1) is a particular solution of the given system.

Example 6. Solve the following system of linear equations:

$$\left.\begin{aligned} 3x_1 - x_2 + x_3 &= -2 \\ x_1 + 5x_2 + 2x_3 &= 6 \\ 2x_1 + 3x_2 + x_3 &= 0 \end{aligned}\right\}$$

Solution : Reduce the system to echelon form by the elementary operations. Interchange first and second equations. Then we obtain the equivalent system

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x_1 + 5x_2 + 2x_3 &= 6 \\ 3x_1 - x_2 + x_3 &= -2 \\ 2x_1 + 3x_2 + x_3 &= 0 \end{aligned}\right\}$$

We multiply first equation by 3 and 2 and then subtract from the second and third equations respectively. Then we get the equivalent system

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x_1 + 5x_2 + 2x_3 &= 6 \\ -16x_2 - 5x_3 &= -20 \\ -7x_2 - 3x_3 &= -12 \end{aligned}\right\}$$

We multiply second equation by $-\frac{7}{16}$ and then add with the third equation, Then we obtain equivalent system

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x_1 + 5x_2 + 2x_3 &= 6 \\ -16x_2 - 5x_3 &= -20 \\ -\frac{13}{16}x_3 &= -\frac{13}{4} \end{aligned}\right\}$$

This system is in echelon form and has three equations in three unknowns. So the system has a unique solution. From the third equation we have $x_3 = 4$. Putting $x_3 = 4$ in the second equation, we get $x_2 = 0$. Again putting $x_2 = 0$ and $x_3 = 4$ in the first equation, we get $x_1 = -2$.

Thus $x_1 = -2$, $x_2 = 0$, $x_3 = 4$ or, in other words, the 3-tuple $(-2, 0, 4)$ is the unique solution of the given system.

Example 7. Prove that the following system of linear equations is inconsistent :

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x_1 + 2x_2 - 3x_3 &= -1 \\ 5x_1 + 3x_2 - 4x_3 &= 2 \\ 3x_1 - x_2 + 2x_3 &= 7 \end{aligned}\right\}$$

Proof : Reduce the system to echelon form by elementary operations. We multiply first equation by 5 and 3 and then subtract from the second and third equations respectively. Then we obtain the equivalent system

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x_1 + 2x_2 - 3x_3 &= -1 \\ -7x_2 + 11x_3 &= 7 \\ -7x_2 + 11x_3 &= 10 \end{aligned}\right\}$$

We subtract second equation from the third equation. Then we get the equivalent system

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x_1 + 2x_2 - 3x_3 &= -1 \\ -7x_1 \qquad + 11x_3 &= 7 \\ 0 + 0 &= 3 \end{aligned}\right\}$$

or, equivalently, $\left.\begin{aligned} x_1 + 2x_2 - 3x_3 &= -1 \\ -7x_2 + 11x_3 &= 7 \\ 0 &= 3 \end{aligned}\right\}$

Thus the given system has been reduced to an echelon form and contains an equation of the form $0 = 3$ (which is not true). Hence the given system is inconsistent, i. e the system has no solution.

Example 8. Solve the following system of linear equations:

$$\left.\begin{aligned} 2x_1 + 3x_2 + 5x_3 + x_4 &= 3 \\ 3x_1 + 4x_2 + 2x_3 + 3x_4 &= -2 \\ x_1 + 2x_2 + 8x_3 - x_4 &= 8 \\ 7x_1 + 9x_2 + x_3 + 8x_4 &= 0 \end{aligned}\right\} \quad (1)$$

Solution : Reduce the system to echelon form by the elementary operations. Interchange the first and third linear equations of the system (1). Then we have the equivalent system

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x_1 + 2x_2 + 8x_3 - x_4 &= 8 \\ 3x_1 + 4x_2 + 2x_3 + 3x_4 &= -2 \\ 2x_1 + 3x_2 + 5x_3 + x_4 &= 3 \\ 7x_1 + 9x_2 + x_3 + 8x_4 &= 0 \end{aligned}\right\} \quad (2)$$

Let us represent the four linear equations of the system (2) by L_1, L_2, L_3 and L_4 respectively. Reduce the system to echelon form by the elementary operations. Eliminate x_1 from the second, third and fourth linear equations by the operations

$L_2 \to L_2 - 3L_1$, $L_3 \to L_3 - 2L_1$ and $L_4 \to L_4 - 7L_1$.

$$\begin{aligned} L_2 &: 3x_1 + 4x_2 + 2x_3 + 3x_4 &= -2 \\ -3L_1 &: -3x_1 - 6x_2 - 24x_3 + 3x_4 &= -24 \\ \hline L_2 - 3L_1 &: -2x_2 - 22x_3 + 6x_4 &= -26 \\ L_3 &: 2x_1 + 3x_2 + 5x_3 + x_4 &= 3 \\ -2L_1 &: -2x_1 - 4x_2 - 16x_3 + 2x_4 &= -16 \\ \hline L_3 - 2L_1 &: -x_2 - 11x_3 + 3x_4 &= -13 \\ L_4 &: 7x_1 + 9x_2 + x_3 + 8x_4 &= 0 \\ -7L_1 &: -7x_1 - 14x_2 - 56x_3 + 7x_4 &= -56 \\ \hline L_4 - 7L_1 &: -5x_2 - 55x_3 + 15x_4 &= -56 \end{aligned}$$

Thus we obtain the equivalent system

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x_1 + 2x_2 + 8x_3 - x_4 &= 8 \\ -2x_2 - 22x_3 + 6x_4 &= -26 \\ -x_2 - 11x_3 + 3x_4 &= -13 \\ -5x_2 - 55x_3 + 15x_4 &= -56 \end{aligned}\right\} \quad (3)$$

Divide the second linear equation of the system (3) by –2. Then we have the equivalent system

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x_1 + 2x_2 + 8x_3 - x_4 &= 8 \\ x_2 + 11x_3 - 3x_4 &= 13 \\ -x_2 - 11x_3 + 3x_4 &= -13 \\ -5x_2 - 55x_3 + 15x_4 &= -56 \end{aligned}\right\} \quad (4)$$

Let us respresent the four linear equations of the system (4) by L'_1, L'_2, L'_3 and L'_4 respectively.

Apply the operations $L'_3 \to L'_3 + L'_2$ and $L'_4 \to L'_4 + 5L'_2$

$$\begin{aligned}
L'_3 : -x_2 - 11x_3 + 3x_4 &= -13 \\
L'_2 : \ x_2 + 11x_3 - 3x_4 &= 13 \\
\hline
L'_3 + L'_2 : 0 + 0 + 0 &= 0 \\
\text{i. e.} \qquad 0 &= 0 \\
L_4 : -5x_2 - 55x_3 + 15x_4 &= -56 \\
5L'_2 : 5x_2 + 55x_3 - 15x_4 &= 65 \\
\hline
L'_4 + 5L_2' : \ 0 + 0 + 0 &= 9 \\
\text{i. e. } 0 &= 9.
\end{aligned}$$

Thus we obtain the equivalent system

$$\left.\begin{aligned}
x_1 + 2x_2 + 8x_3 - x_4 &= 8 \\
x_2 + 11x_3 - 3x_4 &= 13 \\
0 &= 0 \\
0 &= 9
\end{aligned}\right\} \quad (5)$$

Divide the fourth equation of the system (5) by 9 and interchange it with the third equation we get the new system.

$$\left.\begin{aligned}
x_1 + 2x_2 + 8x_3 - x_4 &= 8 \\
x_2 + 11x_3 - 3x_4 &= 13 \\
0 &= 1 \\
0 &= 0
\end{aligned}\right\} \quad (6)$$

The given system has been reduced to echelon form and contains an equation of the form 0 = 1 which is not true; hence the given system is inconsistent i.e the system has no solution.

Example 9. Express the following system of linear equations in echelon form and solve it:

$$\left.\begin{aligned}
x_1 - x_2 + x_3 - x_4 + x_5 &= 1 \\
2x_1 - x_2 + 3x_3 + 4x_5 &= 2 \\
3x_1 - 2x_2 + 2x_3 + x_4 + x_5 &= 1 \\
x_1 + x_3 + 2x_4 + x_5 &= 0
\end{aligned}\right\} \quad (1)$$

Solution : Let us represent the four linear equations of the given system (1) by L_1, L_2, L_3 and L_4 respectively. Reduce the system to echelon form by the elementary operations. Eliminate x_1 from the second, third and fourth linear equations by the operations

$L_2 \to L_2 - 2L_1$, $L_3 \to L_3 - 3L_1$ and $L_4 \to L_4 - L_1$ respectively.

$$\begin{array}{lrl}
L_2 : & 2x_1 - x_2 + 3x_3 + 4x_5 & = 2 \\
-2L_1 : & -2x_1 + 2x_2 - 2x_3 + 2x_4 - 2x_5 & = -2 \\
\hline
L_2 - 2L_1 : & x_2 + x_3 + 2x_4 + 2x_5 & = 0 \\
L_3 : & 3x_1 - 2x_2 + 2x_3 + x_4 + x_5 & = 1 \\
-3L_1 : & -3x_1 + 3x_2 - 3x_3 + 3x_4 - 3x_5 & = -3 \\
\hline
L_3 - 3L_1 : & x_2 - x_3 + 4x_4 - 2x_5 & = -2 \\
L_4 - L_1 : & x_2 + 0 + 3x_4 + 0 & = -1.
\end{array}$$

Thus we obtain the following equivalent system (with the same solutions as the system (1) :

$$\left.\begin{array}{l}
x_1 - x_2 + x_3 - x_4 + x_5 = 1 \\
x_2 + x_3 + 2x_4 + 2x_5 = 0 \\
x_2 - x_3 + 4x_4 - 2x_5 = -2 \\
x_2 + 3x_4 = -1
\end{array}\right\} \quad (2)$$

Let us represent the four linear equations of the system (2) by L_1', L_2', L_3', and L_4' respectively. Eliminate x_2 from the third and the fourth linear equations by the operations $L_3' \to L_3' - L_2'$ and $L'_4 \to L'_4 - L'_2$

$$L'_3 - L'_2 : -2x_3 + 2x_4 - 4x_5 = -2$$

$$L'_4 - L'_2 : -x_3 + x_4 - 2x_5 = -1$$

Thus the system (2) reduces to

$$\left.\begin{array}{l}
x_1 - x_2 + x_3 - x_4 + x_5 = 1 \\
x_2 + x_3 + 2x_4 - 2x_5 = 0 \\
-2x_3 + 2x_4 - 4x_5 = -2 \\
-x_3 + x_4 - 2x_5 = -1
\end{array}\right\} \quad (3)$$

Dividing the third equation of the system (3) by 2 we get $-x_3 + x_4 - 2x_5 = -1$, which is identical with the fourth equation. So we can disregard one of them.

Hence the system (3) reduces to

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x_1 - x_2 + x_3 - x_4 + x_5 &= 1 \\ x_2 + x_3 + 2x_4 + 2x_5 &= 0 \\ -x_3 + x_4 - 2x_5 &= -1 \end{aligned}\right\} \quad (4)$$

Multiplying the third equation of the system (4) by -1 we get

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x_1 - x_2 + x_3 - x_4 + x_5 &= 1 \\ x_2 + x_3 + 2x_4 + 2x_5 &= 0 \\ x_3 - x_4 + 2x_5 &= 1 \end{aligned}\right\} \quad (5)$$

Now the system is in echelon form and there are only three equations in the five unknowns; hence the system has an infinite number of solutions and $5 - 3 = 2$ free variables. Since the three equations begin with the three unknowns x_1, x_2 and x_3 repectively, the other two unknowns x_4 and x_5 are free variables which may have any real values desired. To find the general solution let us say $x_4 = a$, and $x_5 = b$ where a and b are any real numbers. Putting these values in the third equation of the system (5) we get $x_3 = 1 + a - 2b$. Putting the values of x_3, x_4 and x_5 in the second equation we get

$$x_2 + 1 + a - 2b + 2a + 2b = 0$$

$$\text{or, } x_2 = -(1 + 3a)$$

Again, putting the values of x_2, x_3, x_4 and x_5 in the first equation of the system (5) we get

$$x_1 + 1 + 3a + 1 + a - 2b - a + b = 1$$

$$\text{or, } x_1 = -1 - 3a + b.$$

Hence the general solution is $x_1 = -1 - 3a + b$, $x_2 = -(1 + 3a)$, $x_3 = 1 + a - 2b$, $x_4 = a$, $x_5 = b$ where a and b are any real numbers.

CamScanner

Example 10. Determine the values of λ so that the following linear system in three variables x, y and z has (i) a unique soloution (ii) more than one solution (iii) no solution:

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x + y - z &= 1 \\ 2x + 3y + \lambda z &= 3 \\ x + \lambda y + 3z &= 2 \end{aligned}\right\} \quad \textbf{[D. U. H. 1987]}$$

Solution : Reduce the system to echelon form by elementary operations. We multiply first equation by 2 and 1 and then substract from the second and the third equations respectively. Then we obtain the equivalent system

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x + y \qquad - z &= 1 \\ y + (\lambda + 2)z &= 1 \\ (\lambda - 1)y + 4z &= 1 \end{aligned}\right\}$$

We multiply second equation by $(\lambda - 1)$ and then substract from the third equation. Then we obtain the equivalent system

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x \quad + y \qquad - z &= 1 \\ y + (\lambda + 2)z &= 1 \\ \{4 - (\lambda - 1)(\lambda + 2)\}z &= 2 - \lambda \end{aligned}\right\}$$

$$\text{or,} \quad \left.\begin{aligned} x + y \qquad - z &= 1 \\ y + (\lambda + 2)z &= 1 \\ (6 - \lambda - \lambda^2)\, z &= 2 - \lambda \end{aligned}\right\}$$

$$\text{or,} \quad \left.\begin{aligned} x + y \qquad - z &= 1 \\ y + (\lambda + 2)\, z &= 1 \\ (3 + \lambda)\,(2 - \lambda)\, z &= 2 - \lambda \end{aligned}\right\}$$

This system is in echelon form. It has a unique solution if the coefficient of z in the thrid equation is non-zero i. e. if $\lambda \neq 2$ and $\lambda \neq -3$. In case $\lambda = 2$ third equation is $0 = 0$ which is true and the system has more than one solution.

In case $\lambda = -3$, the third equation is $0 = 5$ which is not true and hence the system has no solution.

Example 11. For what values of λ and μ the following system of linear equations has (i) no solution

(ii) more than one solution (iii) a unique solution :

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x + y + z &= 6 \\ x + 2y + 3z &= 10 \\ x + 2y + \lambda z &= \mu \end{aligned}\right\}$$ **[D. U. H 1980; D. U. H (Stat) 1982]**

Solution: Reduce the given system to echelon form by the elementary operations. We subtract 1st equation from 2nd and 3rd equations. Then we have the equivalent system

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x + y \quad + z &= 6 \\ y \quad + 2z &= 4 \\ y + (\lambda - 1) z &= \mu - 6 \end{aligned}\right\}$$

We subtract 2nd equation from 3rd equation. Then we have the equivalent system

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x + y + z &= 6 \\ y + 2z &= 4 \\ (\lambda - 3) z &= \mu - 10 \end{aligned}\right\} \quad (*)$$

Now from the last system (✯) we have the following three cases;

(i) If $\lambda = 3$ and $\mu \neq 10$ then the 3rd equation of (✯) is of the form $o = a$ where $a = \mu - 10 \neq 0$ which implies that o is equal to a non-zero real number which is not true. Thus we conclude that for $\lambda = 3$ and $\mu \neq 10$, the given system has no solution.

(ii) If $\lambda = 3$ and $\mu = 10$, then the 3rd equation of (✯) vanishes & the system will be in echelon form having two equations in three unknows. so it has $3 - 2 = 1$ free variable which is z and

hence for $\lambda = 3$ and $\mu = 10$, the given system will have more than one solution.

(iii) For a unique solution the coefficient of z in the 3rd equation must be non-zero i.e $\lambda \neq 3$. and μ may have any value. Thus for $\lambda \neq 3$ and μ arbitrary the given system has a unique solution.

Example 12. For what values of λ, the following linear equations have a solution and solve them completely in each case :

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x + y + z &= 1 \\ x + 2y + 4z &= \lambda \\ x + 4y + 10z &= \lambda^2 \end{aligned}\right\}$$

Solution: The given system of linear equations is

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x + y + z &= 1 \\ x + 2y + 4z &= \lambda \\ x + 4y + 10z &= \lambda^2 \end{aligned}\right\}$$

Reduce the given system to echelon form by the elementary operations. We subtract 1st equation from 2nd & 3rd equations respectively. Then we have the equivalent system

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x + y + z &= 1 \\ y + 3z &= \lambda - 1 \\ 3y + 9z &= \lambda^2 - 1 \end{aligned}\right\}$$

We multiply 2nd equation by 3 and then subtract from the 3rd equation. Then we have the equivalent system

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x + y + z &= 1 \\ y + 3z &= \lambda - 1 \\ o + o &= \lambda^2 - 3\lambda + 2 \end{aligned}\right\} \Rightarrow \left.\begin{aligned} x + y + z &= 1 \\ y + 3z &= \lambda - 1 \\ o &= \lambda^2 - 3\lambda + 2 \end{aligned}\right\} \quad (*)$$

If $\lambda^2 - 3\lambda + 2 \neq o$, the given system will be inconsistent and if $\lambda^2 - 3\lambda + 2 = o$, the above system will be in echelon form

having two equations in three unknowns. So the system has $3 - 2 = 1$ free variable which is z. So the system has non – zero

solution for $\lambda^2 - 3\lambda + 2 = 0$

$$\text{that is, } (\lambda - 1)(\lambda - 2) = 0$$

$$\Rightarrow \lambda = 1 \text{ or, } \lambda = 2$$

Thus the given system is consistent for $\lambda = 1$ and $\lambda = 2$.

Case 1 when $\lambda = 1$

The system (*) will be

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x + y + z &= 1 \\ y + 3z &= 0 \end{aligned}\right\}$$

which is in echelon form where z is a free variable.

Let $z = a$ where a is arbitrary real number.

$$\therefore y = -3a,\ x = 1 + 2a$$

Hence the given system of linear equations has infinite number of solutions for $\lambda = 1$. In particular, let $a = 1$, then $x = 3$, $y = -3$, $z = 1$. is a particular solution of the given system.

Case II When $\lambda = 2$

The system (*) will be

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x + y + z &= 1 \\ y + 3z &= 1 \end{aligned}\right\}$$

which is in echelon form where z is a free variable.

Let $z = b$ where b is any real number. $\therefore y = 1 - 3b$, $x = 2b$. Hence the system has infinite number of solutions for $\lambda = 2$. In particular, let $b = -1$, then $x = 4$, $y = -2$, $z = -1$ is a particular solution of the given system.

CamScanner

EXERCISES – 1

1. Which of the following systems of linear equations are inconsistent :

(i) $\left.\begin{aligned} 2x_1 + 3x_2 &= 1 \\ 4x_1 + 6x_2 &= 3 \end{aligned}\right\}$ (ii) $\left.\begin{aligned} x_1 + x_2 &= 1 \\ x_1 + 2x_2 &= 3 \\ x_1 - x_2 &= 2 \end{aligned}\right\}$

(iii) $\left.\begin{aligned} x_1 + x_2 + x_3 &= 1 \\ 2x_1 + 2x_2 + 2x_3 &= 1 \\ 3x_1 + 3x_2 + 3x_3 &= 2 \end{aligned}\right\}$ (iv) $\left.\begin{aligned} x_1 + 3x_2 + 2x_3 &= 7 \\ 2x_1 + x_2 + 3x_3 &= 8 \\ 3x_1 + 4x_2 + 6x_3 &= 16 \\ 6x_1 + 8x_2 + 11x_3 &= 20 \end{aligned}\right\}$

Answers:

(i) Inconsistent, (ii) Inconsistent, (iii) Inconsistent.

(iv) Inconsistent

2. Which of the following systems of linear equations are consistent? Find all solutions of the consistent system.

(i) $\left.\begin{aligned} 5x_1 + 3x_2 - 3x_3 &= -1 \\ 3x_1 + 2x_2 - 2x_3 &= -1 \\ 2x_1 - x_2 + 2x_3 &= 8 \end{aligned}\right\}$ (ii) $\left.\begin{aligned} 3x_1 - x_2 + 7x_3 &= 0 \\ 2x_1 - x_2 + 4x_3 &= \frac{1}{2} \\ x_1 - x_2 + x_3 &= 1 \\ 6x_1 - 4x_2 + 10x_3 &= 3 \end{aligned}\right\}$

Answers : (i) $x_1 = 1, x_2 = 2, x_3 = 4$

(ii) $x_1 = -3a - \frac{1}{2}, x_2 = -2a - \frac{3}{2}, x_3 = a.$

where a is any real number.

3. Express the following systems of linear equations in echelon form and solve them :

(i) $\left.\begin{aligned} x_1 - x_2 + 2x_3 + x_4 &= 0 \\ -x_1 + 3x_3 + 2x_4 &= 2 \\ 2x_1 + x_2 - x_4 &= 1 \\ 2x_1 + 2x_2 + x_3 + 3x_4 &= 14 \end{aligned}\right\}$ (ii) $\left.\begin{aligned} x_1 + 2x_2 + x_3 &= -1 \\ 6x_1 + x_2 + x_3 &= -4 \\ 2x_1 - 3x_2 - x_3 &= 0 \\ -x_1 - 7x_2 - 2x_3 &= 7 \\ x_1 - x_2 &= 1 \end{aligned}\right\}$

Answers : (i) $x_1 = 1, x_2 = 2, x_3 = -1, x_4 = 3.$

(ii) $x_1 = -1, x_2 = -2, x_3 = 4.$

CamScanner

4. Solve each of the following linear systems of equations :

(i) $\left.\begin{aligned} 2x_1 - 3x_2 &= -2 \\ 2x_1 + x_2 &= 1 \\ 3x_1 + 2x_2 &= 1 \end{aligned}\right\}$ (ii) $\left.\begin{aligned} 4x_1 - 8x_2 &= 12 \\ 3x_1 - 6x_2 &= 9 \\ -2x_1 + 4x_2 &= -6 \end{aligned}\right\}$

(iii) $\left.\begin{aligned} 3x_1 + 2x_2 - x_3 &= -15 \\ 5x_1 + 3x_2 + 2x_3 &= 0 \\ 3x_1 + x_2 + 3x_3 &= 11 \\ 11x_1 + 7x_2 &= -30 \end{aligned}\right\}$ (iv) $\left.\begin{aligned} x + 2y - 3z &= 6 \\ 2x - y + 4z &= 2 \\ 4x + 3y - 2z &= 14 \end{aligned}\right\}$

[D. U. S. 1980, 83]

Answers :

(i) Inconsistent

(ii) $x_1 = 3 + 2a$, $x_2 = a$, where a is any real number.

(iii) $x_1 = -4$. $x_2 = 2$, $x_3 = 7$.

(iv) $x = 2 - a$, $y = 2 + 2a$, $z = a$

where a is any real number.

5. Solve the following systems of linear equations :

(i) $\left.\begin{aligned} 2x_1 + x_2 + 3x_3 &= 0 \\ 3x_1 - 2x_2 + x_3 &= 0 \\ x_1 - 3x_2 - 2x_3 &= 0 \end{aligned}\right\}$

(ii) $\left.\begin{aligned} x_1 - x_2 + x_3 + x_4 &= 0 \\ x_1 + 2x_2 - x_3 - x_4 &= 1 \\ 2x_1 - 2x_2 + x_3 - x_4 &= 0 \\ -3x_2 + x_3 - x_4 &= -1 \end{aligned}\right\}$

Answers : (i) $x_1 = a$, $x_2 = a$, $x_3 = -a$

where a is any real number

(ii) $x_1 = \frac{2}{3}a + \frac{1}{3}$, $x_2 = -\frac{4}{3}a + \frac{1}{3}$, $x_3 = -3a$, $x_4 = a$

where a is any real number.

6. Find the solution sets of the following systems of linear equations :

(i) $\left.\begin{aligned} x_1 + 2x_2 + x_3 + x_4 &= 6 \\ x_1 - x_2 + x_3 - x_4 &= -2 \\ x_1 + 8x_2 + x_3 + 5x_4 &= 22 \\ 2x_1 + 7x_2 + 2x_3 + 4x_4 &= 20 \end{aligned}\right\}$

(ii) $\left.\begin{aligned} x_1 + 2x_2 + 3x_3 + 4x_4 &= 0 \\ 2x_1 + 3x_2 + 4x_3 &= 1 \\ 3x_1 + 4x_2 + x_4 &= 2 \\ 4x_1 + x_3 + 2x_4 &= 3 \end{aligned}\right\}$

CamScanner

Answers :

(i) $x_1 = \frac{1}{3}(2 + b - 3a)$, $x_2 = \frac{1}{3}(8 - 2b)$, $x_3 = a$, $x_4 = b$

where a and b are arbitrary real numbers.

(ii) $x_1 = \frac{9}{11}$, $x_2 = -\frac{1}{11}$, $x_3 = -\frac{1}{11}$, $x_4 = -\frac{1}{11}$.

7. Which of the following systems of linear equations are consistent? Find all solutions of the consistent system :

(i) $\left.\begin{aligned} x_1 - 5x_2 + 4x_3 + x_4 &= 7 \\ 2x_1 + x_2 - 3x_3 - x_4 &= 1 \\ 3x_1 - 4x_2 + x_3 - 5x_4 &= 0 \\ x_1 + x_2 + x_3 + x_4 &= 1 \end{aligned}\right\}$ (ii) $\left.\begin{aligned} 3x_1 + 2x_2 - x_3 + 4x_4 &= 6 \\ -2x_1 + x_2 + 5x_3 + x_4 &= 0 \\ x_1 - 4x_2 + 2x_3 + 8x_4 &= 2 \\ 5x_1 + x_2 - 3x_3 - 2x_4 &= 1 \end{aligned}\right\}$

Answers :

(i) $x_1 = \frac{64}{55}$, $x_2 = \frac{-69}{55}$, $x_3 = -\frac{28}{55}$, $x_4 = \frac{8}{5}$

(ii) $x_1 = \frac{94}{679}$, $x_2 = \frac{685}{679}$, $x_3 = -\frac{30}{97}$, $x_4 = \frac{79}{97}$.

8. (i) Express the following system of linear equations in echelon form and solve it :

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x + y \quad &= -3 \\ 2x - 2y - z &= -8 \\ 4x \quad - z &= -14 \\ x - 3y - z &= -5 \end{aligned}\right\}$$ **[D. U. P.1980]**

(ii) Reduce the following system of linear equations to an echelon form and find all solutions :

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x_1 - x_2 + 2x_3 &= 5 \\ 2x_1 + x_2 - x_3 &= 2 \\ 2x_1 - x_2 - x_3 &= 4 \\ x_1 + 3x_2 + 2x_3 &= 1 \end{aligned}\right\}$$ **[D. U. P. 1981] [D. U. S. 1981, 1987]**

Answers : (i) $x = \frac{1}{4}(a - 14)$, $y = \frac{2 - a}{4}$, $z = a$

where a is any real number.

(ii) $x_1 = 2$, $x_2 = -1$, $x_3 = 1$.

9. (i) Reduce the system of linear equations

$$\left.\begin{aligned} 5x_1 + 2x_2 - 7x_3 &= 1 \\ 7x_1 - x_2 + 2x_3 &= 0 \\ 2x_1 + 5x_2 - x_3 &= 5 \end{aligned}\right\}$$ **[D. U. S. 1982]**

into echelon form and hence solve it.

(ii) Use echelon method to solve the following system of linear equations :

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x_1 + x_2 \quad\quad + 3 &= 0 \\ 2x_1 - 2x_2 - x_3 + 8 &= 0 \\ 4x_1 \quad\quad - x_3 + 14 &= 0 \\ x_1 - 3x_2 - x_3 + 5 &= 0 \end{aligned}\right\} \text{[D. U. S. 1984]}$$

Answers : (i) $x_1 = \frac{228}{2679}$, $x_2 = \frac{2698}{2679}$, $x_3 = \frac{29}{141}$,

(ii) $x_1 = \frac{a-14}{4}$, $x_2 = \frac{2-a}{4}$, $x_3 = a$ where a is any real number.

10. (i) Solve the following linear equations :

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x_1 + x_2 + 2x_3 + x_4 &= 5 \\ 3x_1 + 2x_2 - x_3 + 3x_4 &= 6 \\ 4x_1 + 3x_2 + x_3 + 4x_4 &= 11 \\ 2x_1 + x_2 - 3x_3 + 2x_4 &= 1 \end{aligned}\right\}$$

(ii) Find all rational solutions of the following system of linear equations :

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x_1 + x_2 - x_3 - x_4 &= -1 \\ 3x_1 + 4x_2 - x_3 - 2x_4 &= 3 \\ x_1 + 2x_2 + x_3 \quad\quad &= 5 \end{aligned}\right\}$$

Answers : (i) $x_1 = 5a - b - 4$, $x_2 = -7a + 9$, $x_3 = a$, $x_4 = b$ where a and b are arbitrary real numbers.

(ii) $x_1 = 3a + 2b - 7$, $x_2 = -2a - b + 6$, $x_3 = a$, $x_4 = b$ where a and b are arbitrary real numbers.

11. Determine whether each system has a non-zero solution. If exists, find the non-zero solutions.

(i) $\left.\begin{aligned} x_1 + x_2 + x_3 &= 0 \\ x_1 - x_2 + x_3 &= 0 \\ x_1 + x_2 - x_3 &= 0 \end{aligned}\right\}$ (ii) $\left.\begin{aligned} 3x_1 + 2x_2 + x_3 &= 0 \\ 7x_1 - x_2 + 21x_3 &= 0 \\ x_1 + 12x_2 - 37x_3 &= 0 \end{aligned}\right\}$

Answers : (i) $x_1 = 0$, $x_2 = 0$, $x_3 = 0$.

(ii) $x_1 = -\frac{43}{17}a$, $x_2 = \frac{56}{17}a$, $x_3 = a$ where a is any real number.

12. Find the non-zero solutions of the following systems of linear homogeneous equations :

(i) $\left.\begin{aligned} x_1 + 3x_2 + 2x_3 &= 0 \\ 2x_1 - x_2 + 3x_3 &= 0 \\ 3x_1 - 5x_2 + 4x_3 &= 0 \\ x_1 + 17x_2 + 4x_3 &= 0 \end{aligned}\right\}$ (ii) $\left.\begin{aligned} x_1 - 3x_2 - 2x_3 &= 0 \\ 2x_1 + x_2 + 3x_3 &= 0 \\ 3x_1 - 2x_2 + x_3 &= 0 \end{aligned}\right\}$

[D. U. P. 1986]

(iii) $\left.\begin{aligned} 2x_1 + x_2 + x_3 - 5x_4 &= 0 \\ x_1 + x_2 + x_3 - 4x_4 &= 0 \\ x_1 - x_2 - x_3 + 2x_4 &= 0 \end{aligned}\right\}$ (iv) $\left.\begin{aligned} 2x_1 - x_2 - x_3 + x_4 &= 0 \\ x_1 + 2x_2 - 3x_3 + 3x_4 &= 0 \\ -x_1 - x_2 + 2x_3 - 2x_4 &= 0 \end{aligned}\right\}$

Answers : (i) $x_1 = -\frac{11}{7}a,\ x_2 = -\frac{a}{7},\ x_3 = a$

where a is any real number.

(ii) $x_1 = -a,\ x_2 = -a,\ x_3 = a$

where a is an arbitrary real number.

(iii) $x_1 = b,\ x_2 = -a + 3b,\ x_3 = a,\ x_4 = b$

where a and b are arbitrary real numbers.

(iv) $x_1 = a - b,\ x_2 = a - b,\ x_3 = a,\ x_4 = b$

where a and b are arbitrary real numbers.

In particular, let a = 2, b = 1 then $x_1 = 1,\ x_2 = 1,\ x_3 = 2,\ x_4 = 1$ is a particular solution of the system.

13. Find the non-trivial solutions of the following systems of linear homogeneous equations :

(i) $\left.\begin{aligned} 2x_1 + 3x_2 - x_3 &= 0 \\ x_1 - x_2 + x_3 &= 0 \\ x_1 + 9x_2 - 5x_3 &= 0 \end{aligned}\right\}$ (ii) $\left.\begin{aligned} x_1 - x_2 + x_3 - x_4 &= 0 \\ 2x_1 + x_2 - x_3 + 2x_4 &= 0 \\ 2x_2 + 3x_3 + x_4 &= 0 \end{aligned}\right\}$

(iii) $\left.\begin{aligned} x_1 - 2x_2 + 3x_3 + x_4 &= 0 \\ x_1 + x_2 - 3x_3 - x_4 &= 0 \\ 2x_1 - x_2 + x_3 - x_4 &= 0 \\ 2x_1 + 2x_2 - 5x_3 - 3x_4 &= 0 \end{aligned}\right\}$

Answers : (i) $x_1 = -\frac{2a}{5},\ x_2 = \frac{3a}{5},\ x_3 = a$

where a is any real number.

(ii) $x_1 = -\frac{1}{3}a,\ x_2 = -a,\ x_3 = \frac{1}{3}a.\ x_4 = a$

where a is any real number.

(iii) $x_1 = \frac{4a}{3},\ x_2 = \frac{8a}{3},\ x_3 = a,\ x_4 = a$

where a is any real number.

CamScanner

14. Solve the following homogeneous systems of linear equations :

(i) $$\left.\begin{aligned} x_1 - 2x_2 + 2x_3 &= 0 \\ 2x_1 + x_2 - 2x_3 &= 0 \\ 3x_1 + 4x_2 - 6x_3 &= 0 \end{aligned}\right\}$$

(ii) $$\left.\begin{aligned} 3x_1 + 4x_2 + x_3 + 2x_4 + 3x_5 &= 0 \\ 5x_1 + 7x_2 + x_3 + 3x_4 + 4x_5 &= 0 \\ 4x_1 + 5x_2 + 2x_3 + x_4 + 5x_5 &= 0 \\ 7x_1 + 10x_2 + x_3 + 6x_4 + 5x_5 &= 0 \end{aligned}\right\}$$

(iii) $$\left.\begin{aligned} x_1 + 2x_2 + 2x_3 - x_4 + 3x_5 &= 0 \\ x_1 + 2x_2 + 3x_3 + x_4 + x_5 &= 0 \\ 3x_1 + 6x_2 + 8x_3 + x_4 + 5x_5 &= 0 \end{aligned}\right\}$$ **[D. U. H. 1986]**

(iv) $$\left.\begin{aligned} x_1 + 2x_2 - 2x_3 + 2x_4 + x_5 &= 0 \\ x_1 + 2x_2 - x_3 + 3x_4 - 2x_5 &= 0 \\ 2x_1 + 4x_2 - 7x_3 + x_4 + x_5 &= 0 \end{aligned}\right\}$$ **[D. U. H. 1988]**

Answers : (i) $x_1 = \frac{2a}{5}, x_2 = \frac{6a}{5}, x_3 = a$

where a is any real number.

(ii) $x_1 = -3a - 5b, x_2 = 2a + 3b, x_3 = a, x_4 = 0, x_5 = b$

where a and b are arbitrary real numbers.

(iii) $x_1 = -2a + 5b - 7c, x_2 = a, x_3 = -2b + 2c, x_4 = b, x_5 = c$

where a, b and c are arbitrary real numbers.

(iv) $x_1 = -2a - 4b, x_2 = a, x_3 = -b, x_4 = b, x_5 = 0$

where a and b are arbitrary real numbers.

15. (i) Find a general solution and a particular solution of the following system of homogeneous linear equations :

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x_1 - 3x_2 + x_4 &= 0 \\ 2x_1 + x_2 + 3x_3 - x_4 &= 0 \\ 3x_1 - 17x_2 - 6x_3 + 7x_4 &= 0 \end{aligned}\right\}$$

Answers :

General solution : $x_1 = o, x_2 = \frac{a}{3}, x_3 = \frac{2a}{9}, x_4 = a$

where a is any real number.

Particular solution : $x_1 = 0, x_2 = 3, x_3 = 2, x_4 = 9.$

(ii) Solve the following homogeneous system of linear equations :

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x_1 - 3x_2 + 4x_3 - x_4 &= 0 \\ 3x_1 + x_2 + 2x_3 + 4x_4 &= 0 \\ 2x_1 - 4x_2 + 6x_3 + x_4 &= 0 \\ 2x_1 + 2x_2 \qquad + 2x_4 &= 0 \\ 4x_1 - 4x_2 + 8x_3 \qquad &= 0 \end{aligned}\right\}$$

Answer : $x_1 = -a,\ x_2 = x_3 = a,\ x_4 = 0$

where a is an arbitrary real number.

(iii) Solve the following system of linear equations :

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x_1 + x_2 + 2x_3 + x_4 &= 5 \\ 2x_1 + 3x_2 + x_3 - x_4 &= 16 \\ x_1 + 2x_2 - 4x_3 + x_4 &= 2 \\ x_1 + x_2 + 3x_3 - 2x_4 &= 12 \end{aligned}\right\}$$

Answer : $x_1 = 2,\ x_2 = 3,\ x_3 = 1,\ x_4 = -2.$

16. (i) Reduce the following system of linear equations to an echelon form and solve it :

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x + 2y - 3z &= 4 \\ x + 3y + z &= 11 \\ 2x + 5y - 4z &= 13 \\ 2x + 6y + 2z &= 22 \end{aligned}\right\} \textbf{[D. U. S. 1980]}$$

(ii) Solve the following system of linear equations :

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x + 2y - 3z &= 6 \\ 2x - y + 4z &= 2 \\ 4x + 3y - 2z &= 14 \end{aligned}\right\} \textbf{[D. U. S. 1980] (Improvement)}$$

using echelon form or otherwise.

(iii) Solve the following linear equations by using echelon form :

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x + 2y + 2z &= 2 \\ 3x - 2y - z &= 5 \\ 2x - 5y + 3z &= -4 \\ x + 4y + 6z &= 0 \end{aligned}\right\} \textbf{[D. U. S. 1983]}$$

6?

Answers :

(i) $x = 1, y = 3, z = 1$

(ii) $x = 2 - a, y = 2a + 2, z = a$ where a is any real number.

(iii) $x = 2, y = 1, z = -1$.

17. Find the general solution and also a particular solution of the following system of linear equations :

$$\left.\begin{aligned} 2x_1 - x_2 - x_3 + 3x_4 &= 1 \\ 4x_1 - 2x_2 - x_3 + x_4 &= 5 \\ 6x_1 - 3x_2 - x_3 - x_4 &= 9 \\ 2x_1 - x_2 + 2x_3 - 12x_4 &= 10 \end{aligned}\right\} \text{[D. U. S. 1989]}$$

Answers : General solution :
$$\begin{cases} x_1 = \frac{1}{2}a + b + 2 \\ x_2 = a \\ x_3 = 5b + 3 \\ x_4 = b \end{cases}$$

where a and b are any two real numbers.

Particular solution : $x_1 = 2, x_2 = 2, x_3 = -2, x_4 = -1$.

18. Solve the following system of linear equations :

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x_1 + x_2 + 2x_4 + 3x_5 &= 5 \\ 2x_1 + 4x_2 - x_3 + 5x_4 + 4x_5 &= -1 \\ x_1 + 3x_2 + 5x_4 + 2x_5 &= -3 \\ 3x_1 + 7x_2 - 3x_3 + 9x_4 + 2x_5 &= -14 \\ 2x_1 + 8x_2 - 4x_3 + 2x_4 + 7x_5 &= -10 \end{aligned}\right\}$$

Answer : $x_1 = 2, x_2 = -3, x_3 = 1, x_4 = 0, x_5 = 2$.

19. Solve the following system of linear equations :

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x + 2y + 3z &= -1 \\ 2x - y - 2z &= 5 \\ 3x + 3y + z &= -2 \\ 4x + 3y + 4z &= 3 \\ -4x + 2y + 4z &= -10 \end{aligned}\right\}$$

Answer : $x = 2, y = -3, z = 1$.

CamScanner

20. Solve the following systems of linear equations :

(i) $\left.\begin{aligned} x_1 + 2x_2 &= 1 \\ -x_1 + x_2 &= 0 \\ 2x_1 + 4x_2 &= 3 \end{aligned}\right\}$ (ii) $\left.\begin{aligned} 2x + 3y - 2z &= 5 \\ x - 2y + 3z &= 2 \\ 4x - y + 4z &= 1 \end{aligned}\right\}$ **[D.U.P. 1991]**

(iii) $\left.\begin{aligned} x_1 + x_2 + x_3 &= 3 \\ x_1 - x_2 + 2x_3 &= -3 \\ 3x_1 - x_2 + 5x_3 &= -2 \\ 2x_1 - x_2 - x_3 &= 4 \end{aligned}\right\}$

Answers : (i) Inconsistent (ii) Inconsistent

(iii) Inconsistent.

21. Find all solutions of the following system of linear equations :

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x_1 + x_2 - 2x_3 + x_4 + 3x_5 &= 1 \\ 2x_1 - x_2 + 2x_3 + 2x_4 + 6x_5 &= 2 \\ 3x_1 + 2x_2 - 4x_3 - 3x_4 - 9x_5 &= 3 \end{aligned}\right\}$$ **[D. U. H. 1989]**

Answer : $x_1 = 1$, $x_2 = 2a$, $x_3 = a$, $x_4 = -3b$, $x_5 = b$

where a and b are arbitrary real numbers.

22. Solve the following linear equations :

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x_1 + 2x_2 - 3x_3 + 4x_4 &= 1 \\ 2x_1 + 5x_2 - 5x_3 + 6x_4 &= 3 \\ x_1 + 4x_2 - x_3 &= 3 \\ 2x_1 + 3x_2 - 7x_3 + 10x_4 &= 1 \end{aligned}\right\}$$ **[D. U. H. 1987]**

Answer : $x_1 = -1 + 5a - 8b$, $x_2 = 1 - a + 2b$, $x_3 = a$, $x_4 = b$

where a and b are arbitrary real numbers.

23. Find all solutions of the following homogeneous systems of linear equations :

(i) $\left.\begin{aligned} x + 2y - 3z &= 0 \\ 2x + 5y + 2z &= 0 \\ 3x - y - 4z &= 0 \end{aligned}\right\}$ **[D. U. H. 1986]**

(ii) $\left.\begin{aligned} x_1 + 4x_2 + 5x_3 + 3x_4 &= 0 \\ 2x_1 + 3x_2 + 5x_3 + x_4 &= 0 \\ 3x_1 + 2x_2 + 5x_3 - x_4 &= 0 \\ 4x_1 + x_2 + 5x_3 - 3x_4 &= 0 \end{aligned}\right\}$ **[D. U. P. 1985]**

CamScanner

(iii) $$\left.\begin{aligned} x_1 - x_2 - x_3 - x_4 &= 0 \\ x_1 + 3x_2 - x_3 + x_4 &= 0 \\ 3x_1 - 7x_2 - x_3 - 6x_4 &= 0 \\ 2x_1 + 2x_2 - 2x_3 &= 0 \\ 6x_1 - 2x_2 - 4x_3 - 5x_4 &= 0 \end{aligned}\right\}$$ **[D. U. P. 1988]**

(iv) $$\left.\begin{aligned} 2x_1 + 2x_2 - x_3 + x_5 &= 0 \\ -x_1 - x_2 + 2x_3 - 3x_4 + x_5 &= 0 \\ x_1 + x_2 - 2x_3 - x_5 &= 0 \\ x_3 + x_4 + x_5 &= 0 \end{aligned}\right\}$$

Answers : (i) $x = y = z = 0$, No non-zero solution.

(ii) $x_1 = b - a$, $x_2 = -(a + b)$, $x_3 = a$ and $x_4 = b$

where a and b are arbitrary real numbers.

(iii) $x_1 = 2a$, $x_2 = -a$, $x_3 = a$, $x_4 = 2a$

where a is arbitrary real number.

(iv) $x_1 = -a - b$, $x_2 = a$, $x_3 = -b$, $x_4 = 0$, $x_5 = b$

where a and b are arbitrary real numbers.

24. Reduce the following system of linear equations to echelon form and solve it :

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x_1 + x_2 + x_3 + 2x_4 + 3x_5 &= 13 \\ -2x_1 - 2x_2 + x_3 - 3x_4 - 4x_5 &= 5 \\ 3x_1 + 2x_2 + x_4 + 5x_5 &= 10 \\ x_1 + x_2 + 2x_3 - x_4 + 9x_5 &= 18 \end{aligned}\right\}$$

Answer : $x_1 = 5 - a$, $x_2 = a$, $x_3 = 11$, $x_4 = 0$, $x_5 = -1$.

where a is any real number.

25. Solve the following system of linear equations :

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x_1 + 2x_2 + 3x_3 + 4x_4 &= 5 \\ 2x_1 + x_2 + 4x_3 + x_4 &= 2 \\ 3x_1 + 4x_2 + x_3 + 5x_4 &= 6 \\ 2x_1 + 3x_2 + 5x_3 + 2x_4 &= 3 \end{aligned}\right\}$$

Answer : $x_1 = \frac{15}{71}$, $x_2 = \frac{-11}{71}$, $x_3 = \frac{10}{71}$, $x_4 = \frac{83}{71}$.

26. Find a general solution and also a particular solution of the following system of linear equations :

$$\left.\begin{array}{l} 2x_1 + 3x_2 - x_3 + 5x_4 - 2x_5 = 4 \\ x_1 + 2x_2 + x_3 + 3x_4 - x_5 = -1 \\ 2x_1 + x_2 - 6x_3 + 7x_4 + 3x_5 = 1 \\ 5x_1 + 11x_2 + 7x_3 + 12x_4 - 10x_5 = 4 \end{array}\right\}$$

Answers : $x_1 = -64 - 21a - 24b$, $x_2 = 39 + 11a + 15b$,

$x_3 = -15 - 4a - 5b$, $x_4 = a$, $x_5 = b$.

where a and b are arbitrary real numbers.

In particular $x_1 = -85$, $x_2 = 50$, $x_3 = -19$, $x_4 = 1$, $x_5 = 0$

27. Reduce the following system of linear equations into echelon form and solve it :

$$\left.\begin{array}{l} x_1 + 2x_2 + 3x_3 + 4x_4 + 5x_5 = 1 \\ 2x_1 + 3x_2 + 4x_3 + 5x_4 + 6x_5 = -1 \\ 3x_1 + 5x_2 + 6x_3 + 7x_4 + 4x_5 = 2 \\ 4x_1 + 7x_2 + 10x_3 + 13x_4 + 16x_5 = 1 \\ 5x_1 + 8x_2 + 9x_3 + 10x_4 + 3x_5 = 3 \end{array}\right\}$$

Answer : $x_1 = -7 - 4b$, $x_2 = 7 + a + 10b$, $x_3 = -2 - 2a - 7b$, $x_4 = a$, $x_5 = b$ where a and b are arbitrary real numbers.

28. Reduce the following system of linear equations into echelon form and solve it :

$$\left.\begin{array}{l} 4x_1 + 2x_2 + 5x_3 + 7x_4 + x_5 = 2 \\ x_1 + x_2 + x_3 + x_4 + 5x_5 = 1 \\ 2x_1 + 3x_2 + 4x_3 + 5x_4 + 6x_5 = 1 \\ 3x_1 + 9x_2 + 7x_3 + x_4 + 8x_5 = 9 \\ 5x_1 + x_2 + x_3 + 6x_4 + x_5 = 0 \end{array}\right\}$$

Answer : $x_1 = 1$, $x_2 = 0$, $x_3 = 1$, $x_4 = -1$, $x_5 = 0$.

29. Determine the values of λ such that the following system in unknowns x, y and z has

(i) a unique solution, (ii) no solution, (iii) more than one solution :

$$\left.\begin{array}{l} \lambda x + y + z = 1 \\ x + \lambda y + z = 1 \\ x + y + \lambda z = 1 \end{array}\right\} \textbf{[R. U. H 1985]}$$

Answers : (i) $\lambda \neq 1$ and $\lambda \neq -2$, (ii) $\lambda = -2$, (iii) $\lambda = 1$.

CamScanner

30. Determine the values of λ such that the following system in unknowns x, y and z has (i) a unique solution, (ii) no solution (iii) more than one solution :

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x \qquad\quad - 3z &= -3 \\ 2x + \lambda y - \ z &= -2 \\ x + 2y + \lambda z &= 1 \end{aligned}\right\}$$

Answers : (i) $\lambda \neq 2$ and $\lambda \neq -5$, (ii) $\lambda = -5$, (iii) $\lambda = 2$.

31. Determine the values of λ such that the following system of linear equations in unknowns x, y and z has (i) a unique solution (ii) no solution (iii) more than one solution :

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x + \ y + \lambda z &= 1 \\ x + \lambda y + \ z &= \lambda \\ \lambda x + y + \ z &= \lambda^2 \end{aligned}\right\}$$

Answers : (i) $\lambda \neq -2$, $\lambda \neq 1$ (ii) $\lambda = -2$ (iii) $\lambda = 1$

32. Find out the conditions on α, β and γ so that the following systems of non-homogeneous linear equations has a solution :

(i) $\left.\begin{aligned} x + 2y - 3z &= \alpha \\ 3x - y + 2z &= \beta \\ 2x - 10y + 16z &= 2\gamma \end{aligned}\right\}$ (ii) $\left.\begin{aligned} x + 2y - 3z &= \alpha \\ 2x + 6y - 11z &= \beta \\ 2x - 4y + 14z &= 2\gamma \end{aligned}\right\}$

Answer : (i) $2\alpha = \beta - \gamma$ (ii) $5\alpha = 2\beta + \gamma$.

33. Find out the conditions on a, b and c so that the following system of non-homogeneous linear equations is consistent and also solve the system for a = 1, b = 1 and c = – 2 :

$$\left.\begin{aligned} -2x + y + \ z &= a \\ x - 2y + \ z &= b \\ x + \ y - 2z &= c \end{aligned}\right\}$$

Answer : Condition for consistent is a + b + c = 0 and

the general solution is $x = \alpha - 1$, $y = \alpha - 1$, $z = \alpha$

where α is arbitrary real number.

A particular solution is $x = 1$, $y = 1$, $z = 2$.

CS CamScanner

CHAPTER TWO

DETERMINANTS

2.1 Introduction

The working knowledge of determinants is a basic necessity for students of Mathematics, Physics, Statistics, Economics and Engineerings. The determinant was first discovered in the investigation of systems of linear equations. In 1683 a Japanese mathematician **KIOWA** first devised the idea as well as the notation of determinants and in 1693 a German mathematician **LEIBNITZ** also discovered the same thing. In 1750 **GABRIEL CRAMER** successfully applied determinants in solving systems of linear equations.

2.2 Definition of determinant

A determinant of order n is a square array of n^2 quantities a_{ij} (i, j = 1, 2, .., n) enclosed between two vertical bars and is generally written in the form given below :

$$D = \begin{vmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & \dots & a_{1n} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & \dots & a_{2n} \\ \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots \\ a_{n1} & a_{n2} & \dots & a_{nn} \end{vmatrix} \quad (1)$$

which is an ordinary number.

The n^2 quantities a_{ij} (i, j = 1, 2, ..., n) which are numbers (or sometimes functions) are called the **elements** of the determinant. The horizontal lines of elements are called **rows** and the vertical lines of elements are called **columns.** The sloping line of elements extending from a_{11} to a_{nn} is called the **principal diagonal** of the determinant.

The determinant $D = \begin{vmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & \dots & a_{1n} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & \dots & a_{2n} \\ \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots \\ a_{n1} & a_{n2} & \dots & a_{nn} \end{vmatrix}$

is equal to the sum of the products of the elements of any column and their respective co-factors i. e.

CamScanner

$$D = a_{11}A_{11} + a_{12}A_{12} + \dots + a_{1n}A_{1n} = \sum_{j=1}^{n} a_{1j}A_{1j}$$

$$D = a_{11}A_{11} + a_{21}A_{21} + \dots + a_{n1}A_{n1} = \sum_{i=1}^{n} a_{i1}A_{i1}$$

It is be noted that a_{ij} represents the element of the i-th row and j-th column of the determinant.

2.3 Sarrus diagrams for determinants

The expression $a_1b_2 - a_2b_1$ is called the **value** of the determinant $\begin{vmatrix} a_1 & b_1 \\ a_2 & b_2 \end{vmatrix}$

Similarly, the expression

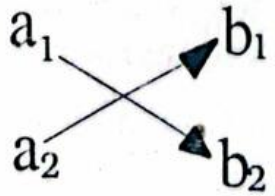
$a_1(b_2c_3 - b_3c_2) - b_1(a_2c_3 - a_3c_2) + c_1(a_2b_3 - a_3b_2)$ is called the **value** of the determinant $\begin{vmatrix} a_1 & b_1 & c_1 \\ a_2 & b_2 & c_2 \\ a_3 & b_3 & c_3 \end{vmatrix}$.

The following diagrams are called **Sarrus diagrams** and are easy tools to write down the value of a determinant.

2.3.1 Sarrus diagram for determinant of order 2.

Determinant : $\begin{vmatrix} a_1 & b_1 \\ a_2 & b_2 \end{vmatrix}$.

Sarrus diagram :



Value : $a_1b_2 - a_2b_1$ (Multiply the elements joined by arrows. Arrows downwords denote positive sign with the corresponding expression and arrows upwards denote negative sign with the corresponding expression.)

2.3.2 Sarrus diagram for determinant of order 3

Determinant : $\begin{vmatrix} a_1 & b_1 & c_1 \\ a_2 & b_2 & c_2 \\ a_3 & b_3 & c_3 \end{vmatrix}$

Sarrus diagram :

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} a_1 & b_1 & c_1 & a_1 & b_1 \\ a_2 & b_2 & c_2 & a_2 & b_2 \\ a_3 & b_3 & c_3 & a_3 & b_3 \end{array}$$

Value : $a_1b_2c_3 + b_1c_2a_3 + c_1a_2b_3 - a_3b_2c_1 - b_3c_2a_1 - c_3a_2b_1$

$= a_1(b_2c_3 - b_3c_2) - b_1(a_2c_3 - a_3c_2) + c_1(a_2b_3 - a_3b_2)$.

(Multiply the elements joined by arrows. Arrows downwards denote positive sign with the corresponding expression and arrows upwards denote negative sign with the corresponding expression.)

2.4 Minors and co-factors

If in the determinant $D = \begin{vmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & \dots & a_{1n} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & \dots & a_{2n} \\ \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots \\ a_{n1} & a_{n2} & \dots & a_{nn} \end{vmatrix}$

we delete the i-th row and j-th column and form a determinant from all the elements remaining, we shall have a new determinant of (n–1) rows and (n–1) columns which is called the **minor** of the element a_{ij} and is denoted by M_{ij}.

The minor M_{ij} multiplied by $(-1)^{i+j}$ is called the **co-factor** of a_{ij} in D and will be denoted by A_{ij}; Thus $A_{ij} = (-1)^{i+j} M_{ij}$.

2.5 Fundamental properties of determinants :

From the basic definition, the following properties of determinants may be deduced :

(i) If all the elements in a row (or in a column) of a determinant are zero, the determinant is equal to zero .

(ii) If two columns (or two rows) of a determinant are identical, the determinant is equal to zero,

(iii) The interchange of any two rows (or any two columns) of a determinant changes the sign of the determinant.

(iv) The value of the determinant is not altered when the rows are changed to columns and the columns to rows.

(v) If all elements but one in a row or in a column are zero, the determinant is equal to the product of that element and its co-factor.

(vi) If every element in a row or in a column is multiplied by any scalar k, the determinant is multiplied by that scalar k.

(vii) If each element in any row or in any column of a determinant is expressed as the sum of two quantities, the determinant can be expressed as the sum of two determinants of the same order.

(viii) If every element in any row or in any column is the sum of p terms, the determinant can be expressed as the sum of p determinants of the same order.

(ix) The value of determinant is not altered if the elements of a row (or a column) are altered by adding to them any constant multiple of the correspoding elements in any other row or column.

(x) The sum of the products of the elements of a row (or a column) and respective co-factors of any other row (or any other column) is zero.

2.6 Expansion of determinant (Laplace's expansion)

We shall explain **Laplace's expansion** by taking a determinant of the fourth order :

$$\text{say, } D = \begin{vmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & \vdots & a_{13} & a_{14} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & \vdots & a_{23} & a_{24} \\ \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots \\ a_{31} & a_{32} & \vdots & a_{33} & a_{34} \\ a_{41} & a_{42} & \vdots & a_{43} & a_{44} \end{vmatrix}$$

Let us take any two colmuns say, first and second. Form all possible minors of second order with the help of first and

second columns. There are $4c_2 = 6$ determinants of second order which are

$$\begin{vmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} \end{vmatrix}, \begin{vmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} \\ a_{31} & a_{32} \end{vmatrix}, \begin{vmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} \\ a_{41} & a_{42} \end{vmatrix}, \begin{vmatrix} a_{21} & a_{22} \\ a_{31} & a_{32} \end{vmatrix}, \begin{vmatrix} a_{21} & a_{22} \\ a_{41} & a_{42} \end{vmatrix}, \begin{vmatrix} a_{31} & a_{32} \\ a_{41} & a_{42} \end{vmatrix}$$

Their co-factors (obtained by deleting the columns and the rows in which the elements of the minors occur) are

$$\begin{vmatrix} a_{33} & a_{34} \\ a_{43} & a_{44} \end{vmatrix}, \begin{vmatrix} a_{23} & a_{24} \\ a_{43} & a_{44} \end{vmatrix}, \begin{vmatrix} a_{23} & a_{24} \\ a_{33} & a_{34} \end{vmatrix}, \begin{vmatrix} a_{13} & a_{14} \\ a_{43} & a_{44} \end{vmatrix}, \begin{vmatrix} a_{13} & a_{14} \\ a_{33} & a_{34} \end{vmatrix}, \begin{vmatrix} a_{13} & a_{14} \\ a_{23} & a_{24} \end{vmatrix}$$

These co-factors are of second order. There are $4c_2 = 6$ determinants of second order. The signs of the co-factors are determined by the following rule :

The sign of a co-factor is positive or negative according as the minor can be brought to the leading position by an even or odd number of shifting lines. Thus the expansion of the determinant is

$$\begin{vmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} \end{vmatrix} \begin{vmatrix} a_{33} & a_{34} \\ a_{43} & a_{44} \end{vmatrix} - \begin{vmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} \\ a_{31} & a_{32} \end{vmatrix} \begin{vmatrix} a_{23} & a_{24} \\ a_{43} & a_{44} \end{vmatrix}$$

$$+ \begin{vmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} \\ a_{41} & a_{42} \end{vmatrix} \begin{vmatrix} a_{23} & a_{24} \\ a_{33} & a_{34} \end{vmatrix} + \begin{vmatrix} a_{21} & a_{22} \\ a_{31} & a_{32} \end{vmatrix} \begin{vmatrix} a_{13} & a_{14} \\ a_{43} & a_{44} \end{vmatrix}$$

$$- \begin{vmatrix} a_{21} & a_{22} \\ a_{41} & a_{42} \end{vmatrix} \begin{vmatrix} a_{13} & a_{14} \\ a_{33} & a_{34} \end{vmatrix} + \begin{vmatrix} a_{31} & a_{32} \\ a_{41} & a_{42} \end{vmatrix} \begin{vmatrix} a_{13} & a_{14} \\ a_{23} & a_{24} \end{vmatrix}$$

This method is quite general which can be applied to a determinant of any order.

2.7 Application of determinants to linear equations

(Cramer's rule)

Let us consider the following n linear non-homogeneous equations in n unknowns $x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_n$

$$\left.\begin{array}{l} a_{11}x_1 + a_{12}x_2 + \ldots + a_{1n}x_n = b_1 \\ a_{21}x_1 + a_{22}x_2 + \ldots + a_{2n}x_n = b_2 \\ \ldots \quad \ldots \quad \ldots \quad \ldots \quad \ldots \\ a_{n1}x_1 + a_{n2}x_2 + \ldots \ldots + a_{nn}x_n = b_n \end{array}\right\} \quad (1)$$

such that $D = \begin{vmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & \ldots & a_{1n} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & \ldots & a_{2n} \\ \ldots & \ldots & \ldots & \ldots \\ a_{n1} & a_{n2} & \ldots & a_{nn} \end{vmatrix} \neq 0$

Then the system has a unique solution

$x_1 = \frac{D_1}{D}, x_2 = \frac{D_2}{D}, \ldots, x_n = \frac{D_n}{D}$ where

$$D_1 = \begin{vmatrix} b_1 & a_{12} & \ldots & a_{1n} \\ b_2 & a_{22} & \ldots & a_{2n} \\ \ldots & \ldots & \ldots & \ldots \\ b_n & a_{n2} & \ldots & a_{nn} \end{vmatrix} \quad D_2 = \begin{vmatrix} a_{11} & b_1 & a_{13} & \ldots & a_{1n} \\ a_{21} & b_2 & a_{23} & \ldots & a_{2n} \\ \ldots & \ldots & \ldots & \ldots & \\ a_{n1} & b_n & a_{n3} & \ldots & a_{nn} \end{vmatrix}$$

$$\ldots\ldots \quad D_n = \begin{vmatrix} a_{11} & \ldots & a_{1n-1} & b_1 \\ a_{21} & \ldots & a_{2n-1} & b_2 \\ \ldots & \ldots & \ldots & \ldots \\ a_{n1} & \ldots & a_{nn-1} & b_n \end{vmatrix}$$

Proof : Let us consider the relation

$$\begin{vmatrix} b_1 & a_{12} & \ldots & a_{1n} \\ b_2 & a_{22} & \ldots & a_{2n} \\ \ldots & \ldots & \ldots & \ldots \\ b_n & a_{n2} & \ldots & a_{nn} \end{vmatrix} = \begin{vmatrix} a_{11}x_1 + a_{12}x_2 + \ldots + a_{1n}x_n & a_{12} & \ldots & a_{1n} \\ a_{21}x_1 + a_{22}x_2 + \ldots + a_{2n}x_n & a_{22} & \ldots & a_{2n} \\ \ldots & \ldots & \ldots & \ldots \\ a_{n1}x_1 + a_{n2}x_2 + \ldots + a_{nn}x_n & a_{n2} & \ldots & a_{nn} \end{vmatrix} \quad (2)$$

The right hand side determinant of (2) can be expressed as the sum of n determinants of which all the determinants are zero except first one; since at least two columns of those determinants are equal (identical). Therefore, from (2) we get

$$\begin{vmatrix} b_1 & a_{12} & \ldots & a_{1n} \\ b_2 & a_{22} & \ldots & a_{2n} \\ \ldots & \ldots & \ldots & \ldots \\ b_n & a_{n2} & \ldots & a_{nn} \end{vmatrix} = x_1 \begin{vmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & \ldots & a_{1n} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & \ldots & a_{2n} \\ \ldots & \ldots & \ldots & \ldots \\ a_{n1} & a_{n2} & \ldots & a_{nn} \end{vmatrix}$$

or, $D_1 = x_1 D \therefore x_1 = \frac{D_1}{D} \; (D \neq 0)$

Similarly, we can find $x_2, x_3, \ldots, x_n$ and their respective values are

$$x_2 = \frac{D_2}{D}, x_3 = \frac{D_3}{D}, \ldots, x_n = \frac{D_n}{D}.$$

Thus $\frac{x_1}{D_1} = \frac{x_2}{D_2} = \frac{x_3}{D_3} = \ldots = \frac{x_n}{D_n} = \frac{1}{D}.$

This is called the **Cramer's rule.**

2.8 Multiplication of two determinants of finite order.

There are four methods for the multiplication of two determinants which are shown for simplicity by means of examples such as

(i) Row by row method

$$\begin{vmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{vmatrix} \times \begin{vmatrix} e & f \\ g & h \end{vmatrix} = \begin{vmatrix} ae + bf & ag + bh \\ ce + df & cg + dh \end{vmatrix}$$

(ii) Row by column method

$$\begin{vmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{vmatrix} \times \begin{vmatrix} e & f \\ g & h \end{vmatrix} = \begin{vmatrix} ae + bg & af + bh \\ ce + dg & cf + dh \end{vmatrix}$$

(iii) Column by row method

$$\begin{vmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{vmatrix} \times \begin{vmatrix} e & f \\ g & h \end{vmatrix} = \begin{vmatrix} ae + cf & be + df \\ ag + ch & bg + dh \end{vmatrix}$$

(iv) Column by column method

$$\begin{vmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{vmatrix} \times \begin{vmatrix} e & f \\ g & h \end{vmatrix} = \begin{vmatrix} ae + cg & af + ch \\ be + dg & bf + dh \end{vmatrix}$$

2.8.1 Multiplication of two determinants of the same order.

Let $D_1 = \begin{vmatrix} a_1 & b_1 & c_1 \\ a_2 & b_2 & c_2 \\ a_3 & b_3 & c_3 \end{vmatrix}$ and $D_2 = \begin{vmatrix} l_1 & m_1 & n_1 \\ l_2 & m_2 & n_2 \\ l_3 & m_3 & n_3 \end{vmatrix}$

Now consider the determinant

$$D = \begin{vmatrix} a_1l_1 + b_1m_1 + c_1n_1 & a_1l_2 + b_1m_2 + c_1n_2 & a_1l_3 + b_1m_3 + c_1n_3 \\ a_2l_1 + b_2m_1 + c_2n_1 & a_2l_2 + b_2m_2 + c_2n_2 & a_2l_3 + b_2m_3 + c_2n_3 \\ a_3l_1 + b_3m_1 + c_3n_1 & a_3l_2 + b_3m_2 + c_3n_2 & a_3l_3 + b_3m_3 + c_3n_3 \end{vmatrix}$$

Now D can be expressed as the sum of $3 \times 3 \times 3 = 27$ determinants since there are three consituents in each column.

These 27 determinants are

$$\begin{vmatrix} a_1l_1 & a_1l_2 & a_1l_3 \\ a_2l_1 & a_2l_2 & a_2l_3 \\ a_3l_1 & a_3l_2 & a_3l_3 \end{vmatrix}, \begin{vmatrix} a_1l_1 & b_1m_2 & c_1n_3 \\ a_2l_1 & b_2m_2 & c_2n_3 \\ a_3l_1 & b_3m_2 & c_3n_3 \end{vmatrix}, \begin{vmatrix} b_1m_1 & a_1l_2 & c_1n_3 \\ b_2m_1 & a_2l_2 & c_2n_3 \\ b_3m_1 & a_3l_2 & c_3n_3 \end{vmatrix}$$

... ...

The first of these 27 determinants

$$= l_1l_2l_3 \begin{vmatrix} a_1 & a_1 & a_1 \\ a_2 & a_2 & a_2 \\ a_3 & a_3 & a_3 \end{vmatrix} = 0$$ Since the columns in the determinant are identical.

The second of these 27 determinants

$$= l_1m_2n_3 \begin{vmatrix} a_1 & b_1 & c_1 \\ a_2 & b_2 & c_2 \\ a_3 & b_3 & c_3 \end{vmatrix} = l_1m_2n_3D_1$$

The third of these 27 determinants

$$= m_1l_2n_3 \begin{vmatrix} b_1 & a_1 & c_1 \\ b_2 & a_2 & c_2 \\ b_3 & a_3 & c_3 \end{vmatrix} = -m_1l_2n_3 \begin{vmatrix} a_1 & b_1 & c_1 \\ a_2 & b_2 & c_2 \\ a_3 & b_3 & c_3 \end{vmatrix} = -m_1l_2n_3D_1$$

In this way we can easily find out that 21 out of 27 determinants will vanish and D can be expressed as the sum of the remaining six determinants as

$$D = l_1m_2n_3D_1 - l_1m_3n_2D_1 + l_2m_3n_1D_1 - l_2m_1n_3D_1 + l_3m_1n_2D_1 - l_3m_2n_1D_1$$

$$= [l_1(m_2n_3 - m_3n_2) - l_2(m_1n_3 - m_3n_1) + l_3(m_1n_2 - m_2n_1)]\, D_1$$

$$= \begin{vmatrix} l_1 & m_1 & n_1 \\ l_2 & m_2 & n_2 \\ l_3 & m_3 & n_3 \end{vmatrix} \times D_1 = D_2 \times D_1 \quad \therefore D = D_1 \times D_2.$$

Hence the rule for the product of two determinants is

$$\begin{vmatrix} a_1 & b_1 & c_1 \\ a_2 & b_2 & c_2 \\ a_3 & b_3 & c_3 \end{vmatrix} \times \begin{vmatrix} l_1 & m_1 & n_1 \\ l_1 & m_2 & n_2 \\ l_3 & m_3 & n_3 \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{vmatrix} a_1l_1 + b_1m_1 + c_1n_1 & a_1l_2 + b_1m_2 + c_1n_2 & a_1l_3 + b_1m_3 + c_1n_3 \\ a_2l_1 + b_2m_1 + c_2n_1 & a_2l_2 + b_2m_2 + c_2n_2 & a_2l_3 + b_2m_3 + c_2n_3 \\ a_3l_1 + b_3m_1 + c_3n_1 & a_3l_2 + b_3m_2 + c_3n_2 & a_3l_3 + b_3m_3 + c_3n_3 \end{vmatrix}$$

2.8.2 Multiplication of two determinants of different orders.

Two determinants of different orders can only be multiplied when one of them is changed to a determinant of the same order as that of the other factor. As for example.

$$\begin{vmatrix} a_1 & b_1 \\ a_2 & b_2 \end{vmatrix} \times \begin{vmatrix} l_1 & m_1 & n_1 \\ l_2 & m_2 & n_2 \\ l_3 & m_3 & n_3 \end{vmatrix} \begin{vmatrix} a_1 & b_1 & 0 \\ a_2 & b_2 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{vmatrix} \times \begin{vmatrix} l_1 & m_1 & n_1 \\ l_2 & m_2 & n_2 \\ l_3 & m_3 & n_3 \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{vmatrix} a_1l_1 + b_1m_1 & a_1l_2 + b_1m_2 & a_1l_3 + b_1m_3 \\ a_2l_1 + b_2m_1 & a_2l_2 + b_2m_2 & a_2l_3 + b_2m_3 \\ n_1 & n_2 & n_3 \end{vmatrix}$$

2.8.3 Multiplication theorem (without proof)

The product of two determinants of orders m and n can be a determinant of order (m + n) as follows :

$$\begin{vmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & \cdots & a_{1m} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & \cdots & a_{2m} \\ \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots \\ \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots \\ a_{m1} & a_{m2} & \cdots & a_{mm} \end{vmatrix} \times \begin{vmatrix} b_{11} & b_{12} & \cdots & b_{1n} \\ b_{21} & b_{22} & \cdots & b_{2n} \\ \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots \\ \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots \\ b_{n1} & b_{n2} & \cdots & b_{nn} \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{vmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & \cdots & a_{1m} & 0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & \cdots & a_{2m} & 0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots \\ \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots \\ a_{m1} & a_{m2} & \cdots & a_{mm} & 0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ c_{11} & c_{12} & \cdots & c_{1m} & b_{11} & b_{12} & \cdots & b_{1n} \\ c_{21} & c_{22} & \cdots & c_{2m} & b_{21} & b_{22} & \cdots & b_{2n} \\ \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots \\ \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots \\ c_{n1} & c_{n2} & \cdots & c_{nm} & b_{n1} & b_{n2} & \cdots & b_{nn} \end{vmatrix}$$

whatever may be the values of c_{ij}, s.

Example 1(a) Evaluate the determinant

$$\begin{vmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 & 2 \\ 3 & 0 & 1 & 5 \\ 1 & -2 & 0 & 3 \\ -2 & -4 & 1 & 6 \end{vmatrix}$$

Solution : Let us represent the given determinant by D

$$\text{then } D = \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 & 2 \\ 3 & 0 & 1 & 5 \\ 1 & -2 & 0 & 3 \\ -2 & -4 & 1 & 6 \end{vmatrix} = 1\begin{vmatrix} 0 & 1 & 5 \\ -2 & 0 & 3 \\ -4 & 1 & 6 \end{vmatrix} - 2\begin{vmatrix} 3 & 1 & 5 \\ 1 & 0 & 3 \\ -2 & 1 & 6 \end{vmatrix}$$

$$-1\begin{vmatrix} 3 & 0 & 5 \\ 1 & -2 & 3 \\ -2 & -4 & 6 \end{vmatrix} - 2\begin{vmatrix} 3 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & -2 & 0 \\ -2 & -4 & 1 \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= 1\,[0 - 1\,(-12 + 12) + 5\,(-2 + 0)]$$
$$-2\,[3\,(0 - 3) - 1(6 + 6) + 5\,(1 + 0)]$$
$$-1\,[3(-12 + 12) + 0 + 5(-4 - 4)]$$

$-2[3(-2+0)+0+1(-4-4)]$

$= -10+32+40+28 = 90.$

Thus the value of the determinant D is 90.

Example 1 (b) Find the values of the following determinants by using the **Sarrus diagram :**

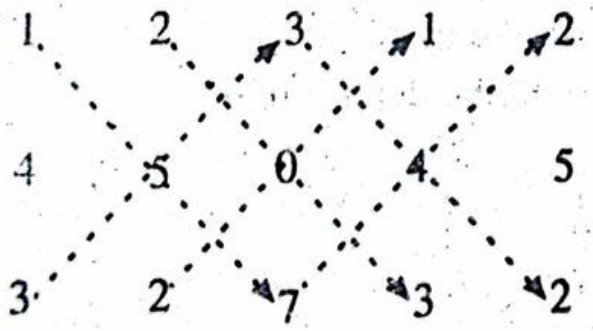
(i) $\begin{vmatrix} 1 & 3 \\ 5 & 7 \end{vmatrix}$ (ii) $\begin{vmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 4 & 5 & 0 \\ 3 & 2 & 7 \end{vmatrix}$

Solution : (i)

$= 1.7 - 5.3 = 7 - 15 = -8$

Thus $\begin{vmatrix} 1 & 3 \\ 5 & 7 \end{vmatrix} = -8.$

(ii)



$= (1.5.7) + (2.0.3) + (3.4.2) - (3.5.3) - (2.0.1) - (7.4.2)$

$= 35 + 0 + 24 - 45 - 0 - 56$

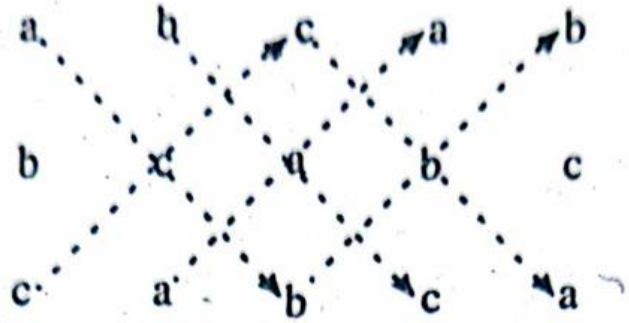
$= 59 - 101 = -42.$

Thus $\begin{vmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 4 & 5 & 0 \\ 3 & 2 & 7 \end{vmatrix} = -42.$

Example 2. Applying Sarrus diagram show that

$$\begin{vmatrix} a & b & c \\ b & c & a \\ c & a & b \end{vmatrix} = 3abc - a^3 - b^3 - c^3$$

Proof :



$= abc + abc + abc - c^3 - a^3 - b^3$

$= 3abc - a^3 - b^3 - c^3.$

Example 3. Evaluate $\begin{vmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 \\ a^2 & b^2 & c^2 \\ a^3 & b^3 & c^3 \end{vmatrix}$ **[D. U. P. 1975]**

Solution : $\begin{vmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 \\ a^2 & b^2 & c^2 \\ a^3 & b^3 & c^3 \end{vmatrix} = \begin{vmatrix} 0 & 0 & 1 \\ a^2 - b^2 & b^2 - c^2 & c^2 \\ a^3 - b^3 & b^3 - c^3 & c^3 \end{vmatrix}$

Subtracting 2nd column from Ist column and 3rd column from the 2nd column.

$= \begin{vmatrix} a^2 - b^2 & b^2 - c^2 \\ a^3 - b^3 & b^3 - c^3 \end{vmatrix}$

$= (a - b)(b - c) \begin{vmatrix} a + b & b + c \\ a^2 + ab + b^2 & b^2 + bc + c^2 \end{vmatrix}$

$= (a - b)(b - c)(ab^2 + abc + ac^2 + b^3 + b^2c + bc^2 - a^2b - ab^2 - b^3 - a^2c - abc - b^2c)$

$= (a - b)(b - c)(ac^2 - a^2c + bc^2 - a^2b)$

$= (a - b)(b - c)\{ac(c - a) + b(c^2 - a^2)\}$

$= (a - b)(b - c)(c - a)\{ac + b(c + a)\}$

$= (a - b)(b - c)(c - a)(ab + bc + ca).$

Example 4 show that

$\begin{vmatrix} a + b + c & -c & -b \\ -c & a + b + c & -a \\ -b & -a & a + b + c \end{vmatrix} = 2(b + c)(c + a)(a + b)$ **[D. U. P. 1984]**

Library
Varendra University
Rajshahi

CamScanner

Proof :

$$\begin{vmatrix} a+b+c & -c & -b \\ -c & a+b+c & -a \\ -b & -a & a+b+c \end{vmatrix} = \begin{vmatrix} a+b+c-b & -c & -b \\ -c-a & a+b+c & -a \\ -b+a+b+c & -a & a+b+c \end{vmatrix}$$

$$c_1' = c_1 + c_3$$

$$= \begin{vmatrix} c+a & -c & -b \\ -(c+a) & a+b+c & -a \\ c+a & -a & a+b+c \end{vmatrix} = (c+a) \begin{vmatrix} 1 & -c & -b \\ -1 & a+b+c & -a \\ 1 & -a & a+b+c \end{vmatrix}$$

$$r_1' = r_1 + r_2$$
$$r_2' = r_2 + r_3$$

$$= (c+a) \begin{vmatrix} 0 & a+b & -(a+b) \\ 0 & b+c & b+c \\ 1 & -a & (a+b+c) \end{vmatrix} = (c+a) \begin{vmatrix} a+b & -(a+b) \\ b+c & b+c \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= (a+b)(b+c)(c+a) \begin{vmatrix} 1 & -1 \\ 1 & 1 \end{vmatrix} = (a+b)(b+c)(c+a)(1+1)$$

$$= 2(a+b)(b+c)(c+a).$$

Example 5. Prove that

$$\begin{vmatrix} -2a & a+b & a+c \\ b+a & -2b & b+c \\ c+a & c+b & -2c \end{vmatrix} = 4(b+c)(c+a)(a+b)$$

Proof : Let $D = \begin{vmatrix} -2a & a+b & a+c \\ b+a & -2b & b+c \\ c+a & c+b & -2c \end{vmatrix}$

Putting $a + b = 0$ i. e. $b = -a$, we have

$$D = \begin{vmatrix} -2a & 0 & c+a \\ 0 & 2a & c-a \\ c+a & c-a & -2c \end{vmatrix} \begin{aligned} &= -2a\{-4ca - (c-a)^2\} - 0 \\ &\quad + (c+a)\{0 - 2a(c+a)\} \\ &= 2a(c+a)^2 - 2a(c+a)^2 = 0 \end{aligned}$$

This shows that $(a + b)$ is a factor of the determinant D. Similarly, we can show that $b + c$ and $c + a$ are also the factors of the determinant D.

As D is of third degree and the factors $(a + b)(b + c)(c + a)$ are also of third degree and hence if there be any other factor it is λ (constant).

$$\therefore D = \begin{vmatrix} -2a & a+b & a+c \\ b+a & -2b & b+c \\ c+a & c+b & -2c \end{vmatrix} = \lambda (a+b)(b+c)(c+a).$$

In order to find λ put $a = 0, b = 1, c = 2$ in both sides. Then we have

$$\begin{vmatrix} 0 & 1 & 2 \\ 1 & -2 & 3 \\ 2 & 3 & -4 \end{vmatrix} = \lambda \,.\, 1.\, 3.2$$

or, $\quad 0 - 1(-4-6) + 2(3+4) = 6\lambda$

or, $\quad 10 + 14 = 6\lambda \quad$ or, $6\lambda = 24 \;\therefore\; \lambda = 4.$

$$\text{Hence } D = \begin{vmatrix} -2a & a+b & a+c \\ b+a & -2b & b+c \\ c+a & c+b & -2c \end{vmatrix} = 4(b+c)(c+a)(a+b).$$

Example 6. Prove that

$$\begin{vmatrix} a^2 & bc & ac+c^2 \\ a^2+ab & b^2 & ac \\ ab & b^2+bc & c^2 \end{vmatrix} = 4a^2b^2c^2. \qquad \textbf{[C. U. P. 1980, 83]}$$

Proof: $$\begin{vmatrix} a^2 & bc & ac+c^2 \\ a^2+ab & b^2 & ac \\ ab & b^2+bc & c^2 \end{vmatrix} = abc \begin{vmatrix} a & c & a+c \\ a+b & b & a \\ b & b+c & c \end{vmatrix}$$

Adding 2nd & 3rd rows & then subtract from the 1st row

$$r_1' = r_1 - (r_2 + r_3)$$

$$= abc \begin{vmatrix} -2b & -2b & 0 \\ a+b & b & a \\ b & b+c & c \end{vmatrix} = -2ab^2c \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 1 & 0 \\ a+b & b & a \\ b & b+c & c \end{vmatrix}$$

$$c_1' = c_1 - c_2$$

$$= -2ab^2c \begin{vmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 \\ a & b & a \\ -c & b+c & c \end{vmatrix} = 2ab^2c \begin{vmatrix} a & a \\ -c & c \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= 2ab^2c\,(ac + ac) = 4a^2b^2c^2.$$

Example 7. Prove that

$$\begin{vmatrix} (a+b)^2 & ca & bc \\ ca & (b+c)^2 & ab \\ bc & ab & (c+a)^2 \end{vmatrix} = 2abc\,(a+b+c)^3.$$

[R. U. P. 1981, D. U. P. 1983]

Proof :

$$\begin{vmatrix} (a+b)^2 & ca & bc \\ ca & (b+c)^2 & ab \\ bc & ab & (c+a)^2 \end{vmatrix} = \frac{abc}{abc}\begin{vmatrix} (a+b)^2 & ca & bc \\ ca & (b+c)^2 & ab \\ bc & ab & (c+a)^2 \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= \frac{1}{abc}\begin{vmatrix} c(a+b)^2 & c^2a & bc^2 \\ ca^2 & a(b+c)^2 & a^2b \\ b^2c & ab^2 & b(c+a)^2 \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= \frac{abc}{abc}\begin{vmatrix} (a+b)^2 & c^2 & c^2 \\ a^2 & (b+c)^2 & a^2 \\ b^2 & b^2 & (c+a)^2 \end{vmatrix}$$

$c_2' = c_2 - c_1$ and $c_3' = c_3 - c_1$

$$= \begin{vmatrix} (a+b)^2 & c^2-(a+b)^2 & c^2-(a+b)^2 \\ a^2 & (b+c)^2-a^2 & a^2-a^2 \\ b^2 & b^2-b^2 & (c+a)^2-b^2 \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{vmatrix} (a+b)^2 & (c+a+b)\,(c-a-b) & (c+a+b)\,(c-a-b) \\ a^2 & (b+c+a)\,(b+c-a) & 0 \\ b^2 & 0 & (c+a+b)\,(c+a-b) \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= (a+b+c)^2\begin{vmatrix} (a+b)^2 & c-a-b & c-a-b \\ a^2 & b+c-a & 0 \\ b^2 & 0 & c+a-b \end{vmatrix}$$

$r_1' = r_1 - (r_2 + r_3)$.

$$= (a+b+c)^2\begin{vmatrix} 2ab & -2b & -2a \\ a^2 & b+c-a & 0 \\ b^2 & 0 & c+a-b \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= 2(a+b+c)^2\begin{vmatrix} ab & -b & -a \\ a^2 & b+c-a & 0 \\ b^2 & 0 & c+a-b \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= \frac{2(a+b+c)^2}{ab}\begin{vmatrix} ab & -ab & -ab \\ a^2 & a(b+c-a) & 0 \\ b^2 & 0 & b(c+a-b) \end{vmatrix}$$

$c_2' = c_2 + c_1$ and $c_3' = c_3 + c_1$.

$$= \frac{2(a+b+c)^2}{ab}\begin{vmatrix} ab & 0 & 0 \\ a^2 & ab+ac & a^2 \\ b^2 & b^2 & bc+ab \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= \frac{2ab(a+b+c)^2}{ab} \begin{vmatrix} ab+ac & a^2 \\ b^2 & bc+ab \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= 2ab\,(a+b+c)^2 \begin{vmatrix} b+c & a \\ b & c+a \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= 2ab\,(a+b+c)^2\,(bc+ab+c^2+ca-ab)$$

$$= 2abc\,(a+b+c)^2\,(a+b+c)$$

$$= 2abc\,(a+b+c)^3.$$

Example 8. Prove that

$$\begin{vmatrix} 1+a^2-b^2 & 2ab & -2b \\ 2ab & 1-a^2+b^2 & 2a \\ 2b & -2a & 1-a^2-b^2 \end{vmatrix} = (1+a^2+b^2)^3.$$

[C. U. P. 1975, D. U. P. 1961]

Proof :

$$\begin{vmatrix} 1+a^2-b^2 & 2ab & -2b \\ 2ab & 1-a^2+b^2 & 2a \\ 2b & -2a & 1-a^2-b^2 \end{vmatrix} \quad \begin{matrix} c_1' = c_1 - bc_3 \\ \\ c_2' = c_2 + ac_3 \end{matrix}$$

$$= \begin{vmatrix} 1+a^2-b^2+2b^2 & 2ab-2ab & -2b \\ 2ab-2ab & 1-a^2+b^2+2a^2 & 2a \\ 2b-b+ba^2+b^3 & -2a+a-a^3-ab^2 & 1-a^2-b^2 \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{vmatrix} 1+a^2+b^2 & 0 & -2b \\ 0 & 1+a^2+b^2 & 2a \\ b(1+a^2+b^2) & -a(1+a^2+b^2) & 1-a^2-b^2 \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= (1+a^2+b^2)^2 \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 0 & -2b \\ 0 & 1 & 2a \\ b & -a & 1-a^2-b^2 \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= (1+a^2+b^2)^2\{1-a^2-b^2+2a^2+0-2b(0-b)\}$$

$$= (1+a^2+b^2)^2\ \{1+a^2-b^2+2b^2\}$$

$$= (1+a^2+b^2)^2\,(1+a^2+b^2) = (1+a^2+b^2)^3.$$

Example 9. Prove that

$$\begin{vmatrix} (b+c)^2 & a^2 & a^2 \\ b^2 & (c+a)^2 & b^2 \\ c^2 & c^2 & (a+b)^2 \end{vmatrix} = 2abc\,(a+b+c)^3.$$ **[D.U.P. 1973]**

Proof : $\begin{vmatrix} (b+c)^2 & a^2 & a^2 \\ b^2 & (c+a)^2 & b^2 \\ c^2 & c^2 & (a+b)^2 \end{vmatrix}$ $\begin{matrix} c_2' = c_2 - c_1 \\ \\ c_3' = c_3 - c_1 \end{matrix}$

$$= \begin{vmatrix} (b+c)^2 & a^2-(b+c)^2 & a^2-(b+c)^2 \\ b^2 & (c+a)^2-b^2 & 0 \\ c^2 & 0 & (a+b)^2-c^2 \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{vmatrix} (b+c)^2 & (a+b+c)(a-b-c) & (a+b+c)(a-b-c) \\ b^2 & (c+a+b)(c+a-b) & 0 \\ c^2 & 0 & (a+b+c)(a+b-c) \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= (a+b+c)^2 \begin{vmatrix} (b+c)^2 & a-b-c & a-b-c \\ b^2 & c+a-b & 0 \\ c^2 & 0 & a+b-c \end{vmatrix}$$

$$r_1' = r_1 - (r_2 + r_3)$$

$$= (a+b+c)^2 \begin{vmatrix} 2bc & -2c & -2b \\ b^2 & c+a-b & 0 \\ c^2 & 0 & a+b-c \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= 2(a+b+c)^2 \begin{vmatrix} bc & -c & -b \\ b^2 & c+a-b & 0 \\ c^2 & 0 & a+b-c \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= \frac{2(a+b+c)^2}{bc} \begin{vmatrix} bc & -bc & -bc \\ b^2 & bc+ab-b^2 & 0 \\ c^2 & 0 & ca+bc-c^2 \end{vmatrix} \quad \begin{matrix} c_2' = c_2 + c_1 \\ \\ c_3' = c_3 + c_1 \end{matrix}$$

$$= \frac{2(a+b+c)^2}{bc} \begin{vmatrix} bc & 0 & 0 \\ b^2 & bc+ab & b^2 \\ c^2 & c^2 & ca+bc \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= \frac{2(a+b+c)^2\, bc}{bc} \begin{vmatrix} b(c+a) & b^2 \\ c^2 & c(a+b) \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= 2bc(a+b+c)^2 \begin{vmatrix} c+a & b \\ c & a+b \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= 2bc(a+b+c)^2\,(ca+bc+a^2+ab-bc)$$

$$= 2bc(a+b+c)^2\,(ca+a^2+ab) = 2abc\,(a+b+c)^3.$$

Example 10. prove that

$$\begin{vmatrix} bc & a & a^2 \\ ca & b & b^2 \\ ab & c & c^2 \end{vmatrix} = \begin{vmatrix} 1 & a^2 & a^3 \\ 1 & b^2 & b^3 \\ 1 & c^2 & c^3 \end{vmatrix} = (a-b)(b-c)(c-a)(ab+bc+ca).$$

[R. U. P. 1982]

Proof :

1st Portion : $\begin{vmatrix} bc & a & a^2 \\ ca & b & b^2 \\ ab & c & c^2 \end{vmatrix} = \frac{abc}{abc}\begin{vmatrix} bc & a & a^2 \\ ca & b & b^2 \\ ab & c & c^2 \end{vmatrix}$

$$= \frac{1}{abc}\begin{vmatrix} abc & a^2 & a^3 \\ abc & b^2 & b^3 \\ abc & c^2 & c^3 \end{vmatrix} = \frac{abc}{abc}\begin{vmatrix} 1 & a^2 & a^3 \\ 1 & b^2 & b^3 \\ 1 & c^2 & c^3 \end{vmatrix} = \begin{vmatrix} 1 & a^2 & a^3 \\ 1 & b^2 & b^3 \\ 1 & c^2 & c^3 \end{vmatrix}$$

2nd Portion : $\begin{vmatrix} 1 & a^2 & a^3 \\ 1 & b^2 & b^3 \\ 1 & c^2 & c^3 \end{vmatrix} = \begin{vmatrix} 0 & a^2-b^2 & a^3-b^3 \\ 0 & b^2-c^2 & b^3-c^3 \\ 1 & c^2 & c^3 \end{vmatrix}$

$r_1' = r_1 - r_2,\ r_2' = r_2 - r_3$

$$= (a-b)(b-c)\begin{vmatrix} a+b & a^2+ab+b^2 \\ b+c & b^2+bc+c^2 \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= (a-b)(b-c)\{ab^2 + abc + ac^2 + b^3 + b^2c + bc^2 - a^2b - ab^2 - b^3 - a^2c - abc - b^2c\}$$

$$= (a-b)(b-c)\{ac^2 - a^2c + bc^2 - a^2b\}$$

$$= (a-b)(b-c)\{ac(c-a) + b(c+a)(c-a)\}$$

$$= (a-b)(b-c)(c-a)\{ac + bc + ab\}$$

$$= (a-b)(b-c)(c-a)(ab + bc + ca).$$

Example 11. Prove that

$$\begin{vmatrix} a^2 & a^2-(b-c)^2 & bc \\ b^2 & b^2-(c-a)^2 & ca \\ c^2 & c^2-(a-b)^2 & ab \end{vmatrix} = (b-c)(c-a)(a-b)(a+b+c)(a^2+b^2+c^2).$$

Proof : $\begin{vmatrix} a^2 & a^2-(b-c)^2 & bc \\ b^2 & b^2-(c-a)^2 & ca \\ c^2 & c^2-(a-b)^2 & ab \end{vmatrix}$

$$= \begin{vmatrix} a^2 & a^2 & bc \\ b^2 & b^2 & ca \\ c^2 & c^2 & ab \end{vmatrix} - \begin{vmatrix} a^2 & (b-c)^2 & bc \\ b^2 & (c-a)^2 & ca \\ c^2 & (a-b)^2 & ab \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= 0 - \begin{vmatrix} a^2 & b^2-2bc+c^2 & bc \\ b^2 & c^2-2ca+a^2 & ca \\ c^2 & a^2-2ab+b^2 & ab \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= -\begin{vmatrix} a^2 & b^2+c^2 & bc \\ b^2 & c^2+a^2 & ca \\ c^2 & a^2+b^2 & ab \end{vmatrix} + 2\begin{vmatrix} a^2 & bc & bc \\ b^2 & ca & ca \\ c^2 & ab & ab \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= -\begin{vmatrix} a^2 & b^2 + c^2 & bc \\ b^2 & c^2 + a^2 & ca \\ c^2 & a^2 + b^2 & ab \end{vmatrix} + 0$$

$r_1' = r_1 - r_2,\ r_2' = r_2 - r_3.$

$$= -\begin{vmatrix} a^2 - b^2 & b^2 - a^2 & c(b-a) \\ b^2 - c^2 & c^2 - b^2 & a(c-b) \\ c^2 & a^2 + b^2 & ab \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= -(a-b)(b-c)\begin{vmatrix} a+b & -(a+b) & -c \\ b+c & -(b+c) & -a \\ c^2 & a^2+b^2 & ab \end{vmatrix} \quad c_1' = c_1 + c_2$$

$$= -(a-b)(b-c)\begin{vmatrix} 0 & -(a+b) & -c \\ 0 & -(b+c) & -a \\ a^2+b^2+c^2 & a^2+b^2 & ab \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= -(a-b)(b-c)(a^2+b^2+c^2)\begin{vmatrix} a+b & c \\ b+c & a \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= -(a-b)(b-c)(a^2+b^2+c^2)(a^2+ab-bc-c^2)$$

$$= -(a-b)(b-c)(a^2+b^2+c^2)\{b(a-c)+(a+c)(a-c)\}$$

$$= -(a-b)(b-c)(a^2+b^2+c^2)(a-c)(a+b+c)$$

$$= (a-b)(b-c)(c-a)(a+b+c)(a^2+b^2+c^2).$$

Example 12. Prove that

$$\begin{vmatrix} (b+c)^2 & c^2 & b^2 \\ c^2 & (c+a)^2 & a^2 \\ b^2 & a^2 & (a+b)^2 \end{vmatrix} = 2(bc+ca+ab)^3$$

Proof : $\begin{vmatrix} (b+c)^2 & c^2 & b^2 \\ c^2 & (c+a)^2 & a^2 \\ b^2 & a^2 & (a+b)^2 \end{vmatrix} \quad r_1' = r_1 - (r_2 + r_3)$

$$= \begin{vmatrix} 2bc & -2(ca+a^2) & -2(ab+a^2) \\ c^2 & (c+a)^2 & a^2 \\ b^2 & a^2 & (a+b)^2 \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= 2\begin{vmatrix} bc & -(ca+a^2) & -(ab+a^2) \\ c^2 & (c+a)^2 & a^2 \\ b^2 & a^2 & (a+b)^2 \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= 2[bc\{(c+a)^2(a+b)^2 - a^4\} + (ca+a^2)\{c^2(a+b)^2 - a^2b^2\}$$
$$- (ab+a^2)\{c^2a^2 - b^2(c+a)^2\}]$$

$$= 2[bc\{c^2 + 2ca + a^2)(a^2 + 2ab + b^2) - a^4\} + (ca + a^2)(c^2a^2 + 2abc^2 + b^2c^2 - a^2b^2) - (ab + a^2)(c^2a^2 - b^2c^2 - 2ab^2c - a^2b^2)$$

$$= 2[bc\{c^2a^2 + 2abc^2 + b^2c^2 + 2a^3c + 4a^2bc + 2ab^2c + a^4 + 2a^3b + a^2b^2 - a^4\} + c^3a^3 + 2a^2bc^3 + ab^2c^3 - a^3b^2c + a^4c^2 + 2a^3bc^2 + a^2b^2c^2 - a^4b^2 - a^3bc^2 - a^4c^2 + ab^3c^2 + 2a^2b^3c + a^3b^3 + a^2b^2c^2 + 2a^3b^2c + a^4b^2]$$

$$= 2[a^2bc^3 + 2ab^2c^3 + b^3c^3 + 2a^3bc^2 + 4a^2b^2c^2 + 2ab^3c^2 + 2a^3b^2c + a^2b^3c + a^3c^3 + 2a^2bc^3 + ab^2c^3 - a^3b^2c + 2a^3bc^2 + 2a^2b^2c^2 - a^3bc^2 + ab^3c^2 + 2a^2b^3c + a^3b^3 + 2a^3b^2c]$$

$$= 2[b^3c^3 + c^3a^3 + a^3b^3 + 3a^2bc^3 + 3ab^2c^3 + 4a^3bc^2 - a^3bc^2 + 6a^2b^2c^2 + 3ab^3c^2 + 3a^2b^3c + 4a^3b^2c - a^3b^2c]$$

$$= 2[(bc)^3 + (ca)^3 + (ab)^3 + 3a^2bc^3 + 3ab^2c^3 + 3a^2b^3c + 3a^3bc^2 + 6a^2b^2c^2 + 3ab^3c^2 + 3a^3b^2c]$$

$$= 2(bc + ca + ab)^3.$$

Example 13. Prove that

$$\begin{vmatrix} 1 + a_1 & a_2 & a_3 & a_4 \\ a_1 & 1 + a_2 & a_3 & a_4 \\ a_1 & a_2 & 1 + a_3 & a_4 \\ a_1 & a_2 & a_3 & 1 + a_4 \end{vmatrix} = 1 + a_1 + a_2 + a_3 + a_4.$$

[D. U. P. 1967, J. U. S. 1975]

Proof :

$$\text{L.H.S} = \begin{vmatrix} 1 + a_1 & a_2 & a_3 & a_4 \\ a_1 & 1 + a_2 & a_3 & a_4 \\ a_1 & a_2 & 1 + a_3 & a_4 \\ a_1 & a_2 & a_3 & 1 + a_4 \end{vmatrix} \quad c_1' = c_1 + c_2 + c_3 + c_4$$

$$= \begin{vmatrix} 1 + a_1 + a_2 + a_3 + a_4 & a_2 & a_3 & a_4 \\ 1 + a_1 + a_2 + a_3 + a_4 & 1 + a_2 & a_3 & a_4 \\ 1 + a_1 + a_2 + a_3 + a_4 & a_2 & 1 + a_3 & a_4 \\ 1 + a_1 + a_2 + a_3 + a_4 & a_2 & a_3 & 1 + a_4 \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= (1 + a_1 + a_2 + a_3 + a_4)\begin{vmatrix} 1 & a_2 & a_3 & a_4 \\ 1 & 1 + a_2 & a_3 & a_4 \\ 1 & a_2 & 1 + a_3 & a_4 \\ 1 & a_2 & a_3 & 1 + a_4 \end{vmatrix}$$

$r_2' = r_2 - r_1, \quad r_3' = r_3 - r_1 \quad r'_4 = r_4 - r_1$

$$= (1 + a_1 + a_2 + a_3 + a_4)\begin{vmatrix} 1 & a_2 & a_3 & a_4 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= (1 + a_1 + a_2 + a_3 + a_4)\begin{vmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= (1 + a_1 + a_2 + a_3 + a_4) \times 1 = 1 + a_1 + a_2 + a_3 + a_4 = \text{R. H. S.}$$

Example 14. Prove that

$$\begin{vmatrix} 1 + a & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 + b & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 + c & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 + d \end{vmatrix} = abcd\left(1 + \frac{1}{a} + \frac{1}{b} + \frac{1}{c} + \frac{1}{d}\right)$$

Proof : L. H. S. $= \begin{vmatrix} 1 + a & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 + b & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 + c & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 + d \end{vmatrix}$

$$= \frac{abcd}{abcd}\begin{vmatrix} 1 + a & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 + b & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 + c & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 + d \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= abcd\begin{vmatrix} \frac{1}{a} + 1 & \frac{1}{b} & \frac{1}{c} & \frac{1}{d} \\ \frac{1}{a} & \frac{1}{b} + 1 & \frac{1}{c} & \frac{1}{d} \\ \frac{1}{a} & \frac{1}{b} & \frac{1}{c} + 1 & \frac{1}{d} \\ \frac{1}{a} & \frac{1}{b} & \frac{1}{c} & \frac{1}{d} + 1 \end{vmatrix} \quad c_1' = c_1 + c_2 + c_3 + c_4$$

$$= abcd \begin{vmatrix} 1+\frac{1}{a}+\frac{1}{b}+\frac{1}{c}+\frac{1}{d} & \frac{1}{b} & \frac{1}{c} & \frac{1}{d} \\ 1+\frac{1}{a}+\frac{1}{b}+\frac{1}{c}+\frac{1}{d} & \frac{1}{b}+1 & \frac{1}{c} & \frac{1}{d} \\ 1+\frac{1}{a}+\frac{1}{b}+\frac{1}{c}+\frac{1}{d} & \frac{1}{b} & \frac{1}{c}+1 & \frac{1}{d} \\ 1+\frac{1}{a}+\frac{1}{b}+\frac{1}{c}+\frac{1}{d} & \frac{1}{b} & \frac{1}{c} & \frac{1}{d}+1 \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= abcd\left(1+\frac{1}{a}+\frac{1}{b}+\frac{1}{c}+\frac{1}{d}\right) \begin{vmatrix} 1 & \frac{1}{b} & \frac{1}{c} & \frac{1}{d} \\ 1 & \frac{1}{b}+1 & \frac{1}{c} & \frac{1}{d} \\ 1 & \frac{1}{b} & \frac{1}{c}+1 & \frac{1}{d} \\ 1 & \frac{1}{b} & \frac{1}{c} & \frac{1}{d}+1 \end{vmatrix}.$$

$r_2' = r_2 - r_1$. $r_3' = r_3 - r_1$. $r_4' = r_4 - r_1$

$$= abcd\left(1+\frac{1}{a}+\frac{1}{b}+\frac{1}{c}+\frac{1}{d}\right) \begin{vmatrix} 1 & \frac{1}{b} & \frac{1}{c} & \frac{1}{d} \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= abcd\left(1+\frac{1}{a}+\frac{1}{b}+\frac{1}{c}+\frac{1}{d}\right) = \text{R. H. S.}$$

Example 15. show that

$$\begin{vmatrix} -1 & b & c & d \\ a & -1 & c & d \\ a & b & -1 & d \\ a & b & c & -1 \end{vmatrix} = (a+1)(b+1)(c+1)(d+1)$$

$$\left(1-\frac{a}{a+1}-\frac{b}{b+1}-\frac{c}{c+1}-\frac{d}{d+1}\right)$$

Proof : L. H. S $= \begin{vmatrix} -1 & b & c & d \\ a & -1 & c & d \\ a & b & -1 & d \\ a & b & c & -1 \end{vmatrix}$ $\quad r_2' = r_2 - r_1$. $r_3' = r_3 - r_1$. $r_4' = r_4 - r_1$.

$$= \begin{vmatrix} -1 & b & c & d \\ a+1 & -(b+1) & 0 & 0 \\ a+1 & 0 & -(c+1) & 0 \\ a+1 & 0 & 0 & -(d+1) \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= (a+1)(b+1)(c+1)(d+1) \begin{vmatrix} -\frac{1}{a+1} & \frac{b}{b+1} & \frac{c}{c+1} & \frac{d}{d+1} \\ 1 & -1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & -1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & -1 \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= (a+1)(b+1)(c+1)(d+1)$$

$$\left[-\frac{1}{a+1} \begin{vmatrix} -1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -1 \end{vmatrix} - \frac{b}{b+1} \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & -1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & -1 \end{vmatrix} \right.$$

$$\left. + \frac{c}{c+1} \begin{vmatrix} 1 & -1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & -1 \end{vmatrix} - \frac{d}{d+1} \begin{vmatrix} 1 & -1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 \end{vmatrix} \right]$$

$$= (a+1)(b+1)(c+1)(d+1) \left[\frac{1}{a+1} - \frac{b}{b+1} - \frac{c}{c+1} - \frac{d}{d+1} \right]$$

$$= (a+1)(b+1)(c+1)(d+1) \left[\frac{a+1-a}{a+1} - \frac{b}{b+1} - \frac{c}{c+1} - \frac{d}{d+1} \right]$$

$$= (a+1)(b+1)(c+1)(d+1) \left[1 - \frac{a}{a+1} - \frac{b}{b+1} - \frac{c}{c+1} - \frac{d}{d+1} \right]$$

$$= \text{R. H. S.}$$

Example 16. Prove that

$$\begin{vmatrix} -a & -b & c & d \\ b & -a & -d & c \\ c & -d & a & -b \\ d & c & b & a \end{vmatrix} = (a^2 + b^2 + c^2 + d^2)^2$$

[D. U. S. 1984]

Proof : $$\begin{vmatrix} -a & -b & c & d \\ b & -a & -d & c \\ c & -d & a & -b \\ d & c & b & a \end{vmatrix} = \frac{abcd}{abcd} \begin{vmatrix} -a & -b & c & d \\ b & -a & -d & c \\ c & -d & a & -b \\ d & c & b & a \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= \frac{1}{abcd} \begin{vmatrix} -ad & -bc & bc & ad \\ bd & -ac & -bd & ca \\ cd & -dc & ab & -ab \\ d^2 & c^2 & b^2 & a^2 \end{vmatrix} \quad c_1' = c_1 + c_2 + c_3 + c_4.$$

$$= \frac{1}{abcd}\begin{vmatrix} 0 & -bc & bc & ad \\ 0 & -ac & -bd & ca \\ 0 & -dc & ab & -ab \\ a^2+b^2+c^2+d^2 & c^2 & b^2 & a^2 \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= -\frac{a^2+b^2+c^2+d^2}{abcd}\begin{vmatrix} -bc & bc & ad \\ -ac & -bd & ca \\ -dc & ab & -ab \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= \frac{a^2+b^2+c^2+d^2}{d}\begin{vmatrix} b & c & d \\ a & -d & c \\ d & a & -b \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= \frac{a^2+b^2+c^2+d^2}{d}\{b(db-ac)-c(-ab-cd)+d(a^2+d^2)\}$$

$$= \frac{a^2+b^2+c^2+d^2}{d}\{b^2d-abc+abc+c^2d+d(a^2+d^2)\}$$

$$= \frac{a^2+b^2+c^2+d^2}{d}\{(a^2+b^2+c^2+d^2)d\}$$

$$= (a^2+b^2+c^2+d^2)^2.$$

Example 17. Applying **Laplace's expansion** prove that

$$\begin{vmatrix} x+a & b & c & d \\ a & x+b & c & d \\ a & b & x+c & d \\ a & b & c & x+d \end{vmatrix} = x^3(a+b+c+d+x).$$

[J. U. (Sup.) 1979]
[D. U. P. 1986]

Proof : By applying Laplace's expansion we get

$$\begin{vmatrix} x+a & b & c & d \\ a & x+b & c & d \\ \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots \\ a & b & x+c & d \\ a & b & c & x+d \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{vmatrix} x+a & b \\ a & x+b \end{vmatrix}\begin{vmatrix} x+c & d \\ c & x+d \end{vmatrix} - \begin{vmatrix} x+a & b \\ a & b \end{vmatrix}\begin{vmatrix} c & d \\ c & x+d \end{vmatrix}$$

$$+ \begin{vmatrix} x+a & b \\ a & b \end{vmatrix}\begin{vmatrix} c & d \\ x+c & d \end{vmatrix} + \begin{vmatrix} a & x+b \\ a & b \end{vmatrix}\begin{vmatrix} c & d \\ c & x+d \end{vmatrix}$$

$$- \begin{vmatrix} a & x+b \\ a & b \end{vmatrix}\begin{vmatrix} c & d \\ x+c & d \end{vmatrix} + \begin{vmatrix} a & b \\ a & b \end{vmatrix}\begin{vmatrix} c & d \\ c & d \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= \{(x+a)(x+b) - ab\}\{(x+c)(x+d) - cd\}$$
$$- (bx + ab - ab)(cx + cd - cd) + (bx + ab - ab)(cd - dx - cd)$$
$$+ (ab - ax - ab)(cx + cd - cd) - (ab - ax - ab)(cd - dx - cd)$$
$$+ (ab - ab)(cd - cd).$$
$$= \{x^2 + ax + bx + ab - ab\}\{x^2 + cx + dx + cd - cd\} - bcx^2$$
$$- bdx^2 - acx^2 - adx^2$$
$$= x^4 + ax^3 + bx^3 + cx^3 + cax^2 + bcx^2 + dx^3 + adx^2 + bdx^2 - bcx^2$$
$$- bdx^2 - cax^2 - adx^2$$
$$= x^4 + ax^3 + bx^3 + cx^3 + dx^3$$
$$= x^3(x + a + b + c + d).$$

Example 18. Applying **Laplace's expansion** prove that

$$\begin{vmatrix} a^2+1 & ab & ac & ad \\ ba & b^2+1 & bc & bd \\ ca & cb & c^2+1 & cd \\ da & db & dc & d^2+1 \end{vmatrix} = a^2 + b^2 + c^2 + d^2 + 1.$$

[D. U. S. 1983]

Proof :
$$\begin{vmatrix} a^2+1 & ab & \vdots & ac & ad \\ ba & b^2+1 & \vdots & bc & bd \\ \cdots & \cdots & \vdots & \cdots & \cdots \\ ca & cb & \vdots & c^2+1 & cd \\ da & db & \vdots & dc & d^2+1 \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{vmatrix} a^2+1 & ab \\ ba & b^2+1 \end{vmatrix}\begin{vmatrix} c^2+1 & cd \\ dc & d^2+1 \end{vmatrix} - \begin{vmatrix} a^2+1 & ab \\ ca & cb \end{vmatrix}\begin{vmatrix} bc & bd \\ dc & d^2+1 \end{vmatrix}$$
$$+ \begin{vmatrix} a^2+1 & ab \\ da & db \end{vmatrix}\begin{vmatrix} bc & bd \\ c^2+1 & cd \end{vmatrix} \begin{vmatrix} ba & b^2+1 \\ ca & cb \end{vmatrix}\begin{vmatrix} ac & ad \\ dc & d^2+1 \end{vmatrix}$$
$$- \begin{vmatrix} ba & b^2+1 \\ da & db \end{vmatrix}\begin{vmatrix} ac & ad \\ c^2+1 & cd \end{vmatrix} + \begin{vmatrix} ca & cb \\ da & db \end{vmatrix}\begin{vmatrix} ac & ad \\ bc & bd \end{vmatrix}$$
$$= \{(a^2+1)(b^2+1) - a^2b^2\}\{(c^2+1)(d^2+1) - c^2d^2\}$$
$$- (a^2bc + bc - a^2bc)(bcd^2 + bc - bd^2c)$$
$$+ (a^2bd + bd - a^2bd)(bc^2d - bc^2d - bd)$$
$$+ (ab^2c - ab^2c - ca)(acd^2 + ac - ad^2c)$$
$$- (ab^2d - ab^2d - ad)(ac^2d - ac^2d - ad)$$
$$+ (abcd - abcd)(abcd - abcd)$$

$$= (a^2b^2 + a^2 + b^2 + 1 - a^2b^2)(c^2d^2 + c^2 + d^2 + 1 - c^2d^2)$$
$$- b^2c^2 - b^2d^2 - c^2a^2 - a^2d^2 + 0$$

$$= (a^2 + b^2 + 1)(c^2 + d^2 + 1) - b^2c^2 - b^2d^2 - c^2a^2 - a^2d^2$$

$$= a^2c^2 + b^2c^2 + c^2 + a^2d^2 + b^2d^2 + d^2 + a^2 + b^2 + 1 - b^2c^2$$
$$- b^2d^2 - c^2a^2 - a^2d^2$$

$$= a^2 + b^2 + c^2 + d^2 + 1.$$

Assement

Example 19 . Prove that

$$\begin{vmatrix} a^2 - bc & b^2 - ca & c^2 - ab \\ c^2 - ab & a^2 - bc & b^2 - ca \\ b^2 - ca & c^2 - ab & a^2 - bc \end{vmatrix} = (a^3 + b^3 + c^3 - 3abc)^2.$$

[D. U. S. (Sup) 1985]

Proof : $\begin{vmatrix} a^2 - bc & b^2 - ca & c^2 - ab \\ c^2 - ab & a^2 - bc & b^2 - ca \\ b^2 - ca & c^2 - ab & a^2 - bc \end{vmatrix}$

$c_1' = c_1 + c_2 + c_3$

$$= \begin{vmatrix} a^2 + b^2 + c^2 - ab - bc - ca & b^2 - ca & c^2 - ab \\ a^2 + b^2 + c^2 - ab - bc - ca & a^2 - bc & b^2 - ca \\ a^2 + b^2 + c^2 - ab - bc - ca & c^2 - ab & a^2 - bc \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= (a^2 + b^2 + c^2 - ab - bc - ca) \begin{vmatrix} 1 & b^2 - ca & c^2 - ab \\ 1 & a^2 - bc & b^2 - ca \\ 1 & c^2 - ab & a^2 - bc \end{vmatrix}$$

$$r_1' = r_1 - r_2 , \; r_2' = r_2 - r_3$$

$$= (a^2 + b^2 + c^2 - ab - bc - ca)$$
$$\begin{vmatrix} 0 & b^2 - a^2 + bc - ca & c^2 - b^2 + ca - ab \\ 0 & a^2 - c^2 + ab - bc & b^2 - a^2 + bc - ca \\ 1 & c^2 - ab & a^2 - bc \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= (a^2 + b^2 + c^2 - ab - bc - ca)$$
$$\begin{vmatrix} b^2 - a^2 + bc - ca & c^2 - b^2 + ca - ab \\ a^2 - c^2 + ab - bc & b^2 - a^2 + bc - ca \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= (a^2 + b^2 + c^2 - ab - bc - ca)$$
$$\begin{vmatrix} (b - a)(a + b + c) & (c - b)(a + b + c) \\ (a - c)(a + b + c) & (b - a)(a + b + c) \end{vmatrix}$$

CamScanner

$$= (a+b+c)^2 (a^2+b^2+c^2-ab-bc-ca) \begin{vmatrix} b-a & c-b \\ a-c & b-a \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= (a+b+c)^2 (a^2+b^2+c^2-ab-bc-ca)(b^2-2ba+a^2-ac+ab+c^2-bc)$$

$$= (a+b+c)^2 (a^2+b^2+c^2-ab-bc-ca)(a^2+b^2+c^2-ab-bc-ca)$$

$$= \{(a+b+c)(a^2+b^2+c^2-ab-bc-ca)\}^2$$

$$= (a^3+b^3+c^3-3abc)^2.$$

Example 20. Prove that

$$\begin{vmatrix} b^2+c^2 & ab & ac \\ ab & c^2+a^2 & bc \\ ac & bc & a^2+b^2 \end{vmatrix} = \begin{vmatrix} 0 & c & b \\ c & 0 & a \\ b & a & 0 \end{vmatrix}^2 = 4a^2b^2c^2.$$

Proof : By ordinary multiplication of two determinants of the same order, we have

$$\begin{vmatrix} 0 & c & b \\ c & 0 & a \\ b & a & 0 \end{vmatrix}^2 = \begin{vmatrix} 0 & c & b \\ c & 0 & a \\ b & a & 0 \end{vmatrix} \times \begin{vmatrix} 0 & c & b \\ c & 0 & a \\ b & a & 0 \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{vmatrix} 0+c^2+b^2 & 0+0+ab & 0+ca+0 \\ 0+0+ab & c^2+0+a^2 & bc+0+0 \\ 0+ca+0 & bc+0+0 & b^2+a^2+0 \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{vmatrix} b^2+c^2 & ab & ac \\ ab & c^2+a^2 & bc \\ ac & bc & a^2+b^2 \end{vmatrix}$$

Again $\begin{vmatrix} 0 & c & b \\ c & 0 & a \\ b & a & 0 \end{vmatrix} = 0 - c(0-ab) + b(ca-0)$
$= abc + abc = 2abc.$

$$\therefore \quad \begin{vmatrix} 0 & c & b \\ c & 0 & a \\ b & a & 0 \end{vmatrix}^2 = (2abc)^2 = 4a^2b^2c^2.$$

Hence $\begin{vmatrix} b^2+c^2 & ab & ac \\ ab & c^2+a^2 & bc \\ ac & bc & a^2+b^2 \end{vmatrix} = \begin{vmatrix} 0 & c & b \\ c & 0 & a \\ b & a & 0 \end{vmatrix}^2 = 4a^2b^2c^2.$

Example 21. Prove that

$$\begin{vmatrix} a & b & c \\ b & c & a \\ c & a & b \end{vmatrix}^2 = \begin{vmatrix} 2bc-a^2 & c^2 & b^2 \\ c^2 & 2ca-b^2 & a^2 \\ b^2 & a^2 & 2ab-c^2 \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= (3abc - a^3 - b^3 - c^3)^2.$$

Proof : $\begin{vmatrix} a & b & c \\ b & c & a \\ c & a & b \end{vmatrix}^2 = \begin{vmatrix} a & b & c \\ b & c & a \\ c & a & b \end{vmatrix} \times \begin{vmatrix} a & b & c \\ b & c & a \\ c & a & b \end{vmatrix}$

$$= \begin{vmatrix} a & b & c \\ b & c & a \\ c & a & b \end{vmatrix} \times \begin{vmatrix} a & c & b \\ b & a & c \\ c & b & a \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{vmatrix} a & b & c \\ b & c & a \\ c & a & b \end{vmatrix} \times \begin{vmatrix} -a & c & b \\ -b & a & c \\ -c & b & a \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{vmatrix} -a^2 + bc + bc & -ab + ba + c^2 & -ac + b^2 + ca \\ -ba + c^2 + ab & -b^2 + ca + ac & -bc + cb + a^2 \\ -ca + ac + b^2 & -cb + a^2 + bc & -c^2 + ab + ba \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{vmatrix} 2bc - a^2 & c^2 & b^2 \\ c^2 & 2ca - b^2 & a^2 \\ b^2 & a^2 & 2ab - c^2 \end{vmatrix}$$

Again $\begin{vmatrix} a & b & c \\ b & c & a \\ c & a & b \end{vmatrix} = a(bc - a^2) - b(b^2 - ca) + c(ab - c^2)$

$= abc - a^3 - b^3 + abc + abc - c^3$

$= (3abc - a^3 - b^3 - c^3)$

$$\therefore \begin{vmatrix} a & b & c \\ b & c & a \\ c & a & b \end{vmatrix}^2 = (3abc - a^3 - b^3 - c^3)^2$$

Hence $\begin{vmatrix} a & b & c \\ b & c & a \\ c & a & b \end{vmatrix}^2 = \begin{vmatrix} 2bc - a^2 & c^2 & b^2 \\ c^2 & 2ca - b^2 & a^2 \\ b^2 & a^2 & 2ab - c^2 \end{vmatrix}$

$$= (3abc - a^3 - b^3 - c^3)^2.$$

Example 22. If $S_i = a^i + b^i + c^i$, prove that

$$\begin{vmatrix} S_0 & S_1 & S_2 \\ S_1 & S_2 & S_3 \\ S_2 & S_3 & S_4 \end{vmatrix} = \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 \\ a & b & c \\ a^2 & b^2 & c^2 \end{vmatrix}^2 = (a-b)^2 (b-c)^2 (c-a)^2 .$$

Proof : Given $S_i = a^i + b^i + c^i$

$\therefore \quad S_0 = a^0 + b^0 + c^0 = 1 + 1 + 1$

$S_1 = a + b + c$

$S_2 = a^2 + b^2 + c^2$

$S_3 = a^3 + b^3 + c^3$

$S_4 = a^4 + b^4 + c^4$

$$\begin{vmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 \\ a & b & c \\ a^2 & b^2 & c^2 \end{vmatrix}^2 = \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 \\ a & b & c \\ a^2 & b^2 & c^2 \end{vmatrix} \times \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 \\ a & b & c \\ a^2 & b^2 & c^2 \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{vmatrix} 1+1+1 & a+b+c & a^2+b^2+c^2 \\ a+b+c & a^2+b^2+c^2 & a^3+b^3+c^3 \\ a^2+b^2+c^2 & a^3+b^3+c^3 & a^4+b^4+c^4 \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{vmatrix} S_0 & S_1 & S_2 \\ S_1 & S_2 & S_3 \\ S_2 & S_3 & S_4 \end{vmatrix}$$

Again $\begin{vmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 \\ a & b & c \\ a^2 & b^2 & c^2 \end{vmatrix} = \begin{vmatrix} 0 & 0 & 1 \\ a-b & b-c & c \\ a^2-b^2 & b^2-c^2 & c^2 \end{vmatrix} = \begin{vmatrix} a-b & b-c \\ a^2-b^2 & b^2-c^2 \end{vmatrix}$

$c_1' = c_1 - c_2$. $\quad = (a-b)(b-c)\begin{vmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ a+b & b+c \end{vmatrix}$

$c_2' = c_2 - c_3$

$$= (a-b)(b-c)(b+c-a-b)$$

$$= (a-b)(b-c)(c-a)$$

$$\therefore \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 \\ a & b & c \\ a^2 & b^2 & c^2 \end{vmatrix}^2 = (a-b)^2 \ (b-c)^2 \ (c-a)^2.$$

Hence $= \begin{vmatrix} S_0 & S_1 & S_2 \\ S_1 & S_2 & S_3 \\ S_2 & S_3 & S_4 \end{vmatrix} = \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 \\ a & b & c \\ a^2 & b^2 & c^2 \end{vmatrix}^2 = (a-b)^2 (b-c)^2 (c-a)^2.$

Example 23. Solve $\begin{vmatrix} x+2 & 2x+3 & 3x+4 \\ 2x+3 & 3x+4 & 4x+5 \\ 3x+5 & 5x+8 & 10x+17 \end{vmatrix} = 0$

[D.U. P. 1975]

Solution: $\begin{vmatrix} x+2 & 2x+3 & 3x+4 \\ 2x+3 & 3x+4 & 4x+5 \\ 3x+5 & 5x+8 & 10x+17 \end{vmatrix} = 0$

$r_2' = r_2 - r_1$ and $r_3' = r_3 - r_2$

Or, $\begin{vmatrix} x+2 & 2x+3 & 3x+4 \\ x+1 & x+1 & x+1 \\ x+2 & 2x+4 & 6x+12 \end{vmatrix} = 0$

$$\text{Or, } (x+1)\begin{vmatrix} x+2 & 2x+3 & 3x+4 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 \\ x+2 & 2(x+2) & 6(x+2) \end{vmatrix} = 0$$

$$\text{Or, } (x+1)(x+2)\begin{vmatrix} x+2 & 2x+3 & 3x+4 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 2 & 6 \end{vmatrix} = 0$$

$c'_2 = c_2 - c_1$ and $c'_3 = c_3 - c_2$.

$$\text{Or, } (x+1)(x+2)\begin{vmatrix} x+2 & x+1 & x+1 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 4 \end{vmatrix} = 0$$

$$\text{Or, } -(x+1)(x+2)\begin{vmatrix} x+1 & x+1 \\ 1 & 4 \end{vmatrix} = 0$$

$$\text{Or, } (x+1)^2(x+2)\begin{vmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 4 \end{vmatrix} = 0$$

Or, $(x+1)^2(x+2)(4-1) = 0$

Or, $3(x+1)^2(x+2) = 0$, Since $3 \neq 0$

$\therefore (x+1)^2(x+2) = 0$

Thus $x = -1$, $x = -1$, $x = -2$. which is the required solution.

Example 24. Apply **Cramer's rule** to slove the following system of linear equations:

$$\left.\begin{aligned} 3x + y + 2z &= 3 \\ 2x - 3y - z &= -3 \\ x + 2y + z &= 4 \end{aligned}\right\}$$

Solution: Given $\left.\begin{aligned} 3x + y + 2z &= 3 \\ 2x - 3y - z &= -3 \\ x + 2y + z &= 4 \end{aligned}\right\}$

$$D = \begin{vmatrix} 3 & 1 & 2 \\ 2 & -3 & -1 \\ 1 & 2 & 1 \end{vmatrix} = 3(-3+2) - 1(2+1) + 2(4+3)$$
$$= -3 - 3 + 14 = 8 \neq 0$$

So the given system is consistent.

$$D_1 = \begin{vmatrix} 3 & 1 & 2 \\ -3 & -3 & -1 \\ 4 & 2 & 1 \end{vmatrix} \begin{aligned} &= 3(-3+2) - 1(-3+4) + 2(-6+12) \\ &= -3 - 1 + 12 = 8 \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore x = \frac{D_1}{D} = \frac{8}{8} = 1.$$

$$D_2 = \begin{vmatrix} 3 & 3 & 2 \\ 2 & -3 & -1 \\ 1 & 4 & 1 \end{vmatrix} \begin{aligned} &= 3(-3+4) - 3(2+1) + 2(8+3) \\ &= 3 - 9 + 22 = 16 \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore y = \frac{D_2}{D} = \frac{16}{8} = 2.$$

$$D_3 = \begin{vmatrix} 3 & 1 & 3 \\ 2 & -3 & -3 \\ 1 & 2 & 4 \end{vmatrix} \begin{aligned} &= 3(-12+6) - 1(8+3) + 3(4+3) \\ &= -18 - 11 + 21 = -8 \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore z = \frac{D_3}{D} = \frac{-8}{8} = -1$$

Thus $x = 1$, $y = 2$, $z = -1$ is a solution of the given system of linear equations.

Example 25. Slove the following linear equations with the help of determinant **(Cramer's rule):**

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x - 2y + 3z &= 11 \\ 2x + y + 2z &= 10 \\ 3x + 2y + z &= 9 \end{aligned}\right\}$$

[D. U. P. 1976]

Solution : Using **Cramer's rule,** we have

$$D = \begin{vmatrix} 1 & -2 & 3 \\ 2 & 1 & 2 \\ 3 & 2 & 1 \end{vmatrix} \begin{aligned} &= 1(1-4) + 2(2-6) + 3(4-3) \\ &= -3 - 8 + 3 = -8 \neq 0 \end{aligned}$$

So the given system is consistent.

$$D_1 = \begin{vmatrix} 11 & -2 & 3 \\ 10 & 1 & 2 \\ 9 & 2 & 1 \end{vmatrix} \begin{aligned} &= 11(1-4) + 2(10-18) + 3(20-9) \\ &= -33 - 16 + 33 = -16 \end{aligned}$$

$$D_2 = \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 11 & 3 \\ 2 & 10 & 2 \\ 3 & 9 & 1 \end{vmatrix} \begin{aligned} &= 1\,(10-18) - 11\,(2-6) + 3(18-30) \\ &= -8 + 44 - 36 = 0 \end{aligned}$$

$$D_3 = \begin{vmatrix} 1 & -2 & 11 \\ 2 & 1 & 10 \\ 3 & 2 & 9 \end{vmatrix} \begin{aligned} &= 1(9-20) + 2(18-30) + 11(4-3) \\ &= -11 - 24 + 11 = -24. \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore \quad x = \frac{D_1}{D} = \frac{-16}{-8} = 2$$

$$y = \frac{D_2}{D} = \frac{0}{-8} = 0$$

$$z = \frac{D_3}{D} = \frac{-24}{-8} = 3$$

Thus $x = 2$, $y = 0$, $z = 3$ is a solution of the given system of linear equations.

EXERCISES – 2 (A)

1. (a) Evaluate the following determinants :

(i) $\begin{vmatrix} 0 & 1 & 2 & 3 \\ -1 & 0 & 1 & 2 \\ -2 & -1 & 0 & 3 \\ -3 & -2 & -3 & 0 \end{vmatrix}$ (ii) $\begin{vmatrix} 3 & 1 & -1 & 2 & 1 \\ 0 & 3 & 1 & 4 & 2 \\ 1 & 4 & 2 & 3 & 1 \\ 5 & -1 & -3 & 2 & 5 \\ -1 & 1 & 2 & 3 & 2 \end{vmatrix}$

Answer : (i) $D = 4$ (ii) $D = -166$.

1. (b) Calculate the values of the following determinants by **Sarrus method:**

(i) $\begin{vmatrix} -2 & 5 & 1 \\ 3 & 4 & 2 \\ 1 & -3 & 2 \end{vmatrix}$ (ii) $\begin{vmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 4 & 5 & 6 \\ 7 & 8 & 9 \end{vmatrix}$

Answer : (i) -61, (ii) 0

1(c) Prove by **Sarrus diagram** that

$$\begin{vmatrix} -a^2 & ab & ac \\ ba & -b^2 & bc \\ ca & cb & -c^2 \end{vmatrix} = 4a^2b^2c^2.$$

CamScanner

2. Prove that $\begin{vmatrix} a+b+2c & a & b \\ c & b+c+2a & b \\ c & a & c+a+2b \end{vmatrix} = 2(a+b+c)^3.$

3 (i) Show that $\begin{vmatrix} 1 & a & a^2-bc \\ 1 & b & b^2-ca \\ 1 & c & c^2-ab \end{vmatrix} = 0$ **[D. U. P. 1979]**

(ii) Show that

$$\begin{vmatrix} a^2 & a^2+ab & ab \\ bc & b^2 & b^2+bc \\ ac+c^2 & ac & c^2 \end{vmatrix} = 4a^2b^2c^2.$$

[C. U. P 1980, 83]

4. Prove that $\begin{vmatrix} a-b-c & 2a & 2a \\ 2b & b-c-a & 2b \\ 2c & 2c & c-a-b \end{vmatrix} = (a+b+c)^3.$

5. Prove that

$$\begin{vmatrix} (b+c)^2 & a^2 & bc \\ (c+a)^2 & b^2 & ca \\ (a+b)^2 & c^2 & ab \end{vmatrix} = (a^2+b^2+c^2)\ (a+b+c)\ (a-b)\ (b-c)\ (c-a).$$

6. Prove that $\begin{vmatrix} a+b & b+c & c+a \\ b+c & c+a & a+b \\ c+a & a+b & b+c \end{vmatrix} = 2 \begin{vmatrix} a & b & c \\ b & c & a \\ c & a & b \end{vmatrix}.$

7. Prove that $\begin{vmatrix} -bc & bc+b^2 & bc+c^2 \\ ca+a^2 & -ca & ca+c^2 \\ ab+a^2 & ab+b^2 & -ab \end{vmatrix} = (bc+ca+ab)^2.$

8. Express the following determinant as perfect square :

$$\begin{vmatrix} yz-x^2 & zx-y^2 & xy-z^2 \\ zx-y^2 & xy-z^2 & yz-x^2 \\ xy-z^2 & yz-x^2 & xz-y^2 \end{vmatrix}$$

Answer : $\{(yz+zx+xy)-(x^2+y^2+z^2)\}^2\ (x+y+z)^2.$

9. Show that

$$\begin{vmatrix} ax - by - cz & ay + bx & cx + az \\ ay + bx & by - cz - ax & bz + cy \\ cx + az & bz + cy & cz - ax - by \end{vmatrix}$$

$= (a^2 + b^2 + c^2)(x^2 + y^2 + z^2)(ax + by + cz).$

10. If $2S = a + b + c$, Prove that

$$\begin{vmatrix} a^2 & (s-a)^2 & (s-a)^2 \\ (s-b)^2 & b^2 & (s-b)^2 \\ (s-c)^2 & (s-c)^2 & c^2 \end{vmatrix} = 2s^3(s-a)(s-b)(s-c).$$

11. Prove that $\begin{vmatrix} bc - a^2 & ca - b^2 & ab - c^2 \\ -bc + ca + ab & bc - ca + ab & bc + ca - ab \\ (a+b)(a+c) & (b+c)(b+a) & (c+a)(c+b) \end{vmatrix}$

$= 3(a + b + c)(ab + bc + ca)(a - b)(b - c)(c - a).$

12. (i) If x, y, z are different and

$$\begin{vmatrix} x & x^2 & 1 + x^3 \\ y & y^2 & 1 + y^3 \\ z & z^2 & 1 + z^3 \end{vmatrix} = o \text{ show that } xyz + 1 = 0.$$

[D. U. P. 1974]

(ii) solve $\begin{vmatrix} x-2 & 2x-3 & 3x-4 \\ x-4 & 2x-9 & 3x-16 \\ x-8 & 2x-27 & 3x-64 \end{vmatrix} = 0.$

[D. U. P 1977]

Answer: $x = 4$.

13. Prove that.

$$\begin{vmatrix} c^2 + a^2 & a^2 & c^2 \\ a^2 & a^2 + b^2 & b^2 \\ c^2 & b^2 & b^2 + c^2 \end{vmatrix} = \begin{vmatrix} a & o & c \\ a & b & o \\ o & b & c \end{vmatrix}^2 = 4a^2b^2c^2.$$

14. (i) Prove that

$$\begin{vmatrix} a^2 & bc & ac + c^2 \\ a^2 + ab & b^2 & ca \\ ab & b^2 + bc & c^2 \end{vmatrix} = \begin{vmatrix} -a^2 & ab & ca \\ ab & -b^2 & bc \\ ac & bc & -c^2 \end{vmatrix} = 4a^2b^2c^2.$$

14. (ii) Prove that

$$\begin{vmatrix} 1 & \cos(\beta-\alpha) & \cos(\gamma-\alpha) \\ \cos(\alpha-\beta) & 1 & \cos(\gamma-\beta) \\ \cos(\alpha-\gamma) & \cos(\beta-\gamma) & 1 \end{vmatrix}$$

is a perfect square of a determinant and find its value.

Answer: $\begin{vmatrix} \cos\alpha & \sin\alpha & 0 \\ \cos\beta & \sin\beta & 0 \\ \cos\gamma & \sin\gamma & 0 \end{vmatrix}^2$.

and the value of the determinant is 0 (zero).

14. (iii) Express $\begin{vmatrix} (1+ax)^2 & (1+ay)^2 & (1+az)^2 \\ (1+bx)^2 & (1+by)^2 & (1+bz)^2 \\ (1+cx)^2 & (1+cy)^2 & (1+cz)^2 \end{vmatrix}$

as the product of two determinants.

Answer: $\begin{vmatrix} 1 & 2a & a^2 \\ 1 & 2b & b^2 \\ 1 & 2c & c^2 \end{vmatrix} \times \begin{vmatrix} 1 & x & x^2 \\ 1 & y & y^2 \\ 1 & z & z^2 \end{vmatrix}$.

15. Find the value of the determinant by expressing it as a product of two determinants.

$$\begin{vmatrix} 0 & (x-y)^2 & (x-z)^2 \\ (y-x)^2 & 0 & (y-z)^2 \\ (z-x)^2 & (z-y)^2 & 0 \end{vmatrix}$$

Answer : $2(x-y)^2(y-z)^2(z-x)^2$.

16. Show that

$$\begin{vmatrix} a-b & -a & b \\ b\ \ a & -b & -a \\ c-d & c & -d \\ d\ \ c & d & c \end{vmatrix} = 4(a^2+b^2)(c^2+d^2).$$

17. Prove that

$$\begin{vmatrix} a & b & c & d \\ -b & a & -d & c \\ -c & d & a & -b \\ -d & -c & b & a \end{vmatrix} = (a^2+b^2+c^2+d^2)^2.$$

CamScanner

18. Prove that

$$\begin{vmatrix} a & b & c & d \\ b & a & d & c \\ c & d & a & b \\ d & c & b & a \end{vmatrix} = (a+b+c+d)(a-b+c-d)(a-b-c+d)(a+b-c-d).$$

19. By applying **Laplace's expansion** prove that

$$\begin{vmatrix} a^2+\lambda & ab & ac & ad \\ ab & b^2+\lambda & bc & bd \\ ac & bc & c^2+\lambda & cd \\ ad & bd & cd & d^2+\lambda \end{vmatrix} = \lambda^3(a^2+b^2+c^2+d^2+\lambda).$$

20. Show that

$$\begin{vmatrix} a+b+c & a+b & a & a \\ a+b & a+b+c & a & a \\ a & a & a+b+c & a+b \\ a & a & a+b & a+b+c \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= c^2(4a+2b+c)(2b+c).$$

21. Prove that

$$\begin{vmatrix} a^2+b^2+c^2 & bc+ca+ab & bc+ca+ab \\ bc+ca+ab & a^2+b^2+c^2 & bc+ca+ab \\ bc+ca+ab & bc+ca+ab & a^2+b^2+c^2 \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= (a^3+b^3+c^3-3abc)^2.$$

22. Show that

$$\begin{vmatrix} 0 & (\alpha-\beta)^2 & (\alpha-\gamma)^2 \\ (\beta-\alpha)^2 & 0 & (\beta-\gamma)^2 \\ (\gamma-\alpha)^2 & (\gamma-\beta)^2 & 0 \end{vmatrix} = 2(\alpha-\beta)^2(\beta-\gamma)^2(\gamma-\alpha)^2.$$

23. prove that

$$\begin{vmatrix} (a-x)^2 & (a-y)^2 & (a-z)^2 \\ (b-x)^2 & (b-y)^2 & (b-z)^2 \\ (c-x)^2 & (c-y)^2 & (c-z)^2 \end{vmatrix} = 2(a-b)(b-c)(c-a)(x-y)(y-z)(z-x)$$

[J. U. 1976, 1978]

24. $\begin{vmatrix} (a-x)^3 & (a-y)^3 & (a-z)^3 & a^3 \\ (b-x)^3 & (b-y)^3 & (b-z)^3 & b^3 \\ (c-x)^3 & (c-y)^3 & (c-z)^3 & c^3 \\ x^3 & y^3 & z^3 & o \end{vmatrix}$ **[D. U. P. 1978]** **[D. U. P. 1975]**

$= -9\,abc\,xyz\,(b-c)\,(c-a)\,(a-b)\,(x-y)\,(y-z)\,(z-x)$.

25. Prove that

$$\begin{vmatrix} a^2-bc & b^2-ca & c^2-ab \\ c^2-ab & a^2-bc & b^2-ca \\ b^2-ca & c^2-ab & a^2-bc \end{vmatrix} = \begin{vmatrix} a & b & c \\ c & a & b \\ b & c & a \end{vmatrix}^2$$

$$= (a^3+b^3+c^3-3abc)^2.$$

26. (i) Prove that

$$\begin{vmatrix} b^2+c^2+1 & c^2+1 & b^2+1 & b+c \\ c^2+1 & c^2+a^2+1 & a^2+1 & c+a \\ b^2+1 & a^2+1 & a^2+b^2+1 & a+b \\ b+c & c+a & a+b & 3 \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= (bc+ca+ab)^2.$$

26. (ii) Prove that

$$\begin{vmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ a & b & c & d \\ a^2 & b^2 & c^2 & d^2 \\ a^4 & b^4 & c^4 & d^4 \end{vmatrix}$$ **[R. U. P. 1987]**

$= (a-b)\,(a-c)\,(a-d)\,(b-c)\,(b-d)\,(c-d)\,(a+b+c+d)$.

26. (iii) Prove that

$$\begin{vmatrix} (a-x)^2 & (a-y)^2 & (a-z)^2 & a^2 \\ (b-x)^2 & (b-y)^2 & (b-z)^2 & b^2 \\ (c-x)^2 & (c-y)^2 & (c-z)^2 & c^2 \\ x^2 & y^2 & z^2 & o \end{vmatrix} = 0$$ **[R. U. H. 1976]** **[D. U. P. 1987]**

26. (iv) Prove that

$$\begin{vmatrix} 1 & a & a^2 & a^3 \\ 1 & b & b^2 & b^3 \\ 1 & c & c^2 & c^3 \\ 1 & d & d^2 & d^3 \end{vmatrix}$$ **[C. U. P. 1984, 89]**

$= (a-d)\,(b-d)\,(c-d)\,(a-b)\,(b-c)\,(a-c)$.

CamScanner

27. If A_i, B_i, and C_i are the cofactors of a_i, b_i and c_i respectively $(i = 1,2,3)$ in the determinant.

$$D = \begin{vmatrix} a_1 & b_1 & c_1 \\ a_2 & b_2 & c_2 \\ a_3 & b_3 & c_3 \end{vmatrix} \quad (D \neq 0),$$

Prove that $\begin{vmatrix} B_1 + C_1 & C_1 + A_1 & A_1 + B_1 \\ B_2 + C_2 & C_2 + A_2 & A_2 + B_2 \\ B_3 + C_3 & C_3 + A_3 & A_3 + B_3 \end{vmatrix} = 2D^2.$

28. Prove that if $S_r = a^r + b^r + c^r + d^r$, then

$$\begin{vmatrix} S_0 & S_1 & S_2 & S_3 \\ S_1 & S_2 & S_3 & S_4 \\ S_2 & S_3 & S_4 & S_5 \\ S_3 & S_4 & S_5 & S_6 \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= (a-b)^2(a-c)^2(a-d)^2(b-c)^2(b-d)^2(c-d)^2.$$

29. By Applying **Cramer's rule** solve each of the following systems of linear equations:

(i) $\left.\begin{aligned} x + 2y - z &= 1 \\ 3x - 2y + z &= 0 \\ 2x + y + z &= 2 \end{aligned}\right\}$

Answer: $x = \frac{1}{4}, y = \frac{3}{4}, z = \frac{3}{4}$

(ii) $\left.\begin{aligned} 2x - y + 2z &= 2 \\ x + 10y - 3z &= 5 \\ -x + y + z &= -3 \end{aligned}\right\}$

Answer: $x = 2, y = 0, z = 1.$

(iii) $\left.\begin{aligned} x + y + z &= 0 \\ 2x + 5y + 3z &= 1 \\ -x + 2y + z &= 2 \end{aligned}\right\}$

Answer: $x = -1, y = 0, z = 1.$

(iv) $\left.\begin{aligned} 2x - y - z &= 4 \\ x - 2y + z &= 5 \\ x - y + 2z &= 1 \end{aligned}\right\}$

Answer: $x = 0, y = -3, z = -1.$

(v) $\left.\begin{aligned} 3x + 2y - z &= 20 \\ 2x + 3y + 6z &= 70 \\ x - y + 6z &= 41 \end{aligned}\right\}$

Answer: $x = 5, y = 6, z = 7$

(vi) $\left.\begin{aligned} x + 2y + 3z &= 14 \\ 2x + 3y + 4z &= 20 \\ 3x + 4y + 6z &= 33 \end{aligned}\right\}$

Answer: $x = 5, y = -6, z = 7$

(vii) $\left.\begin{aligned} 3x + 2y - 5z &= -8 \\ 2x + 3y + 6z &= 37 \\ x - y + 2z &= 7 \end{aligned}\right\}$

Answer: $x = 2, y = 3, z = 4$

(viii) $\left.\begin{aligned} x - 2y + 3z &= 2 \\ x + y + z &= 6 \\ 2x - 3z &= 3 \end{aligned}\right\}$

Answer: $x = 3, y = 2, z = 1$

CamScanner

(ix) $\left.\begin{array}{l} 2x + y + 2z = 10 \\ x - y + 2z = 5 \\ x + y + z = 6 \end{array}\right\}$ (x) $\left.\begin{array}{l} x + y + z = 9 \\ 2x + 5y + 7z = 52 \\ 2x + y - z = 0 \end{array}\right\}$

Answer: $x = 1, y = 2, z = 3$. **Answer:** $x = 1, y = 3, z = 5$.

(xi) $\left.\begin{array}{l} x - y + z = 1 \\ x + y - 2z = 0 \\ 2x - y - z = 0 \end{array}\right\}$ (xii) $\left.\begin{array}{l} x + 2y - z = 9 \\ 2x - y + 3z = -2 \\ 3x + 2y + 3z = 9 \end{array}\right\}$

[R. U. P. 1979] **[R. U. P. 1978]**

Answer: $x = y = z = 1$ **Answer:** $x = 2, y = 3, z = -1$

Ass/CS

30. If a, b, c, are unequal, solve by **Cramer's rule** the following linear equations:

$$\left.\begin{array}{l} x + y + z = 1 \\ ax + by + cz = d \\ a^2x + b^2y + c^2z = d^2 \end{array}\right\}$$

Answer: $$x = \frac{(d-b)(c-d)}{(a-b)(c-a)}$$

$$y = \frac{(a-d)(d-c)}{(a-b)(b-c)}$$

$$z = \frac{(b-d)(d-a)}{(b-c)(c-a)}$$

31. Use determinants to solve the following linear equations:

$$\left.\begin{array}{l} ax + by + cz = 1 \\ a^2x + b^2y + c^2z = d \\ a^3x + b^3y + c^3z = d^2 \end{array}\right\}$$

Answer: $$x = \frac{1}{a} \cdot \frac{(d-b)(d-c)}{(a-b)(a-c)},$$

$$y = \frac{1}{b} \cdot \frac{(d-a)(d-c)}{(b-a)(b-c)}$$

$$z = \frac{1}{c} \cdot \frac{(d-a)(d-b)}{(c-a)(c-b)}$$

CamScanner

2.9 Adjoint determinant.

When each element in a given determinant A is replaced by its corresponding cofactor, the new determinant so formed is called **adjoint or adjugate determinant** of A.

This is, if $A = |a_{ij}|$ i, j = 1, 2, 3, ..., n be a determinant of order n then the new determinant $B = |A_{ij}|$ where A_{ij} is the cofactor of a_{ij} for i, j = 1. 2. ... n; is called the **adjoint** or **adjugate determinant** of A.

2.10 Inverse or reciprocal determinant.

Let D′ be the adjugate determinant of the determinant D where D ≠ o. Then the determinant obtained by dividing every element on D′ by D is called the **inverse or reciprocal determinant** of D.

Thus the reciprocal determinant $\bar{D} = \left| \frac{A_{ij}}{D} \right|$

where $D = |a_{ij}|$ i,j = 1,2, ... n,

The **Jacobi's theorem I**

Statement: Let D be the determinant of order n and D′ be the adjoint determinant of D then

$D' = D^{n-1}$ where $D \neq 0$.

Proof : Let $D = |a_{ij}| = \begin{vmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & \cdots & a_{1n} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & \cdots & a_{2n} \\ \cdots & & & \\ \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots \\ \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots \\ a_{n1} & a_{n2} & \cdots & a_{nn} \end{vmatrix}$ and

$$D' = |A_{ij}| = \begin{vmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & \cdots & a_{1n} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & \cdots & a_{2n} \\ \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots \\ \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots \\ a_{n1} & a_{n2} & \cdots & a_{nn} \end{vmatrix}$$

where A_{ij} is the cofactor of a_{ij} for i = 1, 2, ... n.

$$DD' = \begin{vmatrix} a_{11}A_{11} + a_{12}A_{12} + \dots + a_{1n}A_{1n} & a_{11}A_{21} + a_{12}A_{22} + \dots\dots & a_{1n}A_{2n} \dots & a_{11}A_{n1} + a_{12}A_{n2} + \dots + a_{1n}A_{nn} \\ a_{21}A_{11} + a_{22}A_{12} + \dots + a_{2n}A_{1n} & a_{21}A_{21} + a_{22}A_{22} + \dots + a_{2n}A_{2n} \dots & a_{21}A_{n1} + a_{22}A_{n2} + \dots + A_{2n}A_{nn} \\ \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots \\ \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots \\ a_{n1}A_{11} + a_{n2}A_{12} + \dots + A_{nn}A_{1n} & a_{n1}A_{21} + a_{n2}A_{22} + \dots + a_{n1}A_{2n} \dots & a_{n1}A_{n1} + a_{n2}A_{n2} + \dots + a_{nn}A_{nn} \end{vmatrix}$$

(Expanding row by row method)

$$= \begin{vmatrix} D & O & O & \dots & O\,O \\ O & D & O & \dots & O\,O \\ O & O & D\,O & \dots & O\,O \\ \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots \\ \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots \\ O & O & \dots & \dots & O\,D \end{vmatrix}$$ Since all the elements except diagonal elements will be zero.

$= D^n$, Thus $DD' = D^n$ or. $D' = D^{n-1}$.

Jacobi's theorm 2.

The cofactor of A_{11} in an adjoint determinant D is equal to $a_{11}\, D^{n-2}$ and so for others.

Proof : Let $D = |a_{ij}| = \begin{vmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & \cdots & a_{1n} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & \cdots & a_{2n} \\ \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots \\ \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots \\ a_{n1} & a_{n2} & \cdots & a_{nn} \end{vmatrix}$.

then $D' = \begin{vmatrix} A_{11} & A_{12} & \cdots & A_{1n} \\ A_{21} & A_{22} & \cdots & A_{2n} \\ \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots \\ \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots \\ A_{n1} & A_{n2} & \cdots & A_{nn} \end{vmatrix}$ where A_{ij} is the co-factor of a_{ij} for $i, j = 1, 2, 3, \ldots, n$

Now the cofactor of A_{11} in D' is clearly

$$\begin{vmatrix} A_{22} & A_{23} & \cdots & A_{2n} \\ A_{32} & A_{33} & \cdots & A_{3n} \\ \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots \\ \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots \\ A_{n2} & A_{n3} & \cdots & A_{nn} \end{vmatrix} \quad \text{of order } (n-1).$$

Raising its order to n as follows and then multiplying with D by rows, we get

$$\begin{vmatrix} 1 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ A_{21} & A_{22} & \cdots & A_{2n} \\ A_{31} & A_{32} & \cdots & A_{3n} \\ \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots \\ \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots \\ A_{n1} & A_{n2} & \cdots & A_{nn} \end{vmatrix} \times \begin{vmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & \cdots & a_{1n} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & \cdots & a_{2n} \\ \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots \\ \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots \\ a_{n1} & a_{n2} & \cdots & a_{nn} \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{vmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & a_{13} & \cdots & a_{1n} \\ 0 & D & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & D & \cdots & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots \\ \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & \cdots 0 & D \end{vmatrix}$$

$= a_{11} D^{n-1}$ this is, (cofactor of A_{11} in D'). $D = a_{11}\, D^{n-1}$,

or, cofactor of A_{11} in D' $= a_{11}\, D^{n-2}$ where $D \neq 0$.,

which can also be stated as any cofactor or minor of the adjoint determinant can be expressed in terms of the elements of the original determinant)

2.11 Symmetric and skew-symmetric determinant

The determinant $A = |a_{ij}|$ of order n is said to be **symmetric** if $a_{ij} = a_{ji}$ for all i, j = 1, 2, 3, ... n.

On the other hand, the determinant $A = |a_{ij}|$ of order n is said to be **skew-symmetric** if $a_{ij} = -a_{ji}$ for all i, j = 1, 2, 3, ... n.

In such a determinant, for the diagonal elements, we have $a_{ii} = -a_{ii} \Rightarrow a_{ii} = 0$.

In other words, all the elements in the principal diagonal of a skew-sysmmetric determinant are zero.

Alternative definition : Any two elements of a determinant which are situated in a line perpendicular to the principal diagonal and at equal distances in opposite sides of it are called **conjugate elements.**

A determinant in which every two conjugate elements are equal to each other is called a **symmetric determinant.**

If every element is equal to its conjugate with sign changed (the diagonal elements being included), the determinant is called a **skew-symmetric determinant.** Since each element in the principal diagonal is its own conjugate, all the elements in the principal diagonal must be zero.

For instances

$$\begin{vmatrix} a & h & g \\ h & b & f \\ g & f & c \end{vmatrix}, \qquad \begin{vmatrix} o & h & g \\ -h & o & f \\ -g & -f & o \end{vmatrix}$$

Symmetric determinant Skew-symmtric determinant

2.11.1 Properties of symmetric determinant

(a) The adjugate (or adjoint) as well as reciprocal of a symmetric determinant itself symmetric.

Consider the symmetric determinant

$D = |a_{ij}|$, $i, j = 1, 2, 3, \ldots n$ for which $a_{ij} = a_{ji}$ Since $a_{ij} = a_{ji}$, the cofactors of a_{ij} must be equal to the cofactors of a_{ij} respectively, that is, $A_{ij} = A_{ji}$.

Hence the adjoint of D given by $D' = |A_{ij}|$, $i, j = 1, \ldots, n$ must be symmetric.

Also reciprocal of $D = \bar{D} = \dfrac{|A_{ij}|}{D}$ will be symmetric

Since $A_{ij} = A_{ji}$.

(b) The square of any determinant is a symmetric determinant. Consider the third order determinant.

$$D = \begin{vmatrix} a_1 & b_1 & c_1 \\ a_2 & b_2 & c_2 \\ a_3 & b_3 & c_3 \end{vmatrix}$$

$$\text{Then } D^2 = DD = \begin{vmatrix} a_1 & b_1 & c_1 \\ a_2 & b_2 & c_2 \\ a_3 & b_3 & c_3 \end{vmatrix} \times \begin{vmatrix} a_1 & b_1 & c_1 \\ a_2 & b_2 & c_2 \\ a_3 & b_3 & c_3 \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{vmatrix} a_1^2 + b_1^2 + c_1^2 & a_1a_2 + b_1b_2 + c_1c_2 & a_1a_3 + b_1b_3 + c_1c_3 \\ a_1a_2 + b_1b_2 + c_1c_2 & a_2^2 + b_2^2 + c_2^2 & a_2a_3 + b_2b_3 + c_2c_3 \\ a_1a_3 + b_1b_3 + c_1c_3 & a_2a_3 + b_2b_3 + c_2c_3 & a_3^2 + b_3^2 + c_3^2 \end{vmatrix}$$

which is clearly a symmetric determinant.

2.11.2 Ortho-symmetric determinant.

The symmetric determinant in which all the elements of the leading diagonal are equal is called the **ortho-symmetric** determinant. For instance $\begin{vmatrix} a & h & g \\ h & a & f \\ g & f & a \end{vmatrix}$, $\begin{vmatrix} o & a & b & c \\ a & o & c & b \\ b & c & o & a \\ c & b & a & o \end{vmatrix}$

2.11.3 Properties of skew-symmetric determinant

(i) Every **skew-symmetric** determinant of odd order is equal to zero.

Proof : Let D_1 be the skew-symmetric determinant of odd order 2n–1 and D_2 be the determinant obtained by changing the sign of every element in D_1.

$\therefore D_2 = (-1)^{2n-1} D_1 = -D_1$ (1).

Since 2n – 1 is odd.

Again if we interchange the rows and columns of D_1, we get D_2. That is, $D_2 = D_1$ (2).

Combining (1) and (2), we get $D_1 = -D_1$

or, $2D_1 = o \therefore D_1 = o$.

For instance, consider a third order skew-symmetric determinant. $D_1 = \begin{vmatrix} o & h & g \\ -h & o & f \\ -g & -f & o \end{vmatrix} = \begin{vmatrix} o & -h & -g \\ h & o & -f \\ g & f & o \end{vmatrix}$

$$= (-1)^3 \begin{vmatrix} o & h & g \\ -h & o & f \\ -g & -f & o \end{vmatrix} = -D_1$$

(The columns have been changed into rows).

or, $2D_1 = o \qquad \therefore D_1 = o$

(ii) Every skew-symmetric determinant of even order is a perfect square

Proof : Let $D_{2n} = \left|a_{ij}\right|$ i, j = 1, 2, 3, ... , 2n (even order)

$D_{2n-1} = \left|a_{ij}\right|$ i, j = 1, 2, 3,..., 2n – 1 (odd order)

be two skew-symmetric determinants.

Let A_{11}, A_{12}, ... be the cofactors of a_{11}, a_{12}, ... in D_{2n-1} Since 2n–1 is odd.

$\therefore D_{2n-1} = o$ and $A_{st} = (-1)^{2n-2} A_{st} = A_{ts}$

Now one can easily show that

$A_{11}D_{2n} = (A_{11}a_{12n} + A_{12}\,a_{22n} + \ldots + A_{12n-1}a_{2n-12n})^2$. where D_{2n} and A_{11} are two skew-symmetric determinants of order $2n$ and $2n-2$ respectively. Since their product is perfect square, both are perfect squares.

For instance. $\begin{vmatrix} o & a & b & c \\ -a & o & c & b \\ -b & -c & o & a \\ -c & -b & -a & o \end{vmatrix}$

$$= o - a\begin{vmatrix} -a & c & b \\ -b & o & a \\ -c & -a & o \end{vmatrix} + b\begin{vmatrix} -a & o & b \\ -b & -c & a \\ -c & -b & o \end{vmatrix} - c\begin{vmatrix} -a & o & c \\ -b & -c & o \\ -c & -b & -a \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= -a[-a^3 - c(o + ac) + b(ab - o)] + b[-a(o + ab) + o + b(b^2 - c^2)] - c[-a(ac - o) + o + c(b^2 - c^2)]$$

$$= a^4 + a^2c^2 - a^2b^2 - a^2b^2 + b^4 - b^2c^2 + a^2c^2 - b^2c^2 + c^4$$

$$= a^4 + b^4 + c^4 - 2a^2b^2 - 2b^2c^2 + 2a^2c^2 + c^4.$$

$= (a^2 - b^2 + c^2)^2$ which is a perfect square.

2.12 Skew-determinant.

A determinant, in which every element on one side of the diagonal is equal to its conjugate with sings changed, is called **skew-determinant.**

For instance $\begin{vmatrix} a & h & g \\ -h & b & f \\ -g & -f & c \end{vmatrix}$ is a skew-determinant

2.13 Differentiation of a determinant.

A formula will be given by which a determinant involving only one variable, say x, can be differentiated.

Let $D = \begin{vmatrix} f_1 & f_2 & f_3 \\ g_1 & g_2 & g_3 \\ h_1 & h_2 & h_3 \end{vmatrix}$ where $f_1, f_2, f_3, g_1, g_2, g_3, h_1, h_2$, and h_3 are all functions of x and let $f'_1, f'_2, f'_3, g'_1, g'_2, g'_3, h'_1, h'_2$, and h'_3 be corresponding derivatives with respect to x.

$$\text{Then } \frac{dD}{dx} = \frac{d}{dx}\begin{vmatrix} f_1 & f_2 & f_3 \\ g_1 & g_2 & g_3 \\ h_1 & h_2 & h_3 \end{vmatrix} = \begin{vmatrix} f_1' & f_2' & f_3' \\ g_1 & g_2 & g_3 \\ h_1 & h_2 & h_3 \end{vmatrix}$$

$$+ \begin{vmatrix} f_1 & f_2 & f_3 \\ g_1' & g_2' & g_3' \\ h_1 & h_2 & h_3 \end{vmatrix} + \begin{vmatrix} f_1 & f_2 & f_3 \\ g_1 & g_2 & g_3 \\ h_1' & h_2' & h_3' \end{vmatrix}$$

Similarly, determinants of any order involving only one variable can be differentiated..

CamScanner

Example 25. Show that

$$\begin{vmatrix} 1+a_1 & a_2 & \cdots & a_n \\ a_1 & 1+a_2 & \cdots & a_n \\ a_1 & a_2 & \cdots & a_n \\ \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & a_n \\ \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots \\ a_1 & a_2 & \cdots & 1+a \end{vmatrix} = 1 + \sum_{i=1}^{n} a_i$$

Proof : $c_1' = c_1 + c_2 + \ldots + c_n$

$$\text{L. H. S.} = \begin{vmatrix} 1+a_1+a_2+\ldots+a_n & a_2 & \cdots & a_n \\ 1+a_1+a_2+\ldots+a_n & 1+a_2 & \cdots & a_n \\ 1+a_1+a_2+\ldots+a_n & a_2 & \cdots & a_n \\ \cdots\ \cdots\ \cdots\ \cdots\ \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots \\ \cdots\ \cdots\ \cdots\ \cdots\ \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots \\ 1+a_1+a_2+\ldots+a_n & a_2 & \ldots & 1+a_n \end{vmatrix}$$

$$\left(1 + \sum_{i=1}^{n} a_i\right) \begin{vmatrix} 1 & a_1 & \cdots & \cdots & a_n \\ 1 & 1+a_2 & \cdots & \cdots & a_n \\ 1 & a_2 & 1+a_3 & \cdots & a_n \\ \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots \\ \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots \\ 1 & a_2 & \cdots & \cdots & 1+a_n \end{vmatrix}$$

[Substracting 1st row from every other row.]

$$= \left(1 + \sum_{i=1}^{n} a_i\right) \begin{vmatrix} 1 & a_2 & \cdots & \cdots & a_n \\ 0 & 1 & \cdots & \cdots & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & \cdots & 0 \\ \cdots & & \cdots & & \cdots \\ \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots \\ 0 & 0 & \cdots & \cdots & 0\ 1 \end{vmatrix}$$ [Expanding by the 1st column]

$$= \left(1 + \sum_{i=1}^{n} a_i\right) \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 0 & \cdots & \cdots & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots \\ \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots \\ 0 & 0 & \cdots & \cdots & 0\ 1 \end{vmatrix} = \left(1 + \sum_{i=1}^{n} a_i\right)$$

Since the determinant is equal to 1.

Example 26 . Show that

$$\begin{vmatrix} 1+a_1 & 1 & 1 & \dots & 1 \\ 1 & 1+a_2 & 1 & \dots & 1 \\ \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots \\ \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots \\ 1 & 1 & \dots & \dots & 1+a_n \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= a_1 a_2 \dots a_n \left(1 + \frac{1}{a_1} + \frac{1}{a_2} + \dots + \frac{1}{a_n}\right).$$

where $a_i \neq o$ for all i.

Proof : L. H. S. =
$$\begin{vmatrix} 1+a_1 & 1 & 1 & \dots & 1 \\ 1 & 1+a_2 & 1 & \dots & 1 \\ \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots \\ \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots \\ 1 & 1 & 1 & \dots & 1+a_n \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= a_1 a_2 \dots a_n \begin{vmatrix} \frac{1}{a_1}+1 & \frac{1}{a_1} & \frac{1}{a_1} & \dots & \frac{1}{a_1} \\ \frac{1}{a_2} & \frac{1}{a_2}+1 & \frac{1}{a_2} & \dots & \frac{1}{a_2} \\ \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots \\ \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots \\ \frac{1}{a_n} & \frac{1}{a_n} & \dots & \frac{1}{a_n} & \frac{1}{a_n}+1 \end{vmatrix}$$

[$r_1' = r_1 + r_2 + \dots + r_n$] [adding all rows to the lst row and then taking out the common factor.]

$$= (a_1 a_2 \dots\dots a_n)\left(1 + \frac{1}{a_1} + \frac{1}{a_2} + \dots + \frac{1}{a_n}\right)$$

$$\begin{vmatrix} 1 & 1 & \dots & 1 \\ \frac{1}{a_2} & \frac{1}{a_2}+1 & \dots & \frac{1}{a_2} \\ \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots \\ \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots \\ \frac{1}{a_n} & \frac{1}{a_n} & \dots & \frac{1}{a_n}+1 \end{vmatrix}$$

[Subtracting 1st column from all other columns]

$$= (a_1 a_2 \dots a_n)\left(1 + \frac{1}{a_1} + \frac{1}{a_2} + \dots + \frac{1}{a_n}\right)$$

$$\begin{vmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ \frac{1}{a_2} & 1 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots \\ \frac{1}{a_n} & 0 & \cdots & \cdots & 1 \end{vmatrix}$$

[Expanding by the 1st row]

$$= (a_1 a_2 \ldots a_n)\left(1 + \frac{1}{a_1} + \frac{1}{a_2} + \frac{1}{a_n}\right)$$

$$\begin{vmatrix} 1 & 0 & \cdots & \cdots & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots \\ \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots \\ 0 & 0 & \cdots & \cdots & 0\ 1 \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= (a_1 a_2 \ldots a_n)\left(1 + \frac{1}{a_1} + \frac{1}{a_2} + \ldots + \frac{1}{a_n}\right)$$

Since the last determinant is equal to 1.

Example 27. Prove that the nth order determinant

$$\begin{vmatrix} x & 1 & 1 & 1 & \ldots & 1 \\ 1 & x & 1 & 1 & \ldots & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & x & 1 & \ldots & 1 \\ \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \\ & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \\ 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & \ldots & 1\ x \end{vmatrix} = (x-1)^{n-1}(x+n-1)$$

[C.U.H. 1983]

Proof : L. H. S = $\begin{vmatrix} x & 1 & 1 & 1 & \cdots & 1 \\ 1 & x & 1 & 1 & \cdots & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & x & 1 & \cdots & 1 \\ \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots \\ \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots \\ 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & \cdots & 1\ x \end{vmatrix}$

$c_1' = c_1 + c_2 + c_3 + \ldots + c_n$

$$= \begin{vmatrix} x+n-1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & \ldots & 1 \\ x+n-1 & x & 1 & 1 & \ldots & 1 \\ x+n-1 & 1 & x & 1 & \ldots & 1 \\ \cdots\cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots \\ \cdots\cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots \\ x+n-1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & \ldots & 1\ x \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= (x+n-1)\begin{vmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & \dots & 1 \\ 1 & x & 1 & 1 & \dots & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & x & 1 & \dots & 1 \\ \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots \\ \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots \\ 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & \dots & 1 \; x \end{vmatrix}$$

Subtracting Ist column from all other columns

$$= (x+n-1)\begin{vmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & \dots & 0 \\ 1 & x-1 & 0 & 0 & \dots & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & x-1 & 0 & \dots & 0 \\ \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots \\ \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & \dots & x-1 \end{vmatrix} \text{ nth order}$$

$$= (x+n-1)\begin{vmatrix} x-1 & 0 & 0 & \dots & \dots & 0 \\ 0 & x-1 & 0 & \dots & \dots & 0 \\ \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots \\ \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & \dots & 0 & x-1 \end{vmatrix} \text{ (n−1) th order}$$

$= (x+n-1)(x-1)^{n-1}$.

[Since the value of the last determinant is $(x-1)^{n-1}$].

Example 28.

$$\text{If } D_n = \begin{bmatrix} a_1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & \dots & \dots & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ -1 & a_2 & 1 & 0 & \dots & \dots & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & a_3 & 1 & \dots & \dots & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots \\ \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & \dots & \dots & \dots & -1 & a_{n-1} & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & \dots & \dots & 0 & 0 & -1 & a_n \end{bmatrix}$$

[Such determinants are called **continuants**]

Prove That $D_n = a_n D_{n-1} + D_{n-2}$.

Proof : Expand the determinant by the minors of the nth row. Then we have

$$D_n = -(-1)\begin{vmatrix} a_1 & 1 & 0 & \dots & \dots & 0 & 0 \\ -1 & a_2 & 1 & \dots & \dots & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 & a_3 & 1 & \dots & 0 & 0 \\ \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots \\ \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & \dots & -1 & a_{n-2} & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & \dots & 0 & -1 & 1 \end{vmatrix}$$

$$+ a_n \begin{vmatrix} a_1 & 1 & 0 & \dots & 0 & 0 \\ -1 & a_2 & 1 & \dots & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 & a_3 & \dots & 0 & 0 \\ \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots \\ \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & \dots & -1 & a_{n-1} \end{vmatrix}$$

[Since the sign of the cofactor of a_n is determined as $(-1)^{n+n} = (-1)^{2n} = +1$ (positive) the sign of the cofactor of (-1) will be -1 (negative.)

$$D_n = \begin{vmatrix} a_1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & \dots & 0 & 0 \\ -1 & a_2 & 1 & 0 & \dots & 0 & 0 \\ \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots \\ \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & \dots & -1 & a_{n-2} \end{vmatrix} + a_n D_{n-1}$$

$= D_{n-2} + a_n D_{n-1}$. Hence $D_n = a_n D_{n-1} + D_{n-2}$.

Example 29. If $D_n = \begin{vmatrix} x & a & a & \dots & a \\ a & x & a & \dots & a \\ a & a & x & \dots & a \\ \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots \\ \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots \\ a & a & a & \dots & x \end{vmatrix}$

Show that $\frac{d}{dx} D_n = nD_{n-1}$.

Proof : Differentiating the determinant D_n with respect to x, we get

$$\frac{d}{dx}(D_n) = \begin{vmatrix} 1 & o & o & \dots & \dots & o \\ a & x & a & \dots & \dots & a \\ a & a & x & a & \dots & a \\ \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots \\ \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots \\ a & a & a & a & a & x \end{vmatrix} + \begin{vmatrix} x & a & a & \dots & a \\ 0 & 1 & o & \dots & o \\ a & a & x & \dots & a \\ \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots \\ \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots \\ a & a & a & \dots & ax \end{vmatrix}$$

$$+ \ldots + \begin{vmatrix} x & a & a & \ldots & \ldots & a \\ a & x & a & \ldots & \ldots & a \\ a & a & x & a \ldots & \ldots & a \\ \ldots & \ldots & \ldots & \ldots & \ldots & \ldots \\ \ldots & \ldots & \ldots & \ldots & \ldots & \ldots \\ o & o & o & \ldots & \ldots o & 1 \end{vmatrix}$$

Now expanding each of the determinants by the row of zeroes and one, we get.

$$\frac{d}{dx}(D_n) = \underbrace{\begin{vmatrix} x & a & a & \ldots & a \\ a & x & a & \ldots & a \\ a & a & x & \ldots & a \\ \ldots & \ldots & \ldots & \ldots & \ldots \\ \ldots & \ldots & \ldots & \ldots & \ldots \\ a & a & a & \ldots a & x \end{vmatrix}}_{(n-1)\text{ the order}} + \underbrace{\begin{vmatrix} x & a & a & \ldots & a \\ a & x & a & \ldots & a \\ a & a & x & \ldots & a \\ \ldots & \ldots & \ldots & \ldots & \ldots \\ \ldots & \ldots & \ldots & \ldots & \ldots \\ a & a & a & \ldots a & x \end{vmatrix}}_{(n-1)\text{ th order}}$$

$$+ \ldots + \underbrace{\begin{vmatrix} x & a & a & \ldots & a \\ a & x & a & \ldots & a \\ a & a & x & \ldots & a \\ \ldots & \ldots & \ldots & \ldots & \ldots \\ \ldots & \ldots & \ldots & \ldots & \ldots \\ a & a & a & \ldots a & x \end{vmatrix}}_{(n-1)\text{ th order}}$$

$$\frac{d}{dx}(D_n) = D_{n-1} + D_{n-1} + \ldots + D_{n-1} = nD_{n-1}.$$

[Since D_n has n minors of order (n−1)]

EXERCISES–2(B)

1. Prove that $\begin{vmatrix} 1+a_1 & -a_1 & -a_1 & -a_1 & \ldots & \ldots & -a_1 \\ 1 & a_2 & o & o & \ldots & \ldots & o \\ 1 & o & a_3 & o & \ldots & \ldots & o \\ \ldots & \ldots & \ldots & \ldots & \ldots & \ldots & \ldots \\ \ldots & \ldots & \ldots & \ldots & \ldots & \ldots & \ldots \\ 1 & o & o & o & \ldots & 0 & a_n \end{vmatrix}$

$$= (a_1 a_2 \ldots a_n)\left(1 + \frac{1}{a_1} + \frac{1}{a_2} + \ldots + \frac{1}{a_n}\right)$$

CamScanner

2. Prove that $\begin{vmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 & \dots & 1 \\ b_1 & a_1 & a_1 & \dots & a_1 \\ b_1 & b_2 & a_2 & \dots & a_2 \\ b_1 & b_2 & b_3\ a_3 & \dots & a_3 \\ \dots & \dots & \dots & & \dots \\ \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots \\ b_1 & b_3 & b_3 & \dots & b_n \end{vmatrix} = (a_1 - b_1)(a_2 - b_2) \dots (a_n - b_n)$

3. Prove that

$$\begin{vmatrix} a & a+b & a+2b & \dots & a+nb \\ a+nb & a & a+b & \dots & a+(n-1)b \\ a+(n-1)b & a+nb & a & \dots & a+(n-2)b \\ \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots \\ \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots a \\ a+b & a+2b & a+3b & \dots & \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= (-b)^n (n+1)^n \left(a + \frac{1}{2}nb.\right)$$

4. Prove that the determinant of the nth order

$$\begin{vmatrix} \cos\theta & 1 & o & o & \dots o & o \\ 1 & 2\cos\theta & 1 & o & \dots o & o \\ o & 1 & 2\cos\theta & 1\ o & \dots o & o \\ \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots \\ \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots \\ o & o & o & \dots o\ 1 & 2\cos\theta & 1 \\ o & o & o & \dots\ o & 1 & 2\cos\theta \end{vmatrix} = \cos n\theta.$$

5. Prove that when n is even

$$\begin{vmatrix} -1 & a_2 & a_3 & a_4 & \dots & \dots & a_n \\ a_1 & -1 & a_3 & a_4 & \dots & \dots & a_n \\ a_1 & a_2 & -1 & a_4 & \dots & \dots & a_n \\ \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots \\ \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots \\ a_1 & a_2 & a_3 & a_4 & \dots a_{n-2} & -1 & a_n \\ a_1 & a_2 & a_3 & a_4 & \dots & a_{n-1} & -1 \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= (a_1 + 1)(a_2 + 1)(a_3 + 1) \dots (a_n + 1)$$

$$\left(1 - \frac{a_1}{a_1 + 1} - \frac{a_2}{a_2 + 1} - \dots - \frac{a_n}{a_n + 1}\right).$$

CamScanner

CHAPTER THREE

MATRIX ALGEBRA

3.1 Introduction

J. J. Sylvester was the first man who introduced the word '**matrix**' in 1850 and later on in 1858 **Arthur Cayley** developed the theory of matrices in a systematic way. Matrix is a powerful tool of modern mathematics which is originated in the study of linear equations, and it has wide applications in every branch of science and especially in Physics, Chemistry, Mathematics, Statistics, Economics, and Engineerings.

3.2 Definition of matrix

A **matrix** is a rectangular array of numbers (real or complex) enclosed by a pair of brackets (or double vertical rolls) and the numbers in the array are called the **entries** or the **elements** of the matrix. that is, a rectangular array of (real or complex) numbers of the form

$$\begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & \cdots & \cdots & a_{1n} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & \cdots & \cdots & a_{2n} \\ \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots \\ \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots \\ a_{m1} & a_{m2} & \cdots & \cdots & a_{mn} \end{bmatrix}$$

is called a **matrix**. The numbers $a_{11}, a_{12}, \ldots \ldots, a_{mn}$ are called the **entries** or the **elements** of the matrix. The above matrix has m rows and n columns and is called an **(m ×n) matrix** (read "m by n matrix"). The matrix of m rows and n columns is said to be of **order** "m by n" or m × n. The above matrix is also denoted by $[a_{ij}]$, $\begin{matrix} i = 1,2,\ldots,m \\ j = 1, 2, \ldots,n \end{matrix}$

The m horizontal n-tuples $(a_{11}, a_{12}, \ldots, a_{1n})$, $(a_{21}, a_{22}, \ldots, a_{2n})$, ..., $(a_{m1}, a_{m2}, \ldots, a_{mn})$ are the m rows of the matrix and the n vertical m-tuples

$$\begin{bmatrix} a_{11} \\ a_{21} \\ \vdots \\ a_{m1} \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} a_{12} \\ a_{22} \\ \vdots \\ a_{m2} \end{bmatrix} \cdots, \begin{bmatrix} a_{1n} \\ a_{2n} \\ \vdots \\ a_{mn} \end{bmatrix}$$

are its n columns. The element a_{ij}, called the **ij-entry** or **ij-component**, appears in the i th row and j th column.

A matrix consisting of a single row is called a **row matrix** (or **row vector**) and a matrix consisting of a single column is called a **column matrix** (or **column vertor**).

Matrices are generally denoted by capital letters A, B, X, Y etc. Square brackets [ ], or, curved brackets ( ), or, Two pairs of parallel lines || || are used for the mathematical notations of matrices. In this book we will use the notation [ ].

Examples of matrices

Example 1. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & -5 \\ 2 & -3 & 7 \end{bmatrix}$ is a matrix of order 2×3 over the real field IR and also over the complex field C.

The rows of A are (1, 0, – 5) and (2, –3, 7) and its columns are $\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$, $\begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ -3 \end{pmatrix}$ and $\begin{pmatrix} -5 \\ 7 \end{pmatrix}$.

Example 2. $B = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 0 & i \\ -i & 1 & 4 \\ 1+i & -5 & 3 \end{bmatrix}$ is a matrix of order 3×3 over the complex field C.

The rows of B are (2, 0, i), (–i, 1, 4) and (1 + i, – 5, 3) and its columns are $\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ -i \\ 1+i \end{pmatrix}$, $\begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ -5 \end{pmatrix}$ and $\begin{pmatrix} i \\ 4 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}$.

Two matrices $A = [a_{ij}]$ and $B = [b_{ij}]$ are **equal** if and only if they are identical i.e if and only if they contain the same number of rows and the same number of columns and $a_{ij} = b_{ij}$ for all values of i and j.

3.3 Addition and scalar multiplication of matrices :

Addition of matrices is defined only for the matrices having same number of rows and the same number of columns. Let A and B be the two matrices having m rows and n columns.

$$\text{i. e. } A = [a_{ij}] = \begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & \dots & a_{1n} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & \dots & a_{2n} \\ \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots \\ a_{m1} & a_{m2} & \dots & a_{mn} \end{bmatrix} \text{ and}$$

$$B = [b_{ij}] = \begin{bmatrix} b_{11} & b_{12} & \dots & b_{1n} \\ b_{21} & b_{22} & \dots & b_{2n} \\ \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots \\ b_{m1} & b_{m2} & \dots & b_{mn} \end{bmatrix}$$

Then the sum of A and B is

$$A + B = \begin{bmatrix} a_{11} + b_{11} & a_{12} + b_{12} & \dots & a_{1n} + b_{1n} \\ a_{21} + b_{21} & a_{22} + b_{22} & \dots & a_{2n} + b_{2n} \\ \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots \\ a_{m1} + b_{m1} & a_{m2} + b_{m2} & \dots & a_{mn} + b_{mn} \end{bmatrix}$$

The multiplication of matrix by numbers (scalars) is defined as follows : The product of an $(m \times n)$ matrix A by a number k is denoted by kA or Ak and is the $(m \times n)$ matrix obtained by multiplying every element of A by k, that is,

$$kA = \begin{bmatrix} ka_{11} & ka_{12} & \dots & ka_{1n} \\ ka_{21} & ka_{22} & \dots & ka_{2n} \\ \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots \\ ka_{m1} & ka_{m2} & \dots & ka_{mn} \end{bmatrix}$$

We also define $-A = (-1)A$ and $A - B = A + (-B)$.

If the matrices A, B, C are conformable for addition and if k is any scalar, then we can state that

(i) $A + B = B + A$ **(Commutative law)**

(ii) $(A + B) + C = A + (B + C)$ **(Associative law)**

(iii) $A + 0 = 0 + A = A$.

(iv) $k(A + B) = kA + kB = (A + B)k$.

where 0 is the zero matrix of the same order.

CamScanner

For examples, if $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -2 \\ 3 & 5 \end{bmatrix}$ and $B = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 7 \\ -5 & 4 \end{bmatrix}$

then $A + B = \begin{bmatrix} 1+2 & (-2)+7 \\ 3+(-5) & 5+4 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 5 \\ -2 & 9 \end{bmatrix}$.

$$2A = \begin{bmatrix} 2.1 & 2.(-2) \\ 2.3 & 2.5 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & -4 \\ 6 & 10 \end{bmatrix}$$

and $A - B = \begin{bmatrix} 1-2 & -2-7 \\ 3-(-5) & 5-4 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} -1 & -9 \\ 8 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$.

3.4 Matrix Multiplication

Two matrices A and B are conformable for multiplication if the number of columns in A is equal to the number of rows in B.

$$\text{Let } A = [a_1 \ a_2 \ \dots \ a_n] \text{ and } B = \begin{bmatrix} b_1 \\ b_2 \\ \vdots \\ b_n \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\text{The } AB = [a_1b_1 + a_2b_2 + \dots + a_nb_n] = \begin{bmatrix} \sum_{i=1}^{n} a_ib_i \end{bmatrix}$$

Again, let the $m \times p$ matrix $A = [a_{ij}]$ and the $p \times n$ matrix $B = [b_{ij}]$. then AB is the $m \times n$ matrix $C = [c_{ij}]$ where

$$c_{ij} = a_{i1}b_{1j} + a_{i2}b_{2j} + \dots + a_{ip}b_{pj} = \sum_{k=1}^{p} a_{ik}b_{kj}$$

$$\begin{cases} i = 1, 2, \dots, m \\ j = 1, 2, \dots, n \end{cases}$$

If the matrices A, B, C are conformable for the indicated sums and products, we have the following properties :

(i) $(AB)C = A(BC)$ **(Associative law)**

(ii) $A(B + C) = AB + AC$
(iii) $(A + B)C = AC + BC$ } **(Distributive laws)**

(iv) $k(AB) = (kA)B = A(kB)$ where k is any scalar.

Remarks : In the matrix product AB, the matrix A is called the **pre-multiplier** (or **pre-factor**) and B is called the **postmultiplier** (or **post-factor**)

For examples, let $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -3 & 5 \\ 2 & 0 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$ and $B = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -1 \\ -2 & 4 \\ 3 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$

then $AB = \begin{bmatrix} 1\cdot 1 + (-3)\cdot(-2) + 5\cdot 3 & 1\cdot(-1) + (-3)\cdot 4 + 5\cdot 0 \\ 2\cdot 1 + 0\cdot(-2) + (-1)\cdot 3 & 2\cdot(-1) + 0\cdot 4 + (-1)\cdot 0 \end{bmatrix}$

$$= \begin{bmatrix} 1+6+15 & -1-12+0 \\ 2+0-3 & -2+0+0 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 22 & -13 \\ -1 & -2 \end{bmatrix}.$$

$$BA = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -1 \\ -2 & 4 \\ 3 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -3 & 5 \\ 2 & 0 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{bmatrix} 1\cdot 1 + (-1)\cdot 2 & 1\cdot(-3) + (-1)\cdot 0 & 1\cdot 5 + (-1)\cdot(-1) \\ (-2)\cdot 1 + 4\cdot 2 & (-2)\cdot(-3) + 4\cdot 0 & (-2)\cdot 5 + 4\cdot(-1) \\ 3\cdot 1 + 0\cdot 2 & 3\cdot(-3) + 0\cdot 0 & 3\cdot 5 + 0.(-1) \end{bmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{bmatrix} -1 & -3 & 6 \\ 6 & 6 & -14 \\ 3 & -9 & 15 \end{bmatrix} \therefore AB \neq BA.$$

3.5 Transpose of a matrix

If A is an $m \times n$ matrix over the real field $\mathbb{R}$, then the $n \times m$ matrix obtained from the matrix A by writing its rows as columns and its columns as rows is called the **transpose** of A and is denoted by the symbol A^T. That is, if $A = [a_{ij}]$ is an $m \times n$ matrix then $A^T = [a_{ji}]$ is an $n \times m$ matrix.

For examples, let $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 5 & -7 \\ 2 & 3 & -1 & 6 \end{bmatrix}$, then $A^T = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 0 & 3 \\ 5 & -1 \\ -7 & 6 \end{bmatrix}$.

3.6 Complex conjugate (or conjugate) of a matrix

The **conjugate** of a complex number $z = x + iy$ is the complex number $\bar{z} = x - iy$. If A is an $m \times n$ matrix over the complex field, then we say that the **conjugate** of a matrix A is the matrix $\bar{A}$ whose elements are respectively the conjugates of the elements of A. That is, if $A = [a_{ij}]$, then $\bar{A} = [\bar{a}_{ij}]$.

CamScanner

For examples, if $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & i & 1+i \\ -i & 2 & 2+3i \\ 5 & 1+2i & -5 \end{bmatrix}$

then $\bar{A} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -i & 1-i \\ i & 2 & 2-3i \\ 5 & 1-2i & -5 \end{bmatrix}$

Definition Real matrix

A matrix A is called **real** provided it satisfies the relation $A = \bar{A}$

Definition Imaginary matrix

A matrix A is called **imaginary** Provided it satisfies the relation $A = -\bar{A}$

3.7 Conjugate transpose of a complex matrix

The conjugate of the transpose of a given complex matrix A is said to be the **conjugate transpose** of A and is generally denoted by the symbol A^*. That is,

if $A = [a_{ij}]$ is a complex matrix, then

$A^* = (\bar{A}^T) = [\bar{a}_{ji}]$.

For examples, if $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & i & 1+i \\ -i & 2 & 2+3i \\ 5 & 1+2i & -5 \end{bmatrix}$

then $A^* = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & i & 5 \\ -i & 2 & 1-2i \\ 1-i & 2-3i & -5 \end{bmatrix}$

and if $B = \begin{bmatrix} 5+7i & -3i & 2-5i \\ 4i & 1+6i & 3+2i \end{bmatrix}$

then $B^* = \begin{bmatrix} 5-7i & -4i \\ 3i & 1-6i \\ 2+5i & 3-2i \end{bmatrix}$.

3.8 Special types of matrices with examples

Square matrix : A matrix with the same number of rows and columns is called a **square matrix.**

For examples $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 3 \\ -5 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$ and $\begin{bmatrix} 2 & -3 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & -5 \\ 7 & -2 & 6 \end{bmatrix}$ are square matrices.

Rectangular matrix : The number of rows and columns of a matrix need not be equal.

When $m \neq n$ i.e the number of rows and columns of the array are not equal, then the matrix is known as the **rectangular matrix :**

For examples, $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & -1 & 2 & 7 \\ -2 & 3 & 5 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$ and $\begin{bmatrix} 1-i & 2i & 3 \\ i & 2 & 0 & 5 \end{bmatrix}$

are rectangular matrices.

Diagonal matrix : A square matrix whose elements $a_{ij} = 0$ when $i \neq j$ is called a **diagonal matrix.**

For examples, $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$ and $\begin{bmatrix} 2 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -3 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$ are diagonal matrices.

A diagonal matrix whose diagonal elements are all equal is called a **scalar matrix.**

Identity matrix (or **Unit matrix**) **:**

A square matrix whose elements $a_{ij} = 0$, if $i \neq j$ and $a_{ij} = 1$ if $i = j$ is called the **identity matrix** or **unit matrix.**

For examples, $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$ and $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$ are identity

matrices of order 3 and 4 respectively.

Zero matrix or **null matrix :** A matrix in which every element is zero is called a **null matrix** or a **zero matrix.**

For examples, $\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$ and $\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$ are zero matrices.

Upper and lower triangular matrices :

A square matrix whose elements $a_{ij} = 0$ for $i > j$ is called an **upper triangular matrix** and a square matrix whose elements $a_{ij} = 0$ for $i < j$ is called a **lower triangular matrix.**

CamScanner

For examples, $\begin{bmatrix} 2 & 3 & 5 \\ 0 & 1 & -2 \\ 0 & 0 & 7 \end{bmatrix}$ and $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & -i & 2 & 3 \\ 0 & -1 & i & 5 \\ 0 & 0 & 3 & -2 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 7 \end{bmatrix}$

are upper triangular matrices.

and $\begin{bmatrix} 5 & 0 & 0 \\ -1 & 2 & 0 \\ 3 & 7 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$ and $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ i & 2 & 0 & 0 \\ -2 & 5 & -1 & 0 \\ 3 & 7 & -i & 6 \end{bmatrix}$ are lower triangular matrices.

Symmetric matrix : A matrix equal to its transpose i.e a square matrix such that $a_{ij} = a_{ji}$ for $1 \le i, j \le n$ is said to be **symmetric.** In short we can say a square matrix A will be symmetric if $A^T = A$.

For examples, $A = \begin{bmatrix} a & h & g \\ h & b & f \\ g & f & c \end{bmatrix}$ and $B = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & -3 \\ 2 & 5 & 7 \\ -3 & 7 & 3 \end{bmatrix}$

are symmetric matrices.

λA and λB are also symmetric if λ is a scalar.

Skew-symmetric matrix : A matrix equal to the negative of its transpose i,e a square matrix such that $a_{ij} = -a_{ji}$ and in which therefore, $a_{ii} = 0$ is said to be **skew-symmetric.**

For examples, $A = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & h & g \\ -h & 0 & f \\ -g & -f & 0 \end{bmatrix}$ and $B = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & -2 \\ -1 & 0 & 3 \\ 2 & -3 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$

are skew-symmetric matrices.

Hermitian matrix : If $A = [a_{ij}]$ is a square matrix over the complex field and $A^* = (\bar{A}^T) = A$ i.e $a_{ij} = \bar{a}_{ji}$ for $i, j = 1, 2, \ldots, n$; then A is called a **Hermitian matrix.**

For examples, $A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 2-3i & 3 \\ 2+3i & 5 & 1+i \\ 3 & 1-i & 0 \end{bmatrix}$ and

$B = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & i & -1-2i \\ -i & 3 & 5+3i \\ -1+2i & 5-3i & -1 \end{bmatrix}$ are Hermitian matrices.

In this case diagonal elements of the matrices will be real numbers.

Skew-Hermitian matrix : If $A = [a_{ij}]$ is a square matrix over the complex field, and $A^* = (\bar{A}^T) = -A$ i.e $a_{ij} = -\bar{a}_{ji}$ for $i,j = 1, 2, \ldots, n$ then A is called a **skew-Hermitian matrix.**

For examples, $A = \begin{bmatrix} 2i & 2-3i & 3 \\ -2-3i & 5i & 1+i \\ -3 & -1+i & 0 \end{bmatrix}$ and

$B = \begin{bmatrix} i & 1-i & 5 \\ -1-i & 2i & i \\ -5 & i & 0 \end{bmatrix}$ are skew-Hermitian matrices.

In this case diagonal elements of the matrix will be either zero or wholly complex number.

Orthogonal matrix : A real square matrix A is said to be **orthogonal** if $AA^T = A^T A = I$.

that is, if $A^T = A^{-1}$ (the inverse of the matrix A)

For examples, $A = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{1}{9} & \frac{8}{9} & -\frac{4}{9} \\ \frac{4}{9} & -\frac{4}{9} & -\frac{7}{9} \\ \frac{8}{9} & \frac{1}{9} & \frac{4}{9} \end{bmatrix}$ and

$B = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{1}{3} & \frac{2}{3} & \frac{2}{3} \\ \frac{2}{3} & \frac{1}{3} & -\frac{2}{3} \\ -\frac{2}{3} & \frac{2}{3} & -\frac{1}{3} \end{bmatrix}$ are orthogonal matrices.

Idempotent matrix : A square matrix A is called an **idempotent** matrix if $A^2 = A$.

For examples, $\begin{bmatrix} -1 & 3 & 5 \\ 1 & -3 & -5 \\ -1 & 3 & 5 \end{bmatrix}$ and $\begin{bmatrix} 2 & -2 & -4 \\ -1 & 3 & 4 \\ 1 & -2 & -3 \end{bmatrix}$

are idempotent matrices.

CamScanner

Nilpotent matrix : A square matrix A is called a **nilpotent matrix** of order n if $A^n = 0$ and $A^{n-1} \neq 0$ where n is a positive integer and 0 is the null matrix.

For examples, $A = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$ and $B = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 1 & 2 & 3 \\ -1 & -2 & -3 \end{bmatrix}$

are nilpotent matrices of order 2.

Periodic matrix : A square matrix A is called **periodic** if $A^{m+1} = A$ where m is a positive integer.

If m is the least positive integer for which $A^{m+1} = A$, then A is said to be of **period** m.

For example, $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -2 & -6 \\ -3 & 2 & 9 \\ 2 & 0 & -3 \end{bmatrix}$ is a periodic matrix of period 2.

Involutory matrix : A square matrix A is called an **involutory matrix** if $A^2 = I$.

For example, $A = \begin{bmatrix} 4 & 3 \\ -5 & -4 \end{bmatrix}$ is an involutory matrix.

Unitary matrix : Let A be a complex square matrix, then A is called a **unitary matrix** if $AA^* = A^*A = I$ or equivalently $A^* = A^{-1}$. where $A^* = (\bar{A})^T = (\bar{A^T})$.

For example, $\begin{bmatrix} \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} & \frac{i}{\sqrt{2}} \\ -\frac{i}{\sqrt{2}} & \frac{-1}{\sqrt{2}} \end{bmatrix}$ is a unitary matrix.

Normal matrix : Let A be a complex square matrix, then A is called a **normal matrix** if $A^*A = AA^*$ where A^* is the conjugate transpose of A.

For example, $A = \begin{bmatrix} 2+3i & 1 \\ i & 1+2i \end{bmatrix}$ is a normal matrix.

CamScanner

3.9 Theorems on transpose matrix

Theorem 1 If A and B are comparable matrices and A^T and B^T are the transpose matrices of A and B respectively.

then (i) $(A^T)^T = A$ (ii) $(A + B)^T = A^T + B^T$.

(iii) $(AB)^T = B^TA^T$ (iv) $(\alpha A)^T = \alpha A^T$. where α is a scalar.

Proof : (i) Let $A = [a_{ij}]$ $\begin{matrix} i = 1, 2, \ldots, m \\ j = 1, 2, \ldots, n \end{matrix}$

then by definition $A^T = [a_{ij}]^T = [a_{ji}]$

Now $(A^T)^T = [a_{ji}]^T = [a_{ij}] = A$ $\quad \therefore (A^T)^T = A$.

(ii) Let $A = [a_{ij}]$ and $B = [b_{ij}]$ where $\begin{matrix} i = 1, 2, \ldots, m \\ j = 1, 2, \ldots, n \end{matrix}$

then $C = A + B$ is defined and $[c_{ij}] = [a_{ij}] + [b_{ij}]$.

Now by the definition of the transpose of C

we have $(A + B)^T = C^T = [c_{ij}]^T = [c_{ji}] = [a_{ji}] + [b_{ji}]$

$$= [a_{ij}]^T + [b_{ij}]^T = A^T + B^T$$

$$\therefore (A + B)^T = A^T + B^T.$$

(iii) Let $A = [a_{ij}]$ $i = 1, 2, \ldots, m$; $j = 1, 2, \ldots, n$

and $B = [b_{jk}]$ $j = 1, 2, \ldots, n$, $k = 1, 2, \ldots, p$

Then $A^T = [a_{ij}]^T = [a_{ji}]$ is an $n \times m$ matrix

$B^T = [b_{jk}]^T = [b_{kj}]$ is a $p \times n$ matrix.

Thus AB is a $m \times p$ matrix so that $(AB)^T$ is a $p \times m$ matrix. Also B^TA^T is a $p \times m$ matrix. Therefore, $(AB)^T$ and B^TA^T have same dimensions.

Now $AB = [c_{ik}]$ where (i, k) th element of AB is

$$c_{ik} = \sum_{j=1}^{n} a_{ij} b_{jk} \quad \text{where } \begin{matrix} i = 1, 2, \ldots, m \\ k = 1, 2, \ldots, p. \end{matrix}$$

Therefore, the (k,i)th element of $(AB)^T$

$$= \sum_{j=1}^{n} a_{ij}b_{jk} = \sum_{j=1}^{n} a_{ji}^T \, b_{kj}^T$$

$$= \sum_{j=1}^{n} b_{kj}^T \, a_{ji}^T$$

= (k,i)th element of B^TA^T.

Hence $(AB)^T = B^TA^T$

(iv) Let $A = [a_{ij}]$ $\therefore A^T = [a_{ij}]^T = [a_{ji}]$

Now $(\alpha A)^T = [\alpha a_{ij}]^T = [\alpha a_{ji}] = \alpha [a_{ji}] = \alpha A^T$

$\therefore (\alpha A)^T = \alpha A^T$.

3.10 Theorems on complex conjugate of a matrix

Theorem 1. If $A = [a_{ij}]$ is any $m \times n$ complex matrix, then $\bar{\bar{A}} = A$.

Proof : By definition of complex conjugate of a complex matrix, we have $\bar{A} = [\bar{a}_{ij}]$ for all $1 \le i \le m$, $1 \le j \le n$ and $\bar{a}_{ij}$ is the complex conjugate of a_{ij} i.e $\bar{a}_{ij}$ is the entry in the i th row and j th column of $\bar{A}$. Again $\bar{\bar{A}} = [\bar{\bar{a}}_{ij}]$ for all $1 \le i \le m$, $1 \le j \le n$ and $\bar{\bar{a}}_{ij}$ is the complex conjugate of $\bar{a}_{ij}$ i.e $\bar{\bar{a}}_{ij} = a_{ij}$ (the entry in the i th row and j th column of the matrix A). Therefore, the entries of the complex conjugate of $\bar{A}$ = the corresponding entries of A. Also A and $\bar{\bar{A}}$ are matrices of the same order. Hence $\bar{\bar{A}} = A$.

Theorem 2. If A and B are two complex matrices conformable to addition, then $\overline{A+B} = \bar{A} + \bar{B}$.

Proof : Let $A = [a_{ij}]$ and $B = [b_{ij}]$ be any two matrices of order $m \times n$. Then we have $A + B = [a_{ij} + b_{ij}]$ for all $1 \le i \le m$, $1 \le j \le n$.

Also by definition, we have $\bar{A} = [\bar{a}_{ij}]$ and $\bar{B} = [\bar{b}_{ij}]$

$$\therefore \bar{A} + \bar{B} = [\bar{a}_{ij}] + [\bar{b}_{ij}] = [\overline{a_{ij} + b_{ij}}] \qquad (1)$$

for all $1 \le i \le m$, $1 \le j \le n$.

since $\bar{z}_1 + \bar{z}_2 = \overline{z_1 + z_2}$ where z_1 and z_2 are any two complex numbers.

Again $\overline{A + B}$ = complex conjugate of $[a_{ij} + b_{ij}]$

= complex conjugate of c_{ij} where $c_{ij} = a_{ij} + b_{ij}$

$= [\bar{c}_{ij}] = \left[\overline{a_{ij} + b_{ij}}\right]$ for all $1 \le i \le m$, $1 \le j \le n$.

Therefore, $\overline{A + B} = \left[\overline{a_{ij} + b_{ij}}\right]$ for all $1 \le i \le m$, $1 \le j \le n$. (2)

Since the corresponding entries of $\bar{A} + \bar{B}$ and $\overline{A + B}$ are equal and also both $\bar{A} + \bar{B}$ and $\overline{A + B}$ are matrices of order $m \times n$, from (1) and (2), we conclude that $\overline{A + B} = \bar{A} + \bar{B}$.

Theorem 3. Let $A = [a_{ij}]$ be any $m \times n$ matrix and $B = [b_{jk}]$ be any $n \times p$ matrix over the complex field i.e A and B are conformable to the product AB, then $\overline{AB} = \bar{A}\,\bar{B}$.

Proof : Since A and B are conformable to the product AB, so $AB = [a_{ij}] \times [b_{jk}] = [c_{ik}]$ where $c_{ik} = a_{ij} b_{jk}$ for all $1 \le i \le m$, $1 \le k \le p$ and $1 \le j \le n$.

Also $\bar{A} = [\bar{a}_{ij}]$ for all $1 \le i \le m$, $1 \le j \le n$

and $\bar{B} = [\bar{b}_{jk}]$ for all $1 \le j \le n$, $1 \le k < \le p$.

Now $\bar{A}\,\bar{B}$ is defined and we have $\bar{A}\,\bar{B} = [\bar{a}_{ij}] \times [\bar{b}_{jk}] = [\bar{d}_{ik}]$ (1)

where $\bar{d}_{ik} = \bar{a}_{ij}\,\bar{b}_{jk}$ for all $1 \le i \le m$, $1 \le k < \le p$ and $1 \le j \le n$.

Again $\overline{AB}$ = complex conjugate of AB

or, $\overline{AB} = [\bar{c}_{ik}]$ where $c_{ik} = a_{ij} b_{jk}$

$= \left[\overline{a_{ij} b_{jk}}\right] = [\bar{a}_{ij}\,\bar{b}_{jk}]$

$= [\bar{d}_{ik}]$ (2) since $\overline{z_1 z_2} = \bar{z}_1 \bar{z}_2$

for any two complex numbers z_1 and z_2.

Since $\bar{d}_{ik} = \bar{a}_{ij}\,\bar{b}_{jk}$ for all $1 \le i \le m$, $1 \le k < \le p$ and $1 \le j \le n$.

Combining (1) & (2) we conclude that $\overline{AB} = \bar{A}\,\bar{B}$.

Theorem 4. Let $A = [a_{ij}]$ be any $m \times n$ complex matrix, then $\overline{\lambda A} = \bar{\lambda}\,\bar{A}$, λ being any complex number.

CamScanner

Proof : By definition of the conjugate of a matrix, we have $\bar{A} = [\bar{a}_{ij}]$ for all $1 \le i \le m$, $1 \le j \le n$ and $\bar{a}_{ij}$ is the complex conjugate of a_{ij}.

Also $\overline{\lambda A} = \left[\overline{\lambda a_{ij}}\right] = [\bar{\lambda}\, \bar{a}_{ij}]$ (1) for all $1 \le i \le m$, $1 \le j \le n$.

since $\overline{z_1 z_2} = \bar{z}_1 \bar{z}_2$ where z_1 and z_2 are any two complex numbers.

Again $\bar{\lambda}\, \bar{A} = [\bar{b}_{ij}]$ where $b_{ij} = \overline{\lambda a_{ij}}$ for all $1 \le i \le m$, $1 \le j \le n$.

$= [\bar{\lambda}\, \bar{a}_{ij}]$ for all $1 \le i \le m$, $1 \le j \le n$ (2)

Thus from (1) & (2), we conclude that the corresponding entries of $\overline{\lambda A}$ and $\bar{\lambda}\, \bar{A}$ are equal and they are of same order.

Hence $\overline{\lambda A} = \bar{\lambda}\, \bar{A}$.

3.11 Theorems on the conjugate transpose of a complex matrix.

Theorem 1. Let A^* and B^* be the conjugate transpose of A and B respectively, then

(i) $(A^*)^* = A$

(ii) $(A + B)^* = A^* + B^*$, A and B being conformable for addition

(iii) $(AB)^* = B^* A^*$, A and B being conformable for multiplication.

(iv) $(kA)^* = \bar{k} A^*$, k being a complex number.

Proof : (i) Let $A^* = B$, then $B = (\bar{A}^T) = (\bar{A})^T$

and $B^T = \left((\bar{A})^T\right)^T = \bar{A}$

Again $(\overline{B})^T = (\overline{B^T}) = \bar{\bar{A}} = A$

Therefore, $B^* = A$, since $B^* = (\overline{B})^T = (\overline{B^T})$

Hence $(A^*)^* = A$, since $B = A^*$.

(ii) By definition, we have

$$(A+B)^* = (\overline{A+B})^T = (\bar{A}+\bar{B})^T$$

$$= (\bar{A})^T + (\bar{B})^T \text{ since } (C+D)^T = C^T + D^T.$$

$$= A^* + B^*, \text{ since } A^* = (\bar{A})^T.$$

(iii) $(AB)^* = (\overline{AB})^T = (\bar{A}\,\bar{B})^T$

$$= (\bar{B})^T(\bar{A})^T \text{ since } (CD)^T = D^TC^T.$$

$$= B^*A^*.$$

(iv) $(kA)^* = (\overline{kA})^T = (\bar{k}\,\bar{A})^T = \bar{k}\,(\bar{A})^T = \bar{k}A^*$

Corollary : For any complex matrix A, $(\lambda A)^* = \lambda A^*$ where λ is a scalar.

3.12 Theorems on symmetric and skew-symmetric matrices.

Theorem 1. Every square matrix can be uniquely expressed as the sum of a symmetric matrix and a skew-symmetric matrix.

Proof : Let A be a square matrix, and A^T be its transpose. Then we have

$$A = \frac{1}{2}(A+A^T) + \frac{1}{2}(A-A^T) = B + C \text{ (say)} \qquad (1)$$

$$\text{where } B = \frac{1}{2}(A+A^T) \text{ and } C = \frac{1}{2}(A-A^T) \qquad (2).$$

$$\text{Now } B^T = \frac{1}{2}(A+A^T)^T = \frac{1}{2}(A^T + (A^T)^T)$$

$$= \frac{1}{2}(A^T + A) = B$$

$$\text{and } C^T = \frac{1}{2}(A-A^T)^T = \frac{1}{2}(A^T - (A^T)^T)$$

$$= \frac{1}{2}(A^T - A)$$

$$= -\frac{1}{2}(A-A^T) = -C.$$

Thus B is a symmetric matrix and C is a skew-symmetric matrix. Hence from (1) we conclude that a square matrix can be expressed as the sum of a symmetric matrix and a skew-symmetric matrix.

To prove the uniqueness of the representation of (1), let if possible $A = P + Q$ (3)

where P is a symmetric matrix and Q is a skew-symmetric matrix so that $P^T = P$ and $Q^T = -Q$

Then $A^T = (P + Q)^T = P^T + Q^T = P - Q$ (4)

Adding (3) and (4) we get

$$A + A^T = 2P \quad \therefore P = \frac{1}{2}(A^T + A)$$

Again subtracting (4) from (3), we get $A - A^T = 2Q$

$$\therefore Q = \frac{1}{2}(A - A^T)$$

This establishes the uniqueness of (1).

Hence the theorem is proved.

Theorem 2. If A is a square matrix, then $A + A^T$ is symmetric and $A - A^T$ is skew-symmetric.

Proof : First portion

If A is a square matrix, then

$$(A + A^T)^T = A^T + (A^T)^T = A^T + A = A + A^T$$

Hence by definition $A + A^T$ is symmetric.

Second portion

$$(A - A^T)^T = A^T - (A^T)^T = A^T - (A^T)^T = A^T - A = -(A - A^T)$$

Hence by definition $A - A^T$ is skew-symmetric.

Theorem 3. If A is a skew-symmetric matrix then $AA^T = A^TA$ and A^2 is symmetric.

Proof : First portion

Since A is skew-symmetric, $A^T = -A$

$$\therefore AA^T = A(-A) = -A^2 \quad \text{(i)}$$

$$\text{and } A^TA = (-A)A = -A^2 \quad \text{(ii)}$$

From (i) and (ii), we get $AA^T = A^TA$.

Second portion

$$(AA^T)^T = (A^T)^T A^T = AA^T \text{ Since } (A^T)^T = A.$$

and $(A^TA)^T = A^T (A^T)^T = A^TA$

$\therefore$ AA^T and $A^T A$ are both symmetric matrices. Therefore, $-A^2$ is a symmetric matrix. Again since -1 is a scalar,

A^2 is a symmetric matrix.

Note : If A is a symmetric matrix, than kA is also a symmetric matrix where k is any scalar.

Theorem 4. If A and B are both skew–symmetric matrices of same order such that AB = BA, then AB is symmetric.

Proof : If A and B are both skew-symmetric matrices, then $A^T = -A$ and $B^T = -B$

$$\text{i.e } A = -A^T \text{ and } B = -B^T$$

Also given $AB = BA = (-B^T)(-A^T) = B^TA^T = (AB)^T$

$$\therefore (AB)^T = AB.$$

Thus AB is a symmetric matrix.

Theorem 5. If A and B are n-square symmetric matrices, then AB is symmetric if and only if A and B commute (i.e AB = BA).

Proof : Since A and B are symmetric, $A^T = A$ and $B^T = B$.

Now $(AB)^T = (BA)^T = A^TB^T = AB$

$$\therefore (AB)^T = AB.$$

Thus AB is a symmetric matrix.

Conversely, $AB = (AB)^T = B^TA^T = BA$

$$\text{Since } B^T = B \text{ and } A^T = A.$$

Hence A and B commute.

Remark : The matrix B^TAB is symmetric or skew-symmetric according as A is symmetric or skew-symmetric.

CS CamScanner

3.13 Theorems on Hermitian and skew-Hermitian matrices

Theorem 1. In a complex field every square matrix can be expressed uniquely as the sum of a Hermitian matrix and a skew-Hermitian matrix.

Proof : Let A be a square matrix of order n and A^* be the conjugate transpose of A. Then we can write

$$A = \frac{1}{2}(A + A^*) + \frac{1}{2}(A - A^*) = P + Q \text{ (say)} \qquad (1)$$

where $P = \frac{1}{2}(A + A^*)$ and $Q = \frac{1}{2}(A - A^*)$

Now $P^* = \frac{1}{2}(A + A^*)^* = \frac{1}{2}(A^* + (A^*)^*)$

$$= \frac{1}{2}(A^* + A) = P$$

$$Q^* = \frac{1}{2}(A - A^*)^* = \frac{1}{2}(A^* - (A^*)^*)$$

$$= \frac{1}{2}(A^* - A)$$

$$= -\frac{1}{2}(A - A^*) = -Q.$$

Thus P is a Hermitian and Q is a skew-Hermitian matrix. Hence from (1) we see that a square matrix A can be expressed as the sum of a Hermitian matrix P and a skew-Hermitian matrix Q.

To prove the uniqueness of representation (1) let, if possible, A be also expressible in the form $A = R + S$ (2) where R is Hermitian and S is skew-Hermitian such that

$$R^* = R \text{ and } S^* = -S,$$

Now $A^* = (R + S)^* = R^* + S^* = R - S$ (3)

Adding (2) and (3), we get $R = \frac{1}{2}(A + A^*) = P$

Subtracting (3) from (2), we get $S = \frac{1}{2}(A - A^*) = Q$.

which establishes the uniqueness of (1).

Hence the theorem is proved.

Theorem 2. If A and B are Hermitian matrices then AB + BA is Hermitian and AB – BA is skew-Hermitian.

Proof : Since A and B are Hermitian matrices, we have $A^* = A$ and $B^* = B$ where A^* and B^* are the complex conjugate transposes of A and B respectively.

$$\text{Now } (AB + BA)^* = (AB)^* + (BA)^*$$
$$= B^*A^* + A^*B^*$$
$$= BA + AB = AB + BA.$$

Hence AB + BA is a Hermitian matrix.

$$\text{Again } (AB - BA)^* = (AB)^* - (BA)^*$$
$$= B^*A^* - A^*B^*$$
$$= BA - AB$$
$$= -(AB - BA)$$

Hence AB – BA is a skew-Hermitian matrix.

Theorem 3. If A and B are Hermitian, then AB is Hermitian if and only if A and B commute.

Proof : Since A and B are Hermitian,

$$A^* = A \text{ and } B^* = B \qquad (1)$$

Now $(AB)^* = B^*A^* = BA = AB$. since $AB = BA$.

Thus by definition, AB is Hermitian.

Again conversely, $AB = (AB)^* = B^*A^* = BA$

Since A and B are Hermitian

Thus A and B commute.

Theorem 4. Every square matrix can be uniquely expressed as P + iQ where p and Q are Hermitian.

Proof : Let A be the square matrix of order n and A^* be its conjugate transpose.

Then we can write

$$A = \frac{1}{2}(A + A^*) + \frac{1}{2}(A - A^*) = \frac{1}{2}(A + A^*) + i.\frac{1}{2i}(A - A^*)$$

$$= P + iQ \text{ (say) (1) where } P = \frac{1}{2}(A + A^*) \text{ and } Q = \frac{1}{2i}(A - A^*)$$

$$\text{Now } P^* = \frac{1}{2}(A + A^*)^* = \frac{1}{2}\{A^* + (A^*)^*\}$$

$$= \frac{1}{2}(A^* + A) = \frac{1}{2}(A + A^*) = P$$

$$Q^* = \left\{\frac{1}{2i}(A - A^*)\right\}^* = \frac{1}{2(-i)}\{A^* - (A^*)^*\}$$

$$= -\frac{1}{2i}(A^* - A)$$

$$= \frac{1}{2i}(A - A^*) = Q$$

Therefore, P and Q are Hermitian matrices. Thus from (1), we see that A can be expressed in the form P + iQ where P and Q are Hermitian matrices.

To prove the uniqueness of the representation (1) let if possible A = R + i S (2) where R and S are Hermitian, that is,

$$R^* = R \text{ and } S^* = S.$$

Now $A^* = (R + i S)^* = R^* - i S^* = R - i S$ (3)

(2) + (3) gives $A + A^* = 2R$

$$\therefore R = \frac{1}{2}(A + A^*) = P$$

(2) – (3) gives $A - A^* = 2i S$

$$\therefore S = \frac{1}{2i}(A - A^*) = Q$$

which establishes the uniqueness of (1). Hence the theorem is proved.

Remarks : (1) If A is any n-square complex matrix then $A + A^*$ is Hermitian and $A - A^*$ is skew-Hermitian.

(2) If A is any n-square complex matrix then AA^* and A^*A are both Hermitian.

(3) If A is Hermitian matrix, then i A is a skew-Hermitian matrix.

(4) If A is a skew-Hermitian matrix, then i A is a Hermitian matrix.

(5) A is Hermitian if and only if $\bar{A}$ is Hermitian.

(6) A is skew-Hermitian if and only if $\bar{A}$ is skew-Hermitian.

CamScanner

3.14 Theorem on idempotent matrices

Theorem 1 : If A and B are idempotent matrices then AB is idempotent if AB = BA.

Proof : Since A and B are idempotent matrices

$\therefore A^2 = A$ and $B^2 = B$, Also given AB = BA.

Now $(AB)^2 = AB\,(AB) = A\,(BA)\,B = A\,(AB)\,B$

$= (A.A)\,(B.B) = A^2\,B^2 = AB.$

Hence AB is an idempotent matrix.

Theorem 2 : If A and B are idempotent matrices, then A + B will be idempotent if and only if AB = BA = 0.

Proof : Since A and B are idempotent matrices

$\therefore A^2 = A$ and $B^2 = B$.

Now if AB = BA = 0, then $(A + B)^2 = (A + B)\,(A + B)$

$= A^2 + AB + BA + B^2$

$= A^2 + B^2$ since AB = BA = 0

$= A + B$ since $A^2 = A$, $B^2 = B$.

Hence A + B is an idempotent matrix.

Again if (A + B) is an idempotent matrix, then

$(A + B)^2 = A + B$

or, $A^2 + AB + BA + B^2 = A + B$

or, $A + AB + BA + B = A + B$

or, $AB + BA = 0$

or, $AB = -BA$ (1)

Also, $AB = A^2B = AAB = A\,(-BA) = -\,(AB)\,A$

$= -.\,-\,(BA)A = BA^2 = BA.$

$\therefore AB = BA$ (2)

Adding (1) and (2), we get $AB + AB = -BA + BA = 0$

i. e. $2AB = 0$ $\therefore AB = 0 = BA.$

Hence A + B is idempotent if and only if AB = 0 = BA.

Theorem 3. If A is an idempotent matrix, then B = I − A is idempotent and AB = 0 = BA.

CamScanner

Proof : We know that $AI = IA = A$

Also since A is idempotent, $A^2 = A$.

Again since I and A are square matrices, So $I - A$ is also a square matrix.

Now $(I - A)^2 = (I - A)(I - A) = I - IA - AI + A^2$

$$= I - A - A + A = I - A.$$

So by definition $I - A$ is an idempotent matrix.

Again $AB = A(I - A) = AI - A^2 = A - A = 0$

$$\therefore AB = 0$$

$$BA = (I - A)A = IA - A^2 = A - A = 0$$

$$\therefore BA = 0.$$

Theorem 4. If A and B are square matrices of order n such that $AB = A$ and $BA = B$, then A and B are idempotent.

Proof : $ABA = (AB)A = AA = A^2$ (1) since $AB = A$

Also $ABA = A(BA) = AB = A$ (2) since $BA = B$ & $AB = A$.

From (1) & (2), we get $A^2 = A$ $\therefore$ A is idempotent.

Similarly, we have

$$BAB = B(AB) = BA = B \quad (3) \text{ since } AB = A \text{ \& } BA = B$$

Also $BAB = (BA)B = BB = B^2$ (4) since $BA = B$

From (3) and (4) we get $B^2 = B$.

$\therefore$ B is idempotent.

3.15. Singular and non-singular matrices

Let D be the determinant of the square matrix A, then if $D = 0$, the matrix A is called the **singular matrix** and if $D \neq 0$, the matrix A is called the **non-singular matrix.**

As for examples

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 2 & 4 \end{bmatrix}, B = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 2 & 4 & 5 \\ -1 & -1 & 7 \end{bmatrix} \text{ and } C = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 4 & 5 & 6 \\ 7 & 8 & 9 \end{bmatrix}$$

are singular matrices,

since $D_1 = |A| = 0$, $D_2 = |B| = 0$ and $D_3 = |C| = 0$.

Again $A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 1 & 3 \\ 1 & -1 & 0 \\ 1 & -2 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$, $B = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 4 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 & 3 \\ 2 & -1 & 4 \end{bmatrix}$

are non-singular matrices,

since $D_1 = |A| = -6 \neq 0$ and $D_2 = |B| = 18 \neq 0$.

3.16 Inverse matrix

A square matrix A is said to be **invertible** if there exists a que matrix B such that $AB = BA = I$ where I is the unit rix. We call such a matrix B the **inverse** of A & is generally oted by A^{-1}. Here we have to note that if B is the inverse of hen A is the inverse of B.

Example 1. Let $A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 3 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$ and $B = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & -1 \\ -3 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$

Then $AB = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 3 & 2 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 2 & -1 \\ -3 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$

$$= \begin{bmatrix} 4-3 & -2+2 \\ 6-6 & -3+4 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} = I$$

$$BA = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & -1 \\ -3 & 2 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 3 & 2 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 4-3 & 2-2 \\ -6+6 & -3+4 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} = I$$

Therefore, A and B are invertible and are inverses of each er. That is, $A^{-1} = B$ and $B^{-1} = A$.

Example 2. Let $A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 0 & -1 \\ 5 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 3 \end{bmatrix}$ and $B = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & -1 & 1 \\ -15 & 6 & -5 \\ 5 & -2 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$

Then $AB = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 0 & -1 \\ 5 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 3 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 3 & -1 & 1 \\ -15 & 6 & -5 \\ 5 & -2 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$

$$= \begin{bmatrix} 6+0-5 & -2+0+2 & 2+0-2 \\ 15-15+0 & -5+6+0 & 5-5+0 \\ 0-15+15 & 0+6-6 & 0-5+6 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} = I$$

$$BA = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & -1 & 1 \\ -15 & 6 & -5 \\ 5 & -2 & 2 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 0 & -1 \\ 5 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 3 \end{bmatrix}$$

CamScanner

$$= \begin{bmatrix} 6-5+0 & 0-1+1 & -3+0+3 \\ -30+30+0 & 0+6-5 & 15+0-15 \\ 10-10+0 & 0-2+2 & -5+0+6 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} = I$$

Therefore, A and B are invertible and are inverses of each other. That is, $A^{-1} = B$ and $B^{-1} = A$.

3.17 Adjoint or adjugate matrix

$$\text{Let } A = \begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & \dots & a_{1n} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & \dots & a_{2n} \\ \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots \\ \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots \\ a_{n1} & a_{n2} & \dots & a_{nn} \end{bmatrix}$$

Let D be the determinant of the matrix A,

$$\text{then } D = |A| = \begin{vmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & \dots & a_{1n} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & \dots & a_{2n} \\ \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots \\ \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots \\ a_{n1} & a_{n2} & \dots & a_{nn} \end{vmatrix}$$

Let A_{ij} ($i = 1, 2, 3, \dots, n$ and $j = 1, 2, 3, \dots, n$)

be the cofactors of the determinant D.

Form the matrix $[A_{ij}]$. Then the transpose of the matrix $[A_{ij}]$ is called the **adjoint** or the **adjugate matrix** of the matrix A and is generally denoted by Adj A.

$$\therefore \text{ AdjA} = \begin{bmatrix} A_{11} & A_{12} & \dots & A_{1n} \\ A_{21} & A_{22} & \dots & A_{2n} \\ \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots \\ \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots \\ A_{n1} & A_{n2} & \dots & A_{nn} \end{bmatrix}^T = \begin{bmatrix} A_{11} & A_{21} & \dots & A_{n1} \\ A_{12} & A_{22} & \dots & A_{n2} \\ \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots \\ \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots \\ A_{1n} & A_{2n} & \dots & A_{nn} \end{bmatrix}$$

As for examples

$$\text{Let } A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 1 & 3 & -1 \\ 2 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \text{ then}$$

$$\text{Adj } A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -2 & -5 \\ 3 & -6 & 3 \\ -11 & 4 & 1 \end{bmatrix}^T = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 3 & -11 \\ -2 & -6 & 4 \\ -5 & 3 & 1 \end{bmatrix}.$$

3.18 Process of finding the inverse of a square matrix

Let the matrix $A = \begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & \dots & a_{1n} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & \dots & a_{2n} \\ \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots \\ a_{n1} & a_{n2} & \dots & a_{nn} \end{bmatrix}$

Let D be the determinant of the matrix A. Evaluate the determinant D; if D = 0, the matrix A is **singular** and it has no inverse, if $D \neq 0$ the matrix A is **non-singular** and A^{-1} exists. Find the adjoint matrix Adj A of the matrix A; then

$$A^{-1} = \frac{1}{D} \text{Adj } A = \frac{\text{Adj}A}{|A|}$$

$$\therefore A^{-1} = \begin{vmatrix} \frac{A_{11}}{|A|} & \frac{A_{21}}{|A|} & \dots & \frac{A_{n1}}{|A|} \\ \frac{A_{12}}{|A|} & \frac{A_{22}}{|A|} & \dots & \frac{A_{n2}}{|A|} \\ \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots \\ \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots \\ \frac{A_{1n}}{|A|} & \frac{A_{2n}}{|A|} & \dots & \frac{A_{nn}}{|A|} \end{vmatrix}.$$

3.19 Theorems on inverse matrix

Theorem 1 : If A^{-1} is the inverse of the n–square matrix A, then $AA^{-1} = A^{-1}A = I$, where I is the unit matrix of the same order.

Proof : Let $A = [a_{ij}]$ i, j = 1, 2, ..., n; then $A^{-1} = \frac{[A_{ji}]}{D}$ where D is the determinant of the matrix A ($D \neq 0$) and A_{ij} are the co-factors of D.

$$AA^{-1} = [a_{ij}] \times \frac{1}{D} [A_{ji}] = \frac{1}{D} [a_{ij}] \; [A_{ji}]$$

$$= \frac{1}{D} \begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & \dots & a_{1n} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & \dots & a_{2n} \\ \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots \\ \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots \\ a_{n1} & a_{n2} & \dots & a_{nn} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} A_{11} & A_{21} & \dots & A_{n1} \\ A_{12} & A_{22} & \dots & A_{n2} \\ \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots \\ \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots \\ A_{1n} & A_{2n} & \dots & A_{nn} \end{bmatrix}$$

$$= \frac{1}{D}\begin{bmatrix} D & 0 & \dots & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & D & \dots & 0 & 0 \\ \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots \\ 0 & 0 & \dots & 0 & D \end{bmatrix} = \frac{D}{D}\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & \dots & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & \dots & 0 \\ \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & \dots & 1 \end{bmatrix} = I.$$

Similarly, we can show that $A^{-1} A = I$

Thus $A A^{-1} = A^{-1} A = I$.

Theorem 2. If A and B are non-singular matrices, $(AB)^{-1} = B^{-1} A^{-1}$. Also $(A^{-1})^{-1} = A$ and $(A^{-1})^T = (A^T)^{-1}$.

Proof : Since, $(AB)(B^{-1} A^{-1}) = A(BB^{-1}) A^{-1} = AIA^{-1} = AA^{-1} = I$

and $(B^{-1}A^{-1})(AB) = B^{-1}(A^{-1} A) B = B^{-1} IB = B^{-1} B = I$.

Thus $B^{-1} A^{-1}$ is the inverse of AB i.e $(AB)^{-1} = B^{-1} A^{-1}$

If A and B are two matrices such that $AB = I$, then $A = B^{-1}$ and $B = A^{-1}$.

Therefore, $A = B^{-1} = (A^{-1})^{-1}$ $\therefore A = (A^{-1})^{-1}$.

$A^T (A^{-1})^T = (A^{-1}A)^T = (I)^T = I$ shows that $(A^{-1})^T = (A^T)^{-1}$.

Corollary : If $A_1, A_2, \dots, A_n$ are non-singular matrices of the same order, their product is non-singular and

$$(A_1 A_2 \dots A_r)^{-1} = A_r^{-1} \dots A_2^{-1} A_1^{-1}.$$

Theorem 3. A matrix has an inverse if and only if it is non-singular. A non-singular matrix has only one inverse.

Proof : Suppose that A is of the type (m, n) and that $m \le n$. If A has an inverse A^{-1} the products AA^{-1} and $A^{-1} A$ are both defined and hence A^{-1} must be of the form (n, m). It follows that $A^{-1} A = I_n$. If A has rank r, then we have $r \le m \le n \le r$, since the rank of I_n is n and the rank of the product of two matrices is less than or equal to the rank of either factor. Hence $m = n = r$ and A is non-singular. If $n \le m$ the result follows similarly, using $A A^{-1} = I_m$.

Now suppose that $A = [a_{ij}]$ is non-singular

Since $|A| \neq 0$, we can let $b_{ij} = \frac{A_{ji}}{|A|}$

$(i, j = 1, 2, \ldots, n)$, where A_{ij} are the co-factors of a_{ij} in A.

Let B be the matrix $[b_{ij}]$. Then

$$AB = \left[\sum_{k=1}^{n} a_{ik} \; b_{kj}\right] = \left[\sum_{k=1}^{n} a_{ik} \frac{[A_{jk}]}{|A|}\right] = \left[\frac{|A|\,\delta_{ij}}{|A|}\right] = I$$

$$\text{Similarly, } BA = \left[\sum_{k=1}^{n} b_{ik} \,.\, a_{kj}\right] = \left[\sum_{k=1}^{n} \frac{[A_{kj}]}{|A|} a_{kj}\right] = I.$$

Hence B is an inverse of A and every non-singular matrix A has an inverse.

Finally, we have to show that the inverse of a non-singular matrix is unique. Suppose that A is non-singular and A^{-1} is its inverse. If B is another inverses of A, then we have $AB = I$ Multiply each side of this equation on the left by A^{-1}, then we $A^{-1}(AB) = A^{-1} I = A^{-1}$.

or, $(A^{-1}A) B = A^{-1}$

or, $IB = A^{-1}$

or, $B = A^{-1}$

Hence A has only one inverse A^{-1},

[The **rank** of a matrix A is the maximum number of linearly independent row (or column) vectors of A.]

3.20 Theorems on orthogonal matrices.

Theorem 1. If A and B are orthogonal matrices, each of order n then the matrices AB and BA are also orthogonal.

Proof : Since A and B are n-rowed orthogonal matrices

$$A^T A = AA^T = I_n \text{ and } B^T B = BB^T = I_n \quad (1)$$

The matrix product AB is also a square matrix of order n and $(AB)^T(AB) = (B^T A^T)(AB)$

$$= B^T (A^T A) B$$

$$= B^T I_n B$$

$$= B^T B = I_n.$$

Thus AB is an orthogonal matrix of order n.

Similarly, $BA\ (BA)^T = (BA)\ (A^TB^T) = B\ (AA^T)B^T$

$= BI_nB^T = BB^T = I_n$.

Hence BA is an orthogonal matrix of order n.

Theorem 2. If A is an orthogonal matrix, then A^{-1} is also orthogonal.

Proof : If A is orthogonal, we have

$AA^T = A^T A = I$ where I is the identity matrix.

or, $(AA^T)^{-1} = (A^TA)^{-1} = I^{-1} = I$

or, $(A^T)^{-1}\ A^{-1} = A^{-1}\ (A^T)^{-1} = I$

or, $(A^{-1})^T\ A^{-1} = A^{-1}(A^{-1})^T = I$, since $(A^T)^{-1} = (A^{-1})^T$

Hence A^{-1} is orthogonal by definition. That is, inverse of an orthogonal matrix is also orthogonal.

Theorem 3. Transpose of an orthogonal matrix is also orthogonal.

Proof : Here we have to show that if A is an orthogonal matrix, then A^T is also orthogonal. By definition if A is an orthogonal matrix, then we have $AA^T = A^T A = I$.

or, $(AA^T)^T = (A^T A)^T = I^T = I$

or, $(A^T)^T A^T = A^T (A^T)^T = I$

Hence A^T is orthogonal by definition.

Remark : For any square matrix A, we have if $AA^T = I$, then $A^TA = I$.

3.21 Theorems on unitary matrices

Theorem 1. If A and B are unitary matrices then AB is also a unitary matrix.

Proof : If A and B are unitary matrices, then by definition we have

$$AA^* = A^*A = I \qquad (1)$$

and

$$BB^* = B^*B = I \qquad (2)$$

Now $(AB)(AB)^* = (AB)(B^*A^*)$

$$= A(BB^*)A^*$$

$$= AIA^*$$

$$= AA^* = I$$

Similarly, we have

$$(AB)^*(AB) = (B^*A^*)(AB)$$

$$= B^*(A^*A)B$$

$$= B^*IB$$

$$= B^*B = I$$

Hence AB is a unitary matrix.

Theorem 2. If A is an unitary matrix, then A^{-1} is also unitary.

Proof : By definition if A is an unitary matrix, then we have $AA^* = A^*A = I$.

$\therefore \quad (AA^*)^{-1} = (A^*A)^{-1} = I^{-1} = I$

or, $\quad (A^*)^{-1}A^{-1} = A^{-1}(A^*)^{-1} = I$

or, $\quad (A^{-1})^* A^{-1} = A^{-1}(A^{-1})^* = I \quad$ Since $(A^*)^{-1} = (A^{-1})^*$

$\therefore A^{-1}$ is an unitary matrix by definition.

Theorem 3. Transpose of an unitary matrix is also unitary.

Proof : By definition if A is an unitary matrix, then $AA^* = A^*A = I$ where I is the unit matrix.

$\therefore \quad (AA^*)^T = (A^*A)^T = I^T = I$

or, $\quad (A^*)^T A^T = A^T (A^*)^T = I$

or, $\quad (A^T)^* A^T = A^T (A^T)^* = I \quad$ Since $(A^*)^T = (A^T)^*$

Hence by definition A^T is an unitary matrix.

Remark : For any square matrix A, if $AA^* = I$, then $A^*A = I$.

3.22 Theorems on involutory matrix.

Theorem 1. A matrix A is **involutory** if and only if

$(I - A)(I + A) = 0.$

Proof : Let $(I - A)(I + A) = 0 \Rightarrow I - A^2 = 0$

$\Rightarrow A^2 = I.$

$\Rightarrow$ A is involutory

Conversely, Let A be involutory. Then by definition, we have $A^2 = I$

$\therefore (I - A)(I + A) = I - A^2 = I - I = 0.$

Hence the theorem is proved.

Theorem 2. If A is an involutory matrix, Then $\frac{1}{2}(I + A)$ and $\frac{1}{2}(I - A)$ are idempotent.

Proof : $\left\{\frac{1}{2}(I + A)\right\}^2 = \frac{1}{4}(I^2 + 2A + A^2)$

$= \frac{1}{4}(I + 2A + I)$, since $A^2 = I$ & $I^2 = I$

$= \frac{1}{2}(I + A)$. Thus $\frac{1}{2}(I + A)$ is idempotent.

Again $\left\{\frac{1}{2}(I - A)\right\}^2 = \frac{1}{4}(I^2 - 2A + A^2)$

$= \frac{1}{4}(I - 2A + I)$ since $A^2 = I$ & $I^2 = I$

$= \frac{1}{2}(I - A)$. Thus $\frac{1}{2}(I-A)$ is idempotent.

Hence the theorem is proved.

3.23 Solution of linear equations by applying matrices

(i) When the linear system has n linear equations in n unknowns.

Let
$$\left.\begin{array}{l} a_{11}x_1 + a_{12}x_2 + \ldots + a_{1n}x_n = l_1 \\ a_{21}x_1 + a_{22}x_2 + \ldots + a_{2n}x_n = l_2 \\ \ldots \quad \ldots \quad \ldots \quad \ldots \\ a_{n1}x_1 + a_{n2}x_2 + \ldots + a_{nn}x_n = l_n \end{array}\right\} \qquad (1)$$

The above linear equations can be written in

matrix-form as

$$\begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & \cdots & a_{1n} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & \cdots & a_{2n} \\ \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots \\ a_{n1} & a_{n2} & \cdots & a_{nn} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ \vdots \\ x_n \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} l_1 \\ l_2 \\ \vdots \\ l_n \end{bmatrix} \qquad (2)$$

Suppose that

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & \cdots & a_{1n} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & \cdots & a_{2n} \\ \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots \\ a_{n1} & a_{n2} & \cdots & a_{nn} \end{bmatrix}, X = \begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ \vdots \\ x_n \end{bmatrix} \text{ and } L = \begin{bmatrix} l_1 \\ l_2 \\ \vdots \\ l_n \end{bmatrix}$$

Then equation no (2) reduces to $AX = L$ (3)

Let D be the determinant of the matrix A. Evaluate the determinant, if $D = 0$, A is **singular**, so A^{-1} does not exist and hence the system has no solution. If $D \neq 0$, A is **non-singular** So A^{-1} exists and hence the system has a solution. Now multiply both sides of (3) by A^{-1}, then we have

$A^{-1}AX = A^{-1}L$

or, $IX = A^{-1}L$ $\begin{cases} \text{Since } A^{-1}A = I \\ IX = X \end{cases}$

or, $X = A^{-1}L$

That is, $$\begin{vmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ \vdots \\ x_n \end{vmatrix} = \begin{vmatrix} \frac{A_{11}}{|A|} & \frac{A_{21}}{|A|} & \cdots & \frac{A_{n1}}{|A|} \\ \frac{A_{12}}{|A|} & \frac{A_{22}}{|A|} & \cdots & \frac{A_{n2}}{|A|} \\ \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots \\ \frac{A_{1n}}{|A|} & \frac{A_{2n}}{|A|} & \cdots & \frac{A_{2n}}{|A|} \end{vmatrix} \begin{vmatrix} l_1 \\ l_2 \\ \vdots \\ l_n \end{vmatrix} = \begin{vmatrix} m_1 \\ m_2 \\ \vdots \\ m_n \end{vmatrix} \text{ (say)}$$

Then $x_1 = m_1$, $x_2 = m_2$ ....., $x_n = m_n$ is a solution of the given system of n linear equations.

It is to be noted that the solution of the system of equations can also be found by reducing the augmented matrix of the given system to reduced row echelon form.

CamScanner

(ii) When the system has m linear equations in n unknowns and m < n.

Consider the following system of m linear equations in n unknowns $x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_n$

$$\left.\begin{array}{l} a_{11}x_1 + a_{12}x_2 + \ldots + a_{1n}x_n = l_1 \\ a_{21}x_1 + a_{22}x_2 + \ldots + a_{2n}x_n = l_2 \\ \ldots \quad \ldots \quad \ldots \quad \ldots \quad \ldots \\ a_{m1}x_1 + a_{m2}x_2 + \ldots + a_{mn}x_n = l_n \end{array}\right\} \quad (1)$$

in which m<n and a_{ij} and l_i, i = 1, 2, ..., m, j = 1, 2, ..., n are constants (scalars).

The given system (1) can be written in matrix-form as

$$\begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & \ldots & a_{1n} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & \ldots & a_{2n} \\ \ldots & \ldots & \ldots & \ldots \\ a_{m1} & a_{m2} & \ldots & a_{mn} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ \vdots \\ x_n \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} l_1 \\ l_2 \\ \vdots \\ l_m \end{bmatrix} \quad (2)$$

Now the augmented matrix of the system is

$$\left[\begin{array}{cccc:c} a_{11} & a_{12} & \ldots & a_{1n} & l_1 \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & \ldots & a_{2n} & l_2 \\ \ldots & \ldots & \ldots & \ldots & \vdots \\ a_{m1} & a_{m2} & \ldots & a_{mn} & l_m \end{array}\right]$$

We shall apply the elementary row transformations on the above augmented matrix to reduce it to the **reduced row echelon form.**

The reduced form of the augmented matrix will either give a solution of the given system or will indicate that the system is inconsistent.

Theorem 3.12 If A is an invertible n × n matrix, the system of linear equations $Ax = b$ has a unique solution given by $x = A^{-1}b$.

Proof : Since $A(A^{-1}b) = (AA^{-1})b = Ib = b$,

$\therefore x = A^{-1}b$ is a solution.

Conversely, suppose $x = \begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ \vdots \\ x_n \end{bmatrix}$ is a solution,

so that $A \begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ \vdots \\ x_n \end{bmatrix} = b.$

Multiplying both sides of this equation by A^{-1} on the left

we get $A^{-1} A \begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ \vdots \\ x_n \end{bmatrix} = A^{-1} b$

or, $\begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ \vdots \\ x_n \end{bmatrix} = A^{-1} b$ since $A^{-1}A = I$.

Hence $x = A^{-1} b$ is the unique solution of the given system of linear equations $Ax = b$.

Worked out examples

Example 1.

Let $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -2 & 3 \\ 5 & 1 & -4 \end{bmatrix}$ and $B = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 3 & 5 \\ 1 & 4 & -2 \end{bmatrix}$

Find the matrices 2A, A + B and A – B.

Solution : $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -2 & 3 \\ 5 & 1 & -4 \end{bmatrix}$ and $B = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 3 & 5 \\ 1 & 4 & -2 \end{bmatrix}$

$$2A = \begin{bmatrix} 2.1 & 2.(-2) & 2.3 \\ 2.5 & 2.1 & 2.(-4) \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & -4 & 6 \\ 10 & 2 & -8 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$A + B = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -2 & 3 \\ 5 & 1 & -4 \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 3 & 5 \\ 1 & 4 & -2 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{bmatrix} 1+2 & (-2)+3 & 3+5 \\ 5+1 & 1+4 & (-4)+(-2) \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 1 & 8 \\ 6 & 5 & -6 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$A - B = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -2 & 3 \\ 5 & 1 & -4 \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} -2 & -3 & -5 \\ -1 & -4 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{bmatrix} 1+(-2) & (-2)+(-3) & 3+(-5) \\ 5+(-1) & 1+(-4) & (-4)+2 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} -1 & -5 & -2 \\ 4 & -3 & -2 \end{bmatrix}.$$

Example 2. Let $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 5 \end{bmatrix}$ and $B = \begin{bmatrix} 5 & 0 \\ 2 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$.

Compute the matrix products AB and BA.

Solution : $AB = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 5 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 5 & 0 \\ 2 & 1 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 5+0 & 0+0 \\ 0+10 & 0+5 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 5 & 0 \\ 10 & 5 \end{bmatrix}$

$BA = \begin{bmatrix} 5 & 0 \\ 2 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 5 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 5+0 & 0+0 \\ 2+0 & 0+5 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 5 & 0 \\ 2 & 5 \end{bmatrix}$

So we see that $AB \neq BA$.

Example 3. Let $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 2 & 3 & 5 \end{bmatrix}$ and $B = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 & 3 \\ 1 & 3 & 2 & 5 \\ 2 & 1 & -1 & 3 \end{bmatrix}$

Calculate the product AB.

$$AB = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 2 & 3 & 5 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 & 3 \\ 1 & 3 & 2 & 5 \\ 2 & 1 & -1 & 3 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{bmatrix} 1+2+6 & 2+6+3 & -1+4-3 & 3+10+9 \\ 2+3+10 & 4+9+5 & -2+6-5 & 6+15+15 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{bmatrix} 9 & 11 & 0 & 22 \\ 15 & 18 & -1 & 26 \end{bmatrix}$$

It is to be noted that the product BA is not defined.

Example 4. If $A = \begin{bmatrix} -2 & 2 & -3 \\ 2 & 1 & -6 \\ -1 & -2 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$

Prove that $A^3 + A^2 - 21A - 54I = 0$

where I is the identity matrix of order 3×3.

Proof : $A = \begin{bmatrix} -2 & 2 & -3 \\ 2 & 1 & -6 \\ -1 & -2 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$

$$A^2 = AA = \begin{bmatrix} -2 & 2 & -3 \\ 2 & 1 & -6 \\ -1 & -2 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} -2 & 2 & -3 \\ 2 & 1 & -6 \\ -1 & -2 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{bmatrix} 4+4+3 & -4+2+6 & 6-12+0 \\ -4+2+6 & 4+1+12 & -6-6+0 \\ 2-4+0 & -2-2+0 & 3+12+0 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 11 & 4 & -6 \\ 4 & 17 & -12 \\ -2 & -4 & 15 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$A^3 = A^2A = \begin{bmatrix} 11 & 4 & -6 \\ 4 & 17 & -12 \\ -2 & -4 & 15 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} -2 & 2 & -3 \\ 2 & 1 & -6 \\ -1 & -2 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{bmatrix} -22+8+6 & 22+4+12 & -33-24+0 \\ -8+34+12 & 8+17+24 & -12-102+0 \\ 4-8-15 & -4-4-30 & 6+24+0 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{bmatrix} -8 & 38 & -57 \\ 38 & 49 & -114 \\ -19 & -38 & 30 \end{bmatrix}$$

$\therefore A^3 + A^2 - 21A - 45I$

$$= \begin{bmatrix} -8 & 38 & -57 \\ 38 & 49 & -114 \\ -19 & -38 & 30 \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} 11 & 4 & -6 \\ 4 & 17 & -12 \\ -2 & -4 & 15 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$-21 \begin{bmatrix} -2 & 2 & -3 \\ 2 & 1 & -6 \\ -1 & -2 & 0 \end{bmatrix} - 45 \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{bmatrix} -8 & 38 & -57 \\ 38 & 49 & -114 \\ -19 & -38 & 30 \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} 11 & 4 & -6 \\ 4 & 17 & -12 \\ -2 & -4 & 15 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$- \begin{bmatrix} -42 & 42 & -63 \\ 42 & 21 & -126 \\ -21 & -42 & 0 \end{bmatrix} - \begin{bmatrix} 45 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 45 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 45 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{bmatrix} -8+11+42-45 & 38+4-42-0 & -57-6+63-0 \\ 38+4-42-0 & 49+17-21-45 & -114-12+126-0 \\ -19-2+21-0 & -38-4+42-0 & 30+15-0-45 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} = O. \text{ Hence } A^3 + A^2 - 21A - 45I = O.$$

Example 5. If $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ -2 & 5 & -1 \\ 2 & 3 & 4 \end{bmatrix}$ and $B = \begin{bmatrix} -1 & 5 & 3 \\ 7 & -2 & 1 \\ 2 & 0 & -3 \end{bmatrix}$

then prove that $(AB)^T = B^T A^T$.

Proof : Given $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ -2 & 5 & -1 \\ 2 & 3 & 4 \end{bmatrix}$, $\therefore A^T = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -2 & 2 \\ 2 & 5 & 3 \\ 3 & -1 & 4 \end{bmatrix}$

Given $B = \begin{bmatrix} -1 & 5 & 3 \\ 7 & -2 & 1 \\ 2 & 0 & -3 \end{bmatrix}$, $\therefore B^T = \begin{bmatrix} -1 & 7 & 2 \\ 5 & -2 & 0 \\ 3 & 1 & -3 \end{bmatrix}$

Now $B^T A^T = \begin{bmatrix} -1 & 7 & 2 \\ 5 & -2 & 0 \\ 3 & 1 & -3 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -2 & 2 \\ 2 & 5 & 3 \\ 3 & -1 & 4 \end{bmatrix}$

CamScanner

$$= \begin{bmatrix} (-1)\cdot 1 + 7\cdot 2 + 2\cdot 3 & (-1)\cdot(-2) + 7\cdot 5 + 2\cdot(-1) & (-1)\cdot 2 + 7\cdot 3 + 2\cdot 4 \\ 5\cdot 1 + (-2)\cdot 2 + 0\cdot 3 & 5\cdot(-2) + (-2)\cdot 5 + 0\cdot(-1) & 5\cdot 2 + (-2)\cdot 3 + 0\cdot 4 \\ 3\cdot 1 + 1\cdot 2 + (-3)\cdot 3 & 3\cdot(-2) + 1\cdot 5 + (-3)\cdot(-1) & 3\cdot 2 + 1\cdot 3 + (-3)\cdot 4 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{bmatrix} -1+14+6 & 2+35-2 & -2+21+8 \\ 5-4+0 & -10-10+0 & 10-6+0 \\ 3+2-9 & -6+5+3 & 6+3-12 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{bmatrix} 19 & 35 & 27 \\ 1 & -20 & 4 \\ -4 & 2 & -3 \end{bmatrix} \qquad (1)$$

Again $AB = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ -2 & 5 & -1 \\ 2 & 3 & 4 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} -1 & 5 & 3 \\ 7 & -2 & 1 \\ 2 & 0 & -3 \end{bmatrix}$

$$= \begin{bmatrix} 1\cdot(-1) + 2\cdot 7 + 3\cdot 2 & 1\cdot 5 + 2\cdot(-2) + 3\cdot 0 & 1\cdot 3 + 2\cdot 1 + 3\cdot(-3) \\ (-2)\cdot(-1) + 5\cdot 7 + (-1)\cdot 2 & (-2)\cdot 5 + 5\cdot(-2) + (-1)\cdot 0 & (-2)\cdot 3 + 5\cdot 1 + (-1)\cdot(-3) \\ 2\cdot(-1) + 3\cdot 7 + 4\cdot 2 & 2\cdot 5 + 3\cdot(-2) + 4\cdot 0 & 2\cdot 3 + 3\cdot 1 + 4\cdot(-3) \end{bmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{bmatrix} -1+14+6 & 5-4+0 & 3+2-9 \\ 2+35-2 & -10-10+0 & -6+5+3 \\ -2+21+8 & 10-6+0 & 6+3-12 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{bmatrix} 19 & 1 & -4 \\ 35 & -20 & 2 \\ 27 & 4 & -3 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\therefore (AB)^T = \begin{bmatrix} 19 & 35 & 27 \\ 1 & -20 & 4 \\ -4 & 2 & -3 \end{bmatrix} \qquad (2)$$

Hence from (1) and (2), we get $(AB)^T = B^T A^T$.

Example 6. Find the symmetric and skew symmetric parts of the matrix $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 4 \\ 6 & 8 & 1 \\ 3 & 5 & 7 \end{bmatrix}$.

Solution : Given $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 4 \\ 6 & 8 & 1 \\ 3 & 5 & 7 \end{bmatrix}$ $\therefore A^T = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 6 & 3 \\ 2 & 8 & 5 \\ 4 & 1 & 7 \end{bmatrix}$

The symmetric part of $A = \frac{1}{2}(A + A^T)$

$$= \frac{1}{2}\left(\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 4 \\ 6 & 8 & 1 \\ 3 & 5 & 7 \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 6 & 3 \\ 2 & 8 & 5 \\ 4 & 1 & 7 \end{bmatrix}\right)$$

$$= \frac{1}{2}\begin{bmatrix} 1+1 & 2+6 & 4+3 \\ 6+2 & 8+8 & 1+5 \\ 3+4 & 5+1 & 7+7 \end{bmatrix} = \frac{1}{2}\begin{bmatrix} 2 & 8 & 7 \\ 8 & 16 & 6 \\ 7 & 6 & 14 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 4 & \frac{7}{2} \\ 4 & 8 & 3 \\ \frac{7}{2} & 3 & 7 \end{bmatrix}$$

The skew-symmetric part of $A = \frac{1}{2}(A - A^T)$

$$= \frac{1}{2}\left(\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 4 \\ 6 & 8 & 1 \\ 3 & 5 & 7 \end{bmatrix} - \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 6 & 3 \\ 2 & 8 & 5 \\ 4 & 1 & 7 \end{bmatrix}\right)$$

$$= \frac{1}{2}\begin{bmatrix} 1-1 & 2-6 & 4-3 \\ 6-2 & 8-8 & 1-5 \\ 3-4 & 5-1 & 7-7 \end{bmatrix} = \frac{1}{2}\begin{bmatrix} 0 & -4 & 1 \\ 4 & 0 & -4 \\ -1 & 4 & 0 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & -2 & \frac{1}{2} \\ 2 & 0 & -2 \\ -\frac{1}{2} & 2 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

Example 7. Prove that the matrix

$$A = \frac{1}{6}\begin{bmatrix} 3 & 3 & 3 & 3 \\ 3 & -5 & 1 & 1 \\ 3 & 1 & 1 & -5 \\ 3 & 1 & -5 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$ is orthogonal.

Proof : Given $A = \frac{1}{6}\begin{bmatrix} 3 & 3 & 3 & 3 \\ 3 & -5 & 1 & 1 \\ 3 & 1 & 1 & -5 \\ 3 & 1 & -5 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$

$$\therefore A^T = \frac{1}{6}\begin{bmatrix} 3 & 3 & 3 & 3 \\ 3 & -5 & 1 & 1 \\ 3 & 1 & 1 & -5 \\ 3 & 1 & -5 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\text{Now } AA^T = \frac{1}{36}\begin{bmatrix} 3 & 3 & 3 & 3 \\ 3 & -5 & 1 & 1 \\ 3 & 1 & 1 & -5 \\ 3 & 1 & -5 & 1 \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} 3 & 3 & 3 & 3 \\ 3 & -5 & 1 & 1 \\ 3 & 1 & 1 & -5 \\ 3 & 1 & -5 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

CamScanner

$$= \frac{1}{36}\begin{bmatrix} 9+9+9+9 & 9-15+3+3 & 9+3+3-15 & 9+3-15+3 \\ 9-15+3+3 & 9+25+1+1 & 9-5+1-5 & 9-5-5+1 \\ 9+3+3-15 & 9-5+1-5 & 9+1+1+25 & 9+1-5-5 \\ 9+3-15+3 & 9-5-5+1 & 9+1-5-5 & 9+1+25+1 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$= \frac{1}{36}\begin{bmatrix} 36 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 36 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 36 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 36 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} = I \quad \therefore \; AA^T = I.$$

Similarly, $A^TA = \frac{1}{36}\begin{bmatrix} 3 & 3 & 3 & 3 \\ 3 & -5 & 1 & 1 \\ 3 & 1 & 1 & -5 \\ 3 & 1 & -5 & 1 \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} 3 & 3 & 3 & 3 \\ 3 & -5 & 1 & 1 \\ 3 & 1 & 1 & -5 \\ 3 & 1 & -5 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$

$$= \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} = I.$$

Therefore, $AA^T = A^TA = I$.

Hence A is orthogonal.

Example 8. If $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1+i \\ 2-3i & i \end{bmatrix}$ and $B = \begin{bmatrix} 2-i & i \\ 1+5i & 3 \end{bmatrix}$

then prove that $\overline{A+B} = \bar{A} + \bar{B}$.

Proof : $\bar{A} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1-i \\ 2+3i & -i \end{bmatrix}$ and $\bar{B} = \begin{bmatrix} 2+i & -i \\ 1-5i & 3 \end{bmatrix}$

$\therefore \bar{A} + \bar{B} = \begin{bmatrix} 3+i & 1-2i \\ 3-2i & 3-i \end{bmatrix}$ (1)

Again $A + B = \begin{bmatrix} 3-i & 1+2i \\ 3+2i & 3+i \end{bmatrix}$

$\therefore \overline{A+B} = \begin{bmatrix} 3+i & 1-2i \\ 3-2i & 3-i \end{bmatrix}$ (2)

Thus from (1) and (2), we get

$$\overline{A+B} = \bar{A} + \bar{B}.$$

Example 9. Prove that $A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 2-3i & 3+5i \\ 2+3i & 3 & i \\ 3-5i & -i & 5 \end{bmatrix}$

is Hermitian.

Proof : $\bar{A} = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 2+3i & 3-5i \\ 2-3i & 3 & -i \\ 3+5i & i & 5 \end{bmatrix}$

$$A^* = \bar{A}^T = = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 2-3i & 3+5i \\ 2+3i & 3 & i \\ 3-5i & -i & 5 \end{bmatrix} = A$$

$\therefore A^* = A$. Hence A is Hermitian.

Example 10. Prove that the matrix $A = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & i \\ -i & -1 \end{bmatrix}$

is unitary.

Proof : Given $A = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & i \\ -i & -1 \end{bmatrix}$

$$\therefore A^* = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & i \\ -i & -1 \end{bmatrix}$$

Now $AA^* = \frac{1}{2} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & i \\ -i & -1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & i \\ -i & -1 \end{bmatrix}$

$$= \frac{1}{2} \begin{bmatrix} 1+1 & i-i \\ -i+i & 1+1 \end{bmatrix} = \frac{1}{2} \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 2 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} = I$$

Similarly, $A^*A = I$.

Thus $AA^* = A^*A = I$

Hence A is an unitary matrix.

Example 11. Show that the matrix $A = \begin{bmatrix} -5 & -8 & 0 \\ 3 & 5 & 0 \\ 1 & 2 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$

is involutory.

Froof : $A^2 = A \times A = \begin{bmatrix} -5 & -8 & 0 \\ 3 & 5 & 0 \\ 1 & 2 & -1 \end{bmatrix} \times \begin{bmatrix} -5 & -8 & 0 \\ 3 & 5 & 0 \\ 1 & 2 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$

CamScanner

$$= \begin{bmatrix} 25 - 24 + 0 & 40 - 40 + 0 & 0 + 0 + 0 \\ -15 + 15 + 0 & -24 + 25 + 0 & 0 + 0 + 0 \\ -5 + 6 - 1 & -8 + 10 - 2 & 0 + 0 + 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} = 1 \quad \therefore A^2 = I$$

Hence the given matrix A is involutory.

Example 12 (a) . Find the inverse of the matrix $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 3 & 4 \end{bmatrix}$.

Solution : Let D be the determinant of the matrix; then $D = \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 3 & 4 \end{vmatrix} = 4 - 6 = -2 \neq 0$. So the matrix A is non-singular and hence A^{-1} exists.

Now the cofactors of D are

$$A_{11} = 4, \qquad A_{12} = -3$$

$$A_{21} = -2, \qquad A_{22} = 1$$

Then $\text{Adj } A = \begin{bmatrix} 4 & -3 \\ -2 & 1 \end{bmatrix}^T = \begin{bmatrix} 4 & -2 \\ -3 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$

$$\therefore A^{-1} = \frac{1}{D} \text{Adj } A = \frac{1}{-2} \begin{bmatrix} 4 & -2 \\ -3 & 1 \end{bmatrix} = \frac{1}{2} \begin{bmatrix} -4 & 2 \\ 3 & -1 \end{bmatrix}.$$

Example 12 (b). Find the inverse of the matrix

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & -1 & 3 \\ 4 & 0 & -1 \\ 3 & 3 & 2 \end{bmatrix}.$$

Solution : Let D be the determinant of the matrix;

$$\text{then } D = \begin{vmatrix} 2 & -1 & 3 \\ 4 & 0 & -1 \\ 3 & 3 & 2 \end{vmatrix} = 2(0 + 3) + 1(8 + 3) + 3(12 - 0)$$

$$= 6 + 11 + 36 = 53 \neq 0.$$

So the matrix A is non-singular and A^{-1} exists. Now the cofactors of D are $A_{11} = \begin{vmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 3 & 2 \end{vmatrix} = 3,$

$$A_{12} = (-1) \begin{vmatrix} 4 & -1 \\ 3 & 2 \end{vmatrix} = -11, A_{13} = \begin{vmatrix} 4 & 0 \\ 3 & 3 \end{vmatrix} = 12,$$

$$A_{21} = (-1)\begin{vmatrix} -1 & 3 \\ 3 & 2 \end{vmatrix} = 11,\ A_{22} = \begin{vmatrix} 2 & 3 \\ 3 & 2 \end{vmatrix} = -5,$$

$$A_{23} = (-1)\begin{vmatrix} 2 & -1 \\ 3 & 3 \end{vmatrix} = -9,\ A_{31} = \begin{vmatrix} -1 & 3 \\ 0 & -1 \end{vmatrix} = 1,$$

$$A_{32} = (-1)\begin{vmatrix} 2 & 3 \\ 4 & -1 \end{vmatrix} = 14,\ A_{33} = \begin{vmatrix} 2 & -1 \\ 4 & 0 \end{vmatrix} = 4.$$

Therefore, $\text{Adj } A = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & -11 & 12 \\ 11 & -5 & -9 \\ 1 & 14 & 4 \end{bmatrix}^T = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 11 & 1 \\ -11 & -5 & 14 \\ 12 & -9 & 4 \end{bmatrix}$

$$\therefore A^{-1} = \frac{1}{D}\text{Adj } A = \frac{1}{53}\begin{bmatrix} 3 & 11 & 1 \\ -11 & -5 & 14 \\ 12 & -9 & 4 \end{bmatrix}.$$

Example 13. Find the inverse of the matrix $A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 5 \\ 1 & 3 \end{bmatrix}$ by using row canonical form.

Solution : $[AI_2] = \left[\begin{array}{cc:cc} 2 & 5 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 3 & 0 & 1 \end{array}\right]$ Interchange first and second rows.

$\sim \left[\begin{array}{cc:cc} 1 & 3 & 0 & 1 \\ 2 & 5 & 1 & 0 \end{array}\right]$ We multiply first row by 2 and then subtract from the second row.

$\sim \left[\begin{array}{cc:cc} 1 & 3 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & -1 & 1 & -2 \end{array}\right]$ We multiply second row by 3 and then add with the first row.

$\sim \left[\begin{array}{cc:cc} 1 & 0 & 3 & -5 \\ 0 & -1 & 1 & -2 \end{array}\right]$ We multiply second row ,by (–1).

$\sim \left[\begin{array}{cc:cc} 1 & 0 & 3 & -5 \\ 0 & 1 & -1 & 2 \end{array}\right] = [I_2\ A^{-1}]$

Hence A is invertible and $A^{-1} = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & -5 \\ -1 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$.

CamScanner

Example 14. If $A = \begin{bmatrix} -1 & 2 & -3 \\ 2 & 1 & 0 \\ 4 & -2 & 5 \end{bmatrix}$ and

$B = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 2 & 1 \\ 5 & 2 & -3 \end{bmatrix}$ find $A^{-1}B$. **[D. U. P. 1985]**

Solution : Given $A = \begin{bmatrix} -1 & 2 & -3 \\ 2 & 1 & 0 \\ 4 & -2 & 5 \end{bmatrix}$

Let $D = |A| = \begin{vmatrix} -1 & 2 & -3 \\ 2 & 1 & 0 \\ 4 & -2 & 5 \end{vmatrix} = -1(5+0) - 2(10-0) - 3(-4-4)$

$= -5 - 20 + 24 = -1 \neq 0$

So A is non-singular and hence A^{-1} exists.

Cofactors of $-1 = A_{11} = \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ -2 & 5 \end{vmatrix} = 5$

" " $2 = A_{12} = (-1)\begin{vmatrix} 2 & 0 \\ 4 & 5 \end{vmatrix} = -10$

" " $-3 = A_{13} = \begin{vmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 4 & -2 \end{vmatrix} = -8$

" " $2 = A_{21} = (-1)\begin{vmatrix} 2 & -3 \\ -2 & 5 \end{vmatrix} = -4$

" " $1 = A_{22} = \begin{vmatrix} -1 & -3 \\ 4 & 5 \end{vmatrix} = 7$

" " $0 = A_{23} = (-1)\begin{vmatrix} -1 & 2 \\ 4 & -2 \end{vmatrix} = 6$

" " $4 = A_{31} = \begin{vmatrix} 2 & -3 \\ 1 & 0 \end{vmatrix} = 3$

" " $-2 = A_{32} = (-1)\begin{vmatrix} -1 & -3 \\ 2 & 0 \end{vmatrix} = -6$

" " $5 = A_{33} = \begin{vmatrix} -1 & 2 \\ 2 & 1 \end{vmatrix} = -5.$

$$\therefore \text{Adj } A = \begin{bmatrix} 5 & -10 & -8 \\ -4 & 7 & 6 \\ 3 & -6 & -5 \end{bmatrix}^T = \begin{bmatrix} 5 & -4 & 3 \\ -10 & 7 & -6 \\ -8 & 6 & -5 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$A^{-1} = \frac{1}{D}\text{Adj } A = \frac{1}{-1} = \begin{bmatrix} 5 & -4 & 3 \\ -10 & 7 & -6 \\ -8 & 6 & -5 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} -5 & 4 & -3 \\ 10 & -7 & 6 \\ 8 & -6 & 5 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\text{Thus } A^{-1}B = \begin{bmatrix} -5 & 4 & -3 \\ 10 & -7 & 6 \\ 8 & -6 & 5 \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} 2 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 2 & 1 \\ 5 & 2 & -3 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{bmatrix} -10+0-15 & -5+8-6 & 5+4+9 \\ 20+0+30 & 10-14+12 & -10-7-18 \\ 16+0+25 & 8-12+10 & -8-6-15 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{bmatrix} -25 & -3 & 18 \\ 53 & 8 & -35 \\ 41 & 6 & -29 \end{bmatrix}.$$

Example 15. Find the inverse of the following matrix by using row canonical form : $A = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 4 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 & 3 \\ 2 & 5 & -4 \end{bmatrix}$

Solution :

$$[AI_3] = \left[\begin{array}{ccc|ccc} 3 & 4 & -1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 3 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 2 & 5 & -4 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{array}\right]$$ Interchange first and second rows.

$$\sim \left[\begin{array}{ccc|ccc} 1 & 0 & 3 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 3 & 4 & -1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 2 & 5 & -4 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{array}\right]$$ We multiply f rst row by 3 and 2 and then subtract from the second and third rows respectively.

$$\sim \left[\begin{array}{ccc|ccc} 1 & 0 & 3 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 4 & -10 & 1 & -3 & 0 \\ 0 & 5 & -10 & 0 & -2 & 1 \end{array}\right]$$ Subtract third row from the second row.

$$\sim \left[\begin{array}{ccc|ccc} 1 & 0 & 3 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 & 0 & 1 & -1 & -1 \\ 0 & 5 & -10 & 0 & -2 & 1 \end{array}\right]$$ Multiply the second row by (–1).

$$\sim \left[\begin{array}{ccc|ccc} 1 & 0 & 3 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & -1 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 5 & -10 & 0 & -2 & 1 \end{array}\right]$$ We multiply second row by 5 and then subtract from the third row.

$$\sim \left[\begin{array}{ccc|ccc} 1 & 0 & 3 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & -1 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & -10 & 5 & -7 & -4 \end{array}\right]$$ We multiply third row by $\left(-\frac{1}{10}\right)$

$$\sim\left[\begin{array}{ccc|ccc} 1 & 0 & 3 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & -1 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & -\frac{5}{10} & \frac{7}{10} & \frac{4}{10} \end{array}\right] \sim \left[\begin{array}{ccc|ccc} 1 & 0 & 3 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & -1 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & -\frac{1}{2} & \frac{7}{10} & \frac{2}{5} \end{array}\right]$$

We multiply third row by 3 and then subtract from the first row.

$$\sim\left[\begin{array}{ccc|ccc} 1 & 0 & 0 & \frac{3}{2} & -\frac{11}{10} & -\frac{6}{5} \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & -1 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & -\frac{1}{2} & \frac{7}{10} & \frac{2}{5} \end{array}\right] = [_3 A^{-1}]$$

Hence A is invertible and $A^{-1} = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{3}{2} & -\frac{11}{10} & -\frac{6}{5} \\ -1 & 1 & 1 \\ -\frac{1}{2} & \frac{7}{10} & \frac{2}{5} \end{bmatrix}$.

Example 16. Find the inverse of the matrix

$A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 2 & 0 & 0 \\ -6 & 0 & 1 & -2 \\ 8 & 1 & -2 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$ by using only row transformations to reduce A to I.

Solution : $[AI_4] = \left[\begin{array}{cccc|cccc} 1 & -1 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 2 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ -6 & 0 & 1 & -2 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 8 & 1 & -2 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{array}\right]$

We subtract first row from second row. We multiply first row by 6 and then add with the third row. Also we multiply first row by 8 and then subtract from the fourth row.

$$\sim\left[\begin{array}{cccc|cccc} 1 & -1 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 3 & 0 & 0 & -1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -6 & 1 & -2 & 6 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 9 & -2 & 1 & -8 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{array}\right]$$

We multiply second row by 2 and add with the third row. We also multiply second row by 3 and then subtract from the fourth row.

$$\sim \left[\begin{array}{cccc:cccc} 1 & -1 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 3 & 0 & 0 & -1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & -2 & 4 & 2 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -2 & 1 & -5 & -3 & 0 & 1 \end{array}\right]$$

We multiply second row by $\frac{1}{3}$

$$\sim \left[\begin{array}{cccc:cccc} 1 & -1 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & -\frac{1}{3} & \frac{1}{3} & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & -2 & 4 & 2 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -2 & 1 & -5 & -3 & 0 & 1 \end{array}\right]$$

We add second row with the first row.

$$\sim \left[\begin{array}{cccc:cccc} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & \frac{2}{3} & \frac{1}{3} & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & -\frac{1}{3} & \frac{1}{3} & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & -2 & 4 & 2 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -2 & 1 & -5 & -3 & 0 & 1 \end{array}\right]$$

We multiply third row by 2 and then add with the fourth row.

$$\sim \left[\begin{array}{cccc:cccc} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & \frac{2}{3} & \frac{1}{3} & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & -\frac{1}{3} & \frac{1}{3} & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & -2 & 4 & 2 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & -3 & 3 & 1 & 2 & 1 \end{array}\right]$$

We multiply fourth row by $\left(-\frac{1}{3}\right)$.

$$\sim \left[\begin{array}{cccc:cccc} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & \frac{2}{3} & \frac{1}{3} & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & -\frac{1}{3} & \frac{1}{3} & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & -2 & 4 & 2 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & -1 & -\frac{1}{3} & -\frac{2}{3} & -\frac{1}{3} \end{array}\right]$$

We multiply fourth row by 2 and then add with the third row.

$$\sim \left[\begin{array}{cccc:cccc} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & \frac{2}{3} & \frac{1}{3} & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & -\frac{1}{3} & \frac{1}{3} & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 2 & \frac{4}{3} & -\frac{1}{3} & -\frac{2}{3} \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & -1 & -\frac{1}{3} & -\frac{2}{3} & -\frac{1}{3} \end{array}\right] = [\, I_4 \; A^{-1} \,]$$

Hence A is invertible and

$$A^{-1} = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{2}{3} & \frac{1}{3} & 0 & 0 \\ -\frac{1}{3} & \frac{1}{3} & 0 & 0 \\ 2 & \frac{4}{3} & -\frac{1}{3} & -\frac{2}{3} \\ -1 & -\frac{1}{3} & -\frac{2}{3} & -\frac{1}{3} \end{bmatrix}$$

Example 17. Solve the following linear equations with the help of matrices : $\left.\begin{matrix} 2x + y = 1 \\ x - 2y = 3 \end{matrix}\right\}$ (1)

Solution : First Process : The system of linear equations can be written in matrix –form as

$$\begin{bmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 1 & -2 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix} \qquad (2)$$

Let $A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 1 & -2 \end{bmatrix}$, $X = \begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \end{bmatrix}$, $L = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix}$, then from

(2) we get $AX = L$ (3)

Let D be the determinant of the matrix A, then

$$D = \begin{vmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 1 & -2 \end{vmatrix} = -4 - 1 = -5 \neq 0.$$

So the matrix A is non-singular and hence A^{-1} exists.

Now the cofactors of D are.

$A_{11} = -2, \qquad A_{12} = -1$

$A_{21} = -1, \qquad A_{22} = 2.$

Therefore, $\text{Adj } A = \begin{bmatrix} -2 & -1 \\ -1 & 2 \end{bmatrix}^T = \begin{bmatrix} -2 & -1 \\ -1 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$ and

$$A^{-1} = \frac{1}{D} \text{adj } A = -\frac{1}{5} \begin{bmatrix} -2 & -1 \\ -1 & 2 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{2}{5} & \frac{1}{5} \\ \frac{1}{5} & -\frac{2}{5} \end{bmatrix}$$

We multiply both sides of equation (3) by A^{-1}.

$A^{-1}AX = A^{-1}L$

or, $IX = A^{-1}L$ $\left\{\begin{array}{l}\text{Since } A^{-1}A = I \\ \text{and } \quad IX = X\end{array}\right.$
or, $X = A^{-1}L$

$$\text{Thus } X = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{2}{5} & \frac{1}{5} \\ \frac{1}{5} & -\frac{2}{5} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{2}{5} + \frac{3}{5} \\ \frac{1}{5} - \frac{6}{5} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix}$$

or, $\begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix}$ Hence $\left.\begin{array}{l} x = 1 \\ y = -1 \end{array}\right\}$.

Second process

The augmented matrix of the given system of linear equations is

$$[\,AL\,] = \left[\begin{array}{cc:c} 2 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & -2 & 3 \end{array}\right] \text{ Interchange first and second rows.}$$

$$\sim \left[\begin{array}{cc:c} 1 & -2 & 3 \\ 2 & 1 & 1 \end{array}\right] \text{ We multiply first row by 2 and then subtract from the second row.}$$

$$\sim \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -2 & 3 \\ 0 & 5 & -5 \end{bmatrix} \text{ We multiply second row by } \frac{1}{5}.$$

$$\sim \left[\begin{array}{cc:c} 1 & -2 & 3 \\ 0 & 1 & -1 \end{array}\right]$$

Now the system is in row canonical form.

Then forming linear system we have $y = -1$ and $x - 2y = 3$.

$\therefore x = 2y + 3 = -2 + 3 = 1$.

Thus the required solution of the system is $x = 1$ and $y = -1$.

Example 18. Solve the following linear equations with the help of matrices : $\left.\begin{array}{l} 3x + 5y - 7z = 13 \\ 4x + y - 12z = 6 \\ 2x + 9y - 3z = 20 \end{array}\right\}$ **[D. U. P. 1984]**

Solution : First Process : The given linear equations can be written in matrix-form as

$$\begin{bmatrix} 3 & 5 & -7 \\ 4 & 1 & -12 \\ 2 & 9 & -3 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 13 \\ 6 \\ 20 \end{bmatrix} \qquad (1)$$

Suppose that $A = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 5 & -7 \\ 4 & 1 & -12 \\ 2 & 9 & -3 \end{bmatrix}$, $X = \begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{bmatrix}$ and $L = \begin{bmatrix} 13 \\ 6 \\ 20 \end{bmatrix}$

then the equation given by (1) reduces to $AX = L$ (2)

Let D be the determinant of the matrix A, then

$$D = \begin{vmatrix} 3 & 5 & -7 \\ 4 & 1 & -12 \\ 2 & 9 & -3 \end{vmatrix} = 3(-3 + 108) - 5(-12 + 24) - 7(36 - 2)$$
$$= 315 - 60 - 238 = 17 \neq 0.$$

So the matrix A is non-singular and hence A^{-1} exists.

We multiply both sides of equation no (2) by A^{-1} on the left.

Then we get $A^{-1}AX = A^{-1}L$

or, $IX = A^{-1}L$

or, $X = A^{-1}L$ (3) $\left\{ \text{Since } A^{-1}A = I \text{ and } IX = X \right.$

Now the cofactors of D are

$$A_{11} = \begin{vmatrix} 1 & -12 \\ 9 & -3 \end{vmatrix} = 105, \quad A_{12} = (-1) \begin{vmatrix} 4 & -12 \\ 2 & -3 \end{vmatrix} = -12,$$

$$A_{13} = \begin{vmatrix} 4 & 1 \\ 2 & 9 \end{vmatrix} = 34,$$

$$A_{21} = (-1) \begin{vmatrix} 5 & -7 \\ 9 & -3 \end{vmatrix} = -48, \quad A_{22} = \begin{vmatrix} 3 & -7 \\ 2 & -3 \end{vmatrix} = 5,$$

$$A_{23} = (-1) \begin{vmatrix} 3 & 5 \\ 2 & 9 \end{vmatrix} = -17.$$

$$A_{31} = \begin{vmatrix} 5 & -7 \\ 1 & -12 \end{vmatrix} = -53, \quad A_{32} = (-1) \begin{vmatrix} 3 & -7 \\ 4 & -12 \end{vmatrix} = 8.$$

$$A_{33} = \begin{vmatrix} 3 & 5 \\ 4 & 1 \end{vmatrix} = -17.$$

Therefore,

$$\text{Adj } A = \begin{bmatrix} 105 & -12 & 34 \\ -48 & 5 & -17 \\ -53 & 8 & -17 \end{bmatrix}^T = \begin{bmatrix} 105 & -48 & -53 \\ -12 & 5 & 8 \\ 34 & -17 & -17 \end{bmatrix}$$

and $A^{-1} = \frac{1}{D}\text{Adj } A = \frac{1}{17}\begin{bmatrix} 105 & -48 & -53 \\ -12 & 5 & 8 \\ 34 & -17 & -17 \end{bmatrix}$

Now from equation no (3) we get

$$\begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{bmatrix} = \frac{1}{17}\begin{bmatrix} 105 & -48 & -53 \\ -12 & 5 & 8 \\ 34 & -17 & -17 \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} 13 \\ 6 \\ 20 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$= \frac{1}{17}\begin{bmatrix} 1365 & -288 & -1060 \\ -156 & +30 & +160 \\ 442 & -102 & -340 \end{bmatrix} = \frac{1}{17}\begin{bmatrix} 1365 & -1348 \\ -156 & +190 \\ 442 & -442 \end{bmatrix}.$$

or, $\begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{bmatrix} = \frac{1}{17}\begin{bmatrix} 17 \\ 34 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}$ Hence $\left.\begin{matrix} x = 1 \\ y = 2 \\ z = 0 \end{matrix}\right\}$.

Second process : The augmented matrix of the given linear equations is

$$[AL] = \left[\begin{array}{ccc|c} 3 & 5 & -7 & 13 \\ 4 & 1 & -12 & 6 \\ 2 & 9 & -3 & 20 \end{array}\right]$$ We subtract third row from the first row. Also we multiply third row by 2 and then subtract from the second row.

$$\sim \left[\begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & -4 & -4 & -7 \\ 0 & -17 & -6 & -34 \\ 2 & 9 & -3 & 20 \end{array}\right]$$ We multiply first row by 2 and then subtract from the third row.

$$\sim \left[\begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & -4 & -4 & -7 \\ 0 & -17 & -6 & -34 \\ 0 & 17 & 5 & 34 \end{array}\right]$$ We add second row with third row.

$$\sim \left[\begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & -4 & -4 & -7 \\ 0 & -17 & -6 & -34 \\ 0 & 0 & -1 & 0 \end{array}\right]$$ We multiply second row by $\left(-\frac{1}{17}\right)$ and third row by (-1).

$$\sim \left[\begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & -4 & -4 & -7 \\ 0 & 1 & \frac{6}{17} & 2 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \end{array}\right]$$

Now the system is in row canonical form, Then forming the linear system, we have $z = 0$,

$$y + \frac{6}{17}z = 2,\ x - 4y - 4z = -7$$

or, $z = 0$, $y = 2$, $x = 8 - 7 = 1$.

Thus $x = 1$, $y = 2$, $z = 0$ is a solution of the given equations.

EXERCISES – 3

1. (a) If $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 3 & 4 \\ 5 & 2 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$ and $B = \begin{bmatrix} 6 & -1 & -2 & 5 \\ 1 & 0 & -3 & 4 \end{bmatrix}$

find the matrices 3A, A + B, A – B, 3A – 2B.

Answers : $\begin{bmatrix} 3 & 0 & 9 & 12 \\ 15 & 6 & 0 & 3 \end{bmatrix}$, $\begin{bmatrix} 7 & -1 & 1 & 9 \\ 6 & 2 & -3 & 5 \end{bmatrix}$

$\begin{bmatrix} -5 & 1 & 5 & -1 \\ 4 & 2 & 3 & -3 \end{bmatrix}$ and $\begin{bmatrix} -9 & 2 & 13 & 2 \\ 13 & 6 & 6 & -5 \end{bmatrix}$.

(b) Show that the six matrices

$I = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$, $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$ $B = \frac{1}{2}\begin{bmatrix} -1 & \sqrt{3} \\ \sqrt{3} & -1 \end{bmatrix}$

$C = \frac{1}{2}\begin{bmatrix} -1 & -\sqrt{3} \\ -\sqrt{3} & 1 \end{bmatrix}$, $D = \frac{1}{2}\begin{bmatrix} -1 & \sqrt{3} \\ -\sqrt{3} & -1 \end{bmatrix}$,

$E = \frac{1}{2}\begin{bmatrix} -1 & -\sqrt{3} \\ \sqrt{3} & -1 \end{bmatrix}$ satisfy the relations

$A^2 = B^2 = C^2 = I$, $AB = D$, $AC = BA = E$.

2. If $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 1 & -2 \end{bmatrix}$, $B = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 3 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$ and $C = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -1 \\ -1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$

Then show that (i) $A(B + C) = AB + AC$

(ii) $(A + B)C = AC + BC$. **[R. U. S. 1971]**

3. (a). If $A = \begin{bmatrix} -1 & 3 & 2 \\ 4 & -2 & 5 \\ 6 & 1 & -3 \end{bmatrix}$ and $B = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -2 & 1 \\ 2 & 3 & -1 \\ 5 & 2 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$

find the matrices AB and BA.

(b) Construct the products AB and BA.

where $A = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$ $B = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ -1 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ -1 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & -1 & -1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$

and also show that

$$AB - BA = -4C, \text{ where } C = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$$

Answers : (a) $\begin{bmatrix} 15 & 15 & -2 \\ 25 & -4 & 11 \\ -7 & -15 & 2 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} -3 & 8 & -11 \\ 4 & -1 & 22 \\ 9 & 12 & 17 \end{bmatrix}.$

(b) $AB = \begin{bmatrix} -2 & 0 & 0 & 2 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ -2 & 0 & 0 & 2 \end{bmatrix}, BA = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 0 & 0 & 2 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ -2 & 0 & 0 & -2 \end{bmatrix}.$

4. If $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -1 & 1 \\ -3 & 2 & -1 \\ -2 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$ and $B = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 2 & 4 & 6 \\ 1 & 2 & 3 \end{bmatrix}$

then show that $AB \neq BA$. **[R.U.P. 1974]**

5. If $A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & -3 & -5 \\ -1 & 4 & 5 \\ 1 & -3 & -4 \end{bmatrix}, B = \begin{bmatrix} -1 & 3 & 5 \\ 1 & -3 & -5 \\ -1 & 3 & 5 \end{bmatrix}$ and

$C = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & -2 & -4 \\ -1 & 3 & 4 \\ 1 & -2 & -3 \end{bmatrix}$ then show that

$AB = BA = 0$, $AC = A$ and $CA = C$. **[R. U. S 1973]**

6. If $A = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 2 \\ -1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$ Prove that $A^2 - 3A + 2I = 0$

7. If $A = \begin{bmatrix} 4 & 6 & 6 \\ 1 & 3 & 2 \\ -1 & -4 & -3 \end{bmatrix}$ Prove that $A^3 - 4A^2 - A + 4I = 0$.

CamScanner

8. If $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -4 & -1 & -4 \\ 2 & 0 & 5 & -4 \\ -1 & 1 & -2 & 3 \\ -1 & 4 & -i & 6 \end{bmatrix}$

Prove that $A^4 - 5A^3 + 9A^2 - 7A + 2I = 0$.

9. Verify that $(AB)^T = B^T A^T$ where

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 2 & 2 & 3 \\ 2 & 4 & 9 \end{bmatrix} \text{ and } B = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & -1 \\ -3 & 2 & 4 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

10. If $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -1 & 1 \\ 2 & -1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$ then show that

$A^3 = A^2 . A = A. A^2 = I$ and hence find A^{-1}.

[D. U. H. 1986; R. U. S. 1987]

Answer : $A^{-1} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & -1 & 2 \\ 1 & -1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$

11. Find the adjoint matrices and the inverse matrices of each of the following matrices :

(i) $A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & -1 \\ 4 & 5 \end{bmatrix}$ (ii) $B = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$

(iii) $C = \begin{bmatrix} -1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & i & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1-i \end{bmatrix}$

Answers : (i) $\text{Adj } A = \begin{bmatrix} 5 & 1 \\ -4 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$, $A^{-1} = \frac{1}{14}\begin{bmatrix} 5 & 1 \\ -4 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$

(ii) $\text{Adj } B = \begin{bmatrix} -1 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & -2 \\ -1 & -1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$, $B^{-1} = \frac{1}{2}\begin{bmatrix} 1 & -1 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 2 \\ 1 & 1 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$

(iii) $\text{Adj } C = \begin{bmatrix} 1+i & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & i-1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -i \end{bmatrix}$, $C^{-1} = \begin{bmatrix} -1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -i & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & \frac{1+i}{2} \end{bmatrix}$

12. (i) Find the inverse of the matrix

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & -1 & -1 \\ 1 & -2 & 1 \\ 1 & -1 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$$ **[J. U. H. 1975]**

(ii) Find the inverse of the matrix

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 5 & -6 & 4 \\ 7 & 4 & -3 \\ 2 & 1 & 6 \end{bmatrix}$$ **[D. U. P. 1979]**

Answers : (i) $A^{-1} = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{1}{2} & -\frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{2} \\ \frac{1}{6} & -\frac{5}{6} & \frac{1}{2} \\ -\frac{1}{6} & -\frac{1}{6} & \frac{1}{2} \end{bmatrix}$

(ii) $A^{-1} = \frac{1}{419}\begin{bmatrix} 27 & 40 & 2 \\ -48 & 22 & 43 \\ -1 & -17 & 62 \end{bmatrix}$

13. If $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -3 & 2 \\ 4 & 1 & -1 \\ -3 & 2 & 5 \end{bmatrix}$ and $B = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 1 & 5 \\ -1 & -2 & -2 \\ 3 & 1 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$

Find the matrices AB, BA, A^{-1}, B^{-1}, $(AB)^{-1}$. Check your results by verifying the relations.

$(AB)^{-1} = B^{-1}A^{-1}$, $AA^{-1} = I$, $B^{-1}B = I$.

Answers : $AB = \begin{bmatrix} 11 & 9 & 15 \\ 4 & 1 & 16 \\ 7 & -2 & -9 \end{bmatrix}$, $BA = \begin{bmatrix} -9 & 5 & 28 \\ -3 & -3 & -10 \\ 1 & -4 & 15 \end{bmatrix}$,

$A^{-1} = \frac{1}{80}\begin{bmatrix} 7 & 19 & 1 \\ -17 & 11 & 9 \\ 11 & 7 & 13 \end{bmatrix}$,

$B^{-1} = \frac{1}{17}\begin{bmatrix} -2 & 3 & 8 \\ -4 & -11 & -1 \\ 5 & 1 & -3 \end{bmatrix}$

$(AB)^{-1} = \frac{1}{1360}\begin{bmatrix} 23 & 51 & 129 \\ 148 & -204 & -116 \\ -15 & 85 & -25 \end{bmatrix}$

14. If $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$ and $B = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$

Show that $A^3 - A^2 + A - 2B = 0$. **[C. U. P. 1976]**

15. If $A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 3 & 4 \\ 4 & 3 & 2 \\ 2 & 4 & 3 \end{bmatrix}$ and $B = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 2 & 3 & 4 \\ 3 & 4 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$

Show that $(A + B)^2 \neq A^2 + 2AB + B^2$.

[D. U. H. 1976, C. U. H. 1977]

16. If $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 1 & 3 & 5 \\ 1 & 5 & 12 \end{bmatrix}$ and $B = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 1 & 4 & 9 \end{bmatrix}$

Find the values of $A^{-1}B$ and AB^{-1} **[D. U. P. 1976]**

Answers : $A^{-1}B = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -1 & -\frac{7}{3} \\ 0 & 1 & \frac{2}{3} \\ 0 & 0 & \frac{2}{3} \end{bmatrix}$ $AB^{-1} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & -\frac{1}{2} & \frac{3}{2} \end{bmatrix}$.

17. If $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$ Find $\frac{1}{2}(A^{-1} + A)$. **[D. U. P. 1977]**

Answer : $\frac{1}{2}(A^{-1} + A) = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} = I$.

18. If $A = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & -3 & 4 \\ 2 & -3 & 4 \\ 0 & -1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$ Prove that $A^3 = A^{-1}$.

19. Find the inverse of the matrix

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 & 2 \\ -1 & 1 & 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 3 & 1 & 0 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$$

Answer : $A^{-1} = \begin{bmatrix} -\frac{1}{2} & -\frac{1}{6} & \frac{5}{6} & \frac{1}{6} \\ -\frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{2} & -\frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{2} \\ -\frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{6} & \frac{7}{6} & -\frac{1}{6} \\ 1 & 0 & -1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$

CamScanner

20. Find the inverse of each of the following matrices by using only the elementary row operations (row equivalent canonical matrix) :

(i) $\begin{bmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 3 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$ (ii) $\begin{bmatrix} 2 & 3 & -4 \\ 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 3 & -1 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$ (iii) $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 3 & 4 \\ 3 & -1 & 6 \\ -1 & 5 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$

(iv) $\begin{bmatrix} -1 & 2 & -3 \\ 2 & 1 & 0 \\ 4 & -2 & 5 \end{bmatrix}$ (v) $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & -1 & 2 & 1 \\ 3 & 0 & 2 & 2 \\ 2 & 1 & -1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$ (vi) $\begin{bmatrix} 2 & 5 & 2 & 3 \\ 2 & 3 & 3 & 4 \\ 3 & 6 & 3 & 2 \\ 4 & 12 & 0 & 8 \end{bmatrix}$

Answers :

(i) $\begin{bmatrix} 2 & -1 \\ -3 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$ (ii) $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 7 & 17 \\ 10 & 10 & -10 \\ -7 & 11 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$ (iii) $\begin{bmatrix} \frac{31}{2} & -\frac{17}{2} & -11 \\ \frac{9}{2} & -\frac{5}{2} & -3 \\ -7 & 4 & 5 \end{bmatrix}$,

(iv) $\begin{bmatrix} -5 & 4 & -3 \\ 10 & -7 & 6 \\ 8 & -6 & 5 \end{bmatrix}$ (v) $\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 & -2 \\ -2 & 1 & -1 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 & -1 & 0 \\ 1 & -2 & 1 & 3 \end{bmatrix}$

(vi) $\begin{bmatrix} -3 & \frac{3}{4} & \frac{5}{4} & \frac{7}{16} \\ 1 & -\frac{5}{12} & -\frac{1}{4} & \frac{5}{48} \\ 1 & -\frac{1}{12} & -\frac{1}{4} & -\frac{13}{48} \\ 0 & \frac{1}{4} & -\frac{1}{4} & \frac{1}{16} \end{bmatrix}$

21. If $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 3 & 2 \\ 2 & 0 & 3 \\ 1 & -1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$ then find $A^3 - 2A^2 - 4A - 2I$ and hence find A^{-1}.

[D. U. H. T. 1984]

Answers : O and $A^{-1} = \frac{1}{2}\begin{bmatrix} 3 & -5 & 9 \\ 1 & -1 & 1 \\ -2 & 4 & -6 \end{bmatrix}$.

22. Find the inverse of the matrix $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 2 & 5 & 3 \\ 1 & 0 & 8 \end{bmatrix}$

Answer : $A^{-1} = \begin{bmatrix} -40 & 16 & 9 \\ 13 & -5 & -3 \\ 5 & -2 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$.

23. Show that the matrix

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} \cos\theta & \sin\theta & 0 \\ -\sin\theta & \cos\theta & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

is invertible for all values of θ and find A^{-1}.

Answer : $A^{-1} = \begin{bmatrix} \cos\theta & -\sin\theta & 0 \\ \sin\theta & \cos\theta & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$

24. If $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 1 & 3 & 5 \\ 1 & 5 & 12 \end{bmatrix}$ and $B = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 1 & 4 & 5 \end{bmatrix}$

are two matrices, then find $A^{-1}B$ and AB^{-1}.

[D. U. H. T. 1981, 1987]

Answers : $A^{-1}B = \frac{1}{3}\begin{bmatrix} 3 & -3 & -11 \\ 0 & 3 & 10 \\ 0 & 0 & -2 \end{bmatrix}$, $AB^{-1} = \frac{1}{2}\begin{bmatrix} 0 & -2 & 0 \\ -2 & 4 & 0 \\ -12 & 17 & -3 \end{bmatrix}$

25. If $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 1 & 4 & 9 \end{bmatrix}$ and $B = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 5 & 3 \\ 3 & 1 & 2 \\ 1 & 2 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$

then prove that $(AB)^{-1} = B^{-1} \cdot A^{-1}$ **[D. U. H. T. 1983, 1987]**

26. Prove that the following matrices are orthogonal :

(i) $\begin{bmatrix} \cos\theta & -\sin\theta \\ \sin\theta & \cos\theta \end{bmatrix}$ (ii) $\begin{bmatrix} \cos\theta & -\sin\theta & 0 \\ \sin\theta & \cos\theta & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$

(iii) $\begin{bmatrix} -\frac{1}{3} & \frac{2}{3} & \frac{2}{3} \\ \frac{2}{3} & -\frac{1}{3} & \frac{2}{3} \\ \frac{2}{3} & \frac{2}{3} & -\frac{1}{3} \end{bmatrix}$ (iv) $\begin{bmatrix} \frac{1}{3} & \frac{2}{3} & -\frac{2}{3} \\ \frac{2}{3} & \frac{1}{3} & \frac{2}{3} \\ -\frac{2}{3} & \frac{2}{3} & \frac{1}{3} \end{bmatrix}$

CamScanner

20. Find the inverse of each of the following matrices by using only the elementary row operations (row equivalent canonical matrix) :

(i) $\begin{bmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 3 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$ (ii) $\begin{bmatrix} 2 & 3 & -4 \\ 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 3 & -1 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$ (iii) $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 3 & 4 \\ 3 & -1 & 6 \\ -1 & 5 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$

(iv) $\begin{bmatrix} -1 & 2 & -3 \\ 2 & 1 & 0 \\ 4 & -2 & 5 \end{bmatrix}$ (v) $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & -1 & 2 & 1 \\ 3 & 0 & 2 & 2 \\ 2 & 1 & -1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$ (vi) $\begin{bmatrix} 2 & 5 & 2 & 3 \\ 2 & 3 & 3 & 4 \\ 3 & 6 & 3 & 2 \\ 4 & 12 & 0 & 8 \end{bmatrix}$

Answers :

(i) $\begin{bmatrix} 2 & -1 \\ -3 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$ (ii) $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 7 & 17 \\ 10 & 10 & -10 \\ -7 & 11 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$ (iii) $\begin{bmatrix} \frac{31}{2} & -\frac{17}{2} & -11 \\ \frac{9}{2} & -\frac{5}{2} & -3 \\ -7 & 4 & 5 \end{bmatrix}$

(iv) $\begin{bmatrix} -5 & 4 & -3 \\ 10 & -7 & 6 \\ 8 & -6 & 5 \end{bmatrix}$ (v) $\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 & -2 \\ -2 & 1 & -1 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 & -1 & 0 \\ 1 & -2 & 1 & 3 \end{bmatrix}$

(vi) $\begin{bmatrix} -3 & \frac{3}{4} & \frac{5}{4} & \frac{7}{16} \\ 1 & -\frac{5}{12} & -\frac{1}{4} & \frac{5}{48} \\ 1 & -\frac{1}{12} & -\frac{1}{4} & -\frac{13}{48} \\ 0 & \frac{1}{4} & -\frac{1}{4} & \frac{1}{16} \end{bmatrix}$

21. If $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 3 & 2 \\ 2 & 0 & 3 \\ 1 & -1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$ then find $A^3 - 2A^2 - 4A - 2I$ and hence find A^{-1}.

[D. U. H. T. 1984]

Answers : O and $A^{-1} = \frac{1}{2}\begin{bmatrix} 3 & -5 & 9 \\ 1 & -1 & 1 \\ -2 & 4 & -6 \end{bmatrix}$.

CamScanner

22. Find the inverse of the matrix $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 2 & 5 & 3 \\ 1 & 0 & 8 \end{bmatrix}$

Answer : $A^{-1} = \begin{bmatrix} -40 & 16 & 9 \\ 13 & -5 & -3 \\ 5 & -2 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$.

23. Show that the matrix

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} \cos\theta & \sin\theta & 0 \\ -\sin\theta & \cos\theta & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

is invertible for all values of θ and find A^{-1}.

Answer : $A^{-1} = \begin{bmatrix} \cos\theta & -\sin\theta & 0 \\ \sin\theta & \cos\theta & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$

24. If $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 1 & 3 & 5 \\ 1 & 5 & 12 \end{bmatrix}$ and $B = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 1 & 4 & 5 \end{bmatrix}$

are two matrices, then find $A^{-1}B$ and AB^{-1}.

[D. U. H. T. 1981, 1987]

Answers : $A^{-1}B = \frac{1}{3}\begin{bmatrix} 3 & -3 & -11 \\ 0 & 3 & 10 \\ 0 & 0 & -2 \end{bmatrix}$, $AB^{-1} = \frac{1}{2}\begin{bmatrix} 0 & -2 & 0 \\ -2 & 4 & 0 \\ -12 & 17 & -3 \end{bmatrix}$.

25. If $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 1 & 4 & 9 \end{bmatrix}$ and $B = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 5 & 3 \\ 3 & 1 & 2 \\ 1 & 2 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$

then prove that $(AB)^{-1} = B^{-1} \cdot A^{-1}$ **[D. U. H. T. 1983, 1987]**

26. Prove that the following matrices are orthogonal :

(i) $\begin{bmatrix} \cos\theta & -\sin\theta \\ \sin\theta & \cos\theta \end{bmatrix}$ (ii) $\begin{bmatrix} \cos\theta & -\sin\theta & 0 \\ \sin\theta & \cos\theta & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$

(iii) $\begin{bmatrix} -\frac{1}{3} & \frac{2}{3} & \frac{2}{3} \\ \frac{2}{3} & -\frac{1}{3} & \frac{2}{3} \\ \frac{2}{3} & \frac{2}{3} & -\frac{1}{3} \end{bmatrix}$ (iv) $\begin{bmatrix} \frac{1}{3} & \frac{2}{3} & -\frac{2}{3} \\ \frac{2}{3} & \frac{1}{3} & \frac{2}{3} \\ -\frac{2}{3} & \frac{2}{3} & \frac{1}{3} \end{bmatrix}$

CamScanner

(v) $\begin{bmatrix} -\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} & \frac{1}{\sqrt{6}} & \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}} \\ 0 & -\frac{2}{\sqrt{6}} & \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}} \\ \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} & \frac{1}{\sqrt{6}} & \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}} \end{bmatrix}$

27. If $A = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$ then show that AA^T and A^TA are both symmetric matrices.

28. Show that the matrix

$$A = \frac{1}{2}\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & -1 & 1 & -1 \\ 1 & 1 & -1 & -1 \\ 1 & -1 & -1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$ is orthogonal.

29. Prove that the matrix

$$A = \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1+i \\ 1-i & -1 \end{bmatrix}$$ is unitary.

30. Show that the matrix $A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & -1 & 1 \\ -2 & 3 & -2 \\ -4 & 4 & -3 \end{bmatrix}$ is idempotent.

31. Show that the matrix $A = \begin{bmatrix} 4 & -1 & -4 \\ 3 & 0 & -4 \\ 3 & -1 & -3 \end{bmatrix}$ is involutory.

32. Show that if $A = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 4 & 3 \\ 1 & -3 & -3 \\ -1 & 4 & 4 \end{bmatrix}$ then $A^2 = I$.

33. Show that if $A = \begin{bmatrix} -1 & 1 & -1 \\ 3 & -3 & 3 \\ 5 & -5 & 5 \end{bmatrix}$ then $A^2 = A$.

34. Prove that if $A = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$ then $A^4 = 0$, but $A^3 \neq 0$.

35. Solve the following systems of linear equations with the help of matrices :

(i) $\left.\begin{aligned} x + y &= 5 \\ 2x + 3y &= 13 \end{aligned}\right\}$ (ii) $\left.\begin{aligned} x + y + z &= 6 \\ x - y + z &= 2 \\ 2x + y - z &= 1 \end{aligned}\right\}$

[D. U. P. 1977]

CamScanner

(iii) $\left.\begin{aligned} 3x + 2y - z &= 20 \\ 2x + 3y - 3z &= 7 \\ x - y + 6z &= 41 \end{aligned}\right\}$ **[C. U. P. 1977]**

(iv) $\left.\begin{aligned} 3x - y + z &= -2 \\ x + 5y + 2z &= 6 \\ 2x + 3y + z &= 0 \end{aligned}\right\}$ (v) $\left.\begin{aligned} x + 2y + z &= 2 \\ 2x - y + 2z &= -1 \\ 3x - 4y - 3z &= -16 \end{aligned}\right\}$

Answers : (i) $x = 2; y = 3,$ (ii) $x = 1 = y = 2, z = 3.$

(iii) $x = 5, y = 6, z = 7,$ (iv) $x = -2, y = 0, z = 4,$

(v) $x = -2, y = 1, z = 2.$

36. Solve the following systems of linear equations with the help of matrices :

(i) $\left.\begin{aligned} 5x - 6y + 4z &= 15 \\ 7x + 4y - 3z &= 19 \\ 2x + y + 6z &= 46 \end{aligned}\right\}$ **[D.U. P. 1979, J. U. H. 1980]**

Answer : $x = 3, y = 4, z = 6.$

(ii) $\left.\begin{aligned} 2x - 3y + 4z &= 1 \\ 3x + 4y - 5z &= 10 \\ 5x - 7y + 2z &= 3 \end{aligned}\right\}$ **[D. U. P. 1966.J. U. H. 1978]**

Answer : $x = 2, y = 1, z = 0,$

(iii) $\left.\begin{aligned} x + y + z &= 9 \\ 2x + 5y + 7z &= 52 \\ 2x + y - z &= 0 \end{aligned}\right\}$ **[C. U. P. 1984]**

Answer : $x = 1, y = 3, z = 5.$

(iv) $\left.\begin{aligned} x + 2y - z &= -1 \\ 3x + 8y + 2z &= 28 \\ 4x + 9y - z &= 14 \end{aligned}\right\}$ **[D: U. H. 1976]**

Answer : $x = -26, y = 13, z = 1.$

(v) $\left.\begin{aligned} x_1 + 3x_2 + 2x_3 &= 5 \\ 2x_1 + x_2 + 3x_3 &= 1 \\ 3x_1 + 2x_2 + x_3 &= 4 \end{aligned}\right\}$ **[D. U. H. 1978]**

Answer : $x_1 = \frac{2}{9}, x_2 = \frac{17}{9}, x_3 = -\frac{4}{9}.$

CamScanner

(vi) $\left.\begin{aligned} x + y + z &= 1 \\ 2x + 5y + 5z &= 2 \\ 4x + 9y + 12z &= 3 \end{aligned}\right\}$ [D. U. P. 1975]

Answer : $x = 1, y = \frac{1}{3}, z = -\frac{1}{3}$.

(vii) $\left.\begin{aligned} 2x - y - z &= 6 \\ x + 3y + 2z &= 1 \\ 3x - y - 5z &= 1 \end{aligned}\right\}$ [D. U. P. 1985]

Answer : $x = 3, y = -2, z = 2$.

(viii) $\left.\begin{aligned} x + y + z &= 3 \\ x + 2y + 2z &= 4 \\ x + 4y + 9z &= 6 \end{aligned}\right\}$ [D. U. H. 1983]

Answer : $x = 2, y = 1, z = 0$.

(ix) $\left.\begin{aligned} 2x + y + z &= 3 \\ 3x - 2y + 2z &= 9 \\ 4x + 3y - z &= -1 \end{aligned}\right\}$

Answer : $x = 1, y = -1, z = 2$.

(x) $\left.\begin{aligned} x + 2y + 3z + 4 &= 0 \\ 2x + 4y + 5z + 7 &= 0 \\ 3x + 5y + 6z + 10 &= 0 \end{aligned}\right\}$ [D. U. P. 1986]

Answer : $x = -3, y = 1, z = -1$.

37. Solve the following systems of linear equations by using row equivalent canonical matrix (by elementary row transformations) :

(i) $\left.\begin{aligned} 2x - y + z &= 1 \\ x + 4y - 3z &= -2 \\ 3x + 2y - z &= 0 \end{aligned}\right\}$ (ii) $\left.\begin{aligned} x + 2y + z &= 2 \\ 3x + y - 2z &= 1 \\ 4x - 3y - z &= 3 \\ 2x + 4y + 2z &= 4 \end{aligned}\right\}$

(iii) $\left.\begin{aligned} x + 2y + 3z + t &= 3 \\ x + y + z - t &= 5 \\ x + y - z + t &= -4 \\ x - y + z + t &= 2 \end{aligned}\right\}$

Answers : (i) $x = 0, y = 1, z = 2$, (ii) $x = 1, y = 0, z = 1$,

(iii) $x = 1, y = -1, z = 2, t = -2$.

CamScanner

(iv) $$\left.\begin{aligned} x + y + z + t &= 5 \\ 2x + y + 3z - t &= 14 \\ 3x + 3y - 2z + 2t &= 1 \\ 4x - 2y + z - 3t &= 6 \end{aligned}\right\}$$

Answer : $x = 1, y = 2, z = 3, t = -1.$

38. Find the inverse of $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -1 & 2 & 1 \\ 3 & 0 & 2 & 2 \\ 2 & 1 & -1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$ **[C. U. P. 1976]**

Answer : $A^{-1} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 & -2 \\ -2 & 1 & -1 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 & -1 & 0 \\ 1 & -2 & 1 & 3 \end{bmatrix}$

39. Find the inverse of the matrix $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 2 & 3 & 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 2 & 2 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & -2 & 0 & 2 & -2 \end{bmatrix}$

by using only the elementary row operations (row equivalent canonical matrix).

Answer :

$$A^{-1} = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & -4 & 5 & -3 & -\frac{1}{2} \\ -1 & 3 & -3 & 1 & \frac{1}{2} \\ -2 & 2 & -3 & 4 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & -1 & 0 & \frac{1}{2} \\ 1 & -2 & 2 & -1 & \frac{1}{2} \end{bmatrix}$$

40. If A and B are two symmetric matrices of the same order, then show that a necessary and sufficient condition for the matrix AB to be symmetric is that AB = BA.

41. Show that every non-singular idempotent matrix is an identity matrix.

42. If A is an idempotent matrix and A + B = I, then prove that B is an idempotent matrix and AB = BA = 0.

43. If A and B are n-rowed unitary matrices, then prove that BA is also unitary matrix.

CHAPTER FOUR

RANK OF A MATRIX

4.1 Necessary definitions applied in Rank

Echelon Matrix

An **echelon matrix** is a matrix which have the property that if in any of its rows the first element distinct from zero is in the kth position, then in all the following rows there are zeros in the first k positions. or, equivalently

A matrix $A = [a_{ij}]$ is an **echelon matrix** if the number of zeros preceding the first non-zero entry of a row increases row by row until only zero rows remain. or, equivalently

A matrix is said to be in **echelon form** if it satisfies the following two properties :

(i) The first k rows are non-zero; the other rows are zero.

(ii) The first non-zero element in each non-zero row is 1 and it appears in a column to the right of the first non-zero element of any preceding row. A matrix which is in echelon form and the first non-zero element in each non-zero row is the only non-zero element in its column is said to be in **reduced echelon form.**

Examples of echelon matrices and matrices of reduced echelon form are given below :

(i) $\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 3 & -2 \\ 0 & 0 & -13 & 11 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 35 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$ (ii) $\begin{bmatrix} 2 & 1 & 3 & 2 & 5 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 3 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 2 & 7 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$

(Echelon matrix) (Echelon matrix)

(iii) $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 5 & 0 & 2 \\ 0 & 1 & 2 & 0 & 4 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 7 \end{bmatrix}$ (iv) $\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 & * & 0 & * & * & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & * & 0 & * & * & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & * & * & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$

(Reduced echelon form) (Reduced echelon form)

where each * denotes some scalar.

Canonical Matrix

A canonical matrix is one in which all terms not of the principal diagonal are zero, all terms on the principle diagonal are zero or one, and all ones precedes all zeros.

For instance $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$ is a canonical matrix.

Elementary Transformation (or operation)

An **elementary transformation** of a matrix is any one of the following operations :

(i) The multiplication of each element of a row or a column by some non-zero constant,

(ii) The interchange of two rows or two columns,

(iii) The addition of any multiple of the elements of one row or one column to the corresponding elements of another row or column respectively.

Equivalent Matrix

Two matrices A and B are called **equivalent** and is written as $A \sim B$ if one can be obtained from the other by means of a finite number of elementary transformations.

If a matrix A is reduced to B by the use of elementary row transformations alone; then B is said to be **row equivalent** to A and conversely.

4.2 Trace of a matrix and Properties of trace

Definition. Let A be a square matrix of order n

$$\text{say } A = [a_{ij}] = \begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & \dots & a_{1n} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & \dots & a_{2n} \\ \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots \\ a_{n1} & a_{n2} & \dots & a_{nn} \end{bmatrix}$$

Then the sum of the diagonal elements of A is called the **trace** of A and is written as $tr(A) = a_{11} + a_{22} + \dots + a_{nn} = \sum_{i=1}^{n} a_{ii}$

Properties of trace :

(1) If $A = [a_{ij}]_{n \times n}$ and λ is a scalar (real number) then $tr(\lambda A) = \lambda\, tr(A)$

Proof : $tr(\lambda A) = \sum_{i=1}^{n} \lambda a_{ii} = \lambda \sum_{i=1}^{n} a_{ii} = \lambda\, tr(A)$.

(2) Let A and B be n ×n matrices. Then

$tr(\alpha A + \beta B) = \alpha tr(A) + \alpha tr(B)$ where α and β are scalars.

Proof : $\alpha tr(A) = \alpha \sum_{i=1}^{n} a_{ii} = \sum_{i=1}^{n} \alpha a_{ii}$

$$\beta tr(B) = \beta \sum_{i=1}^{n} b_{ii} = \sum_{i=1}^{n} \beta b_{ii}$$

Now since multiplying a matrix by a scalar number is equivalent to multiplying every element of the matrix by that number, we have

$$\alpha tr(A) + \beta\, tr(B) = \sum_{i=1}^{n} \alpha a_{ii} + \sum_{i=1}^{n} \beta b_{ii}$$

$$= \sum_{i=1}^{n} (\alpha a_{ii} + \beta b_{ii}) = tr(\alpha A + \beta B).$$

For the special case where $\alpha = \beta = 1$, we have

$tr(A + B) = tr(A) + tr(B)$.

Similarly, we have $tr(\alpha A - \beta B) = \alpha tr(A) - \beta tr(B)$

(3) If A and B are matrices such that AB and BA co-exist then $tr(AB) = tr(BA)$.

Proof : Let $A = [a_{ij}]_{m\times n}$ and $B = (b_{ij})_{n\times m}$

such that AB and BA co-exist

L. H. S $= tr(AB) = tr\{[a_{ij}]_{m\times n} [b_{ij}]_{n\times m}\}$

$$= tr\{\sum_{k=1}^{n} [a_{ik}\, b_{kj}]_{m\times m}\}$$

$$= tr\,[c_{ij}]_{m\times m} \text{ where } c_{ij} = \sum_{k=1}^{n} a_{ik}\, b_{kj}$$

$$= \sum_{i=1}^{m} c_{ii} = \sum_{i=1}^{m} [\sum_{k=1}^{n} a_{ik}\, b_{ki}]$$

$$= \sum_{i=1}^{m} [a_{i1} b_{1i} + a_{i2} b_{2i} + \dots + a_{in} b_{ni}]$$

R. H. S = tr (BA) = tr $[b_{ij}]_{n\times m} [a_{ij}]_{m\times n}$

$$= \text{tr} \{\sum_{k=1}^{m} [b_{ik} a_{kj}]_{n\times n}\}$$

$$= \text{tr} [d_{ij}]_{n\times n} \text{ where } d_{ij} = \sum_{k=1}^{m} b_{ik} a_{kj}$$

$$= \sum_{i=1}^{n} d_{ii} = \sum_{i=1}^{n} [\sum_{k=1}^{m} b_{ik} a_{ki}]$$

$$= \sum_{i=1}^{n} [b_{i1} a_{1i} + b_{i2} a_{2i} + \dots + b_{im} a_{mi}]$$

$$= b_{11} a_{11} + b_{21} a_{12} + \dots + b_{n1} a_{1n}$$
$$+ b_{12} a_{21} + b_{22} a_{22} + \dots + b_{n2} a_{2n}$$
$$+ \dots \quad \dots \quad \dots \quad \dots$$
$$+ b_{1m} a_{m1} + b_{2m} a_{m2} + \dots + b_{nm} a_{mn}$$
$$= b_{11} a_{11} + b_{12} a_{21} + \dots + b_{1m} a_{m1}$$
$$+ b_{21} a_{12} + b_{22} a_{22} + \dots + b_{2m} a_{m2}$$
$$+ \dots \quad \dots \quad \dots \quad \dots$$
$$+ b_{n1} a_{1n} + b_{n2} a_{2n} + \dots + b_{nm} a_{mn}$$
$$= a_{11} b_{11} + a_{21} b_{12} + \dots + a_{m1} b_{1m}$$
$$+ a_{12} b_{21} + a_{22} b_{22} + \dots + a_{m2} b_{2m}$$
$$+ \dots \quad \dots \quad \dots \quad \dots$$
$$+ a_{1n} b_{n1} + a_{2n} b_{n2} + \dots + a_{mn} b_{nm}$$

$$= \sum_{i=1}^{m} [a_{i1} b_{1i} + a_{i2} b_{2i} + \dots + a_{in} b_{ni}]$$

$$= \sum_{i=1}^{n} [\sum_{k=1}^{n} a_{ik} b_{ki}] = \text{L. H. S.}$$

Hence tr (AB) = tr (BA).

Especially, when $B = A^T$ (i. e A is a symmatric matrix of order n) then the trace of the Grammian matrix is given by

$$tr(AA^T) = tr(A^TA) = \sum_{j=1}^{n} \sum_{i=1}^{n} a_{ij}^2 > 0.$$

More generally, when A is of order $n \times 1$, we have.

$$tr(A^TA) = \sum_{j=1}^{1} \sum_{i=1}^{n} a_{ij}^2$$

$$= \sum_{i=1}^{n} \sum_{j=1}^{1} a_{ij}^2 = tr(AA^T)$$

Evidently $tr(A^TA) = tr(AA^T) = 0$ if and only if $A = 0$.

Also, Since transposing a square matrix leaves diagonal elements unchanged, we have $tr(A) = tr(A^T)$.

In general one can easily show that

tr (ABC) = tr(BCA) = tr (CAB).

(4) Traces of similar matrices are equal i. e, if A and B are two similar matrices, then tr (A) = tr(B)

Proof : let $B = P^{-1} AP$ where P is a non-singular matrix.

$tr(B) = tr(P^{-1} AP) = tr(P^{-1} (AP))$ since $tr(AB) = tr(BA)$

$= tr((AP) P^{-1}) = tr(A(PP^{-1})) = tr(AI) = tr(A)$ Since $PP^{-1} = I$

Hence tr (B) = tr(A).

(5) If C is an orthogonal matrix, then $tr(C^TAC) = tr(A)$

Proof : $tr(C^T AC) = tr(C^T (AC)) = tr((AC) C^T)$

$= tr(A(CC^T)) = tr(AI) = tr(A)$

Since tr (AB) = tr (BA) and $CC^T = I$, where C is orthogonal.

(6) If A is symmetric matrix and B is a skew-symmetric matrix, then tr (AB) = 0.

Proof : $\text{tr}(AB) = \sum_i (AB)_{ii} = \sum_i \sum_j a_{ij} b_{ji}$

$= \sum_i \sum_j b_{ji} a_{ij} = -\sum_i \sum_j b_{ij} a_{ij}$ since $b_{ji} = -b_{ij}$

$= -\sum_i \sum_j b_{ij} a_{ji}$ since $a_{ij} = a_{ji}$

$= -\sum_i (BA)_{ii} = -\text{tr}(BA) = -\text{tr}(AB)$

Since $\text{tr}(AB) = \text{tr}(BA)$

$\therefore 2\text{tr}(AB) = 0$ or, $\text{tr}(AB) = 0$ since $2 \neq 0$.

4.3 Definition of rank of a matrix

Once of the most important characteristics of a matrix is its rank. The rank of a matrix can be defined in several equivalent ways. We use the following definitions :

(i) Let A be an arbitrary $m \times n$ matrix over a field F. The **rank** of the matrix A is the largest value of r for which there exists an $r \times r$ submatrix of A with non-vanishing determinant.

or, equivalently

(ii) A matrix A is said to have **rank** r if it contains at least one r-rowed square submatrix with a non-zero determinant. whereas the determinant of any square submatrix having (r+1) or more rows, possibly contained in A, is zero.

or, equivalently

(iii) A non-zero matrix A is said to have **rank** if at least one of its r-square minors is different from zero while every (r + 1) –square minor, if any, is zero.

(iv) The **rank** of a matrix A is the maximum number of linearly independent rows or columns in the matrix,

or, equivalently

(v) Let A be an $m \times n$ matrix and let A_R be the row echelon form of A. Then the **rank r** of the matrix A is the number of non-zero rows of A_R.

The rank of a matrix A is denoted by rank (A) or $\rho(A)$.

The rank of a null matrix (zero matrix) is zero and the rank of a matrix of order $m \times n$ can not be greater than m or n.

An n-rowed square matrix A has rank $r<n$ if and only if $|A| = 0$. In this case A is called a **singular matrix.** The matrix A has rank $r = n$ if and only if $|A| \neq 0$ and is then called a **non-singular matrix.**

The rank of a matrix can be determined by the following processes :

(i) First Process

Let A be an $m \times n$ ordered matrix. When $m = n$. evaluate the value of the determinant of the matrix; if $|A| \neq 0$, the rank of the matrix is n. But if $|A| = 0$, we have to find out the n^2 minors of the matrix A. When the value of any of the minors is non-zero, the rank of the matrix is $(n-1)$. If every $(n-1) \times (n-1)$ ordered minors is zero, to find the rank of the matrix A, we have to proceed as before until we get the non-singular square submatrix whose order is the rank of the given matrix.

Again when $m<n$. the rank of the matrix can not be greater than m and it can be determined taking the largest square submatrices of order m and evaluating the determinants of them. If the value of any determinant of them is non-zero, the rank of the matrix is m. But when the value of every determinant is zero, we will find the values of the determinants of all square submatrices of order $(m-1)$. If the value of any determinant is non-zero, the rank of the matrix is $(m-1)$ and if the value of every determinant is zero, we have to continue the process until we get a non-singular square submatrix whose order is the rank of the given matrix.

Second Process

Reduce the given matrix A to echelon form using elementary row operations (transformations). Since the non-zero rows of a matrix in echelon form are linearly independent, the number of non-zero rows of the echelon matrix is the rank of the given matrix.

CamScanner

It is to be noted that the rank of a matrix is unaltered by the elementary row transformations and equivalent matrices have the same order and the same rank.

Theorm 4.1 The rank of the transpose of a matrix is the same as that of the original matrix.

Proof : Let A be the matrix and rank (A) = r. Let R be an r-rowed square submatrix of A with det R ≠ 0. Clearly R^T is a submatrix of A^T. Now Since the value of the determinant is not altered if its rows are written as columns in the same order. det R^T = det R. Thus rank $(A^T) \geq r$. On the other hand, if A contains (r + 1)-rowed square submatrix S, then, by the definition of rank, det S = 0. Since S corresponds to S^T in A^T and det S^T = 0. It follows that A^T can not contain an (r + 1)-rowed square submatrix with a non-zero determinant. Consequently rank $(A^T) \leq r$. Altogether, rank (A^T) = r and the proof is complete.

Theorem 4.2 Let A be an n-square matrix. Then A is invertible if and only if rank (A) = n.

Proof : The rows of the n-square identity matrix I_n are linearly independent, since I_n is in echelon form; hence rank (I_n) = n. Now if A is invertible, then A is row equlvalent to I_n hence rank (A) = n. But if A is not invertible then A is row equivalent to a matrix with a zero row; hence rank (A) < n. That is; A is invertible if and only if rank (A) = n.

Definition : The maximum number of linearly independent rows of matrix A is called the **row rank** of A and the maximum number of linearly independent columns of a matrix A is called the **column rank** of A.

Theorem 4.3 The row and column ranks of a matrix are equal.

Proof : Let a be an arbitrary m ×n matrix.

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & \cdots & a_{1n} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & \cdots & a_{2n} \\ \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots \\ a_{m1} & a_{m2} & \cdots & a_{mn} \end{bmatrix},$$

Let $R_1, R_2, R_3, \ldots, R_m$ denote its rows.

$R_1 = (a_{11}, a_{12}, \ldots, a_{1n}), \ldots, R_m = (a_{m1}, a_{m2}, \ldots, a_{mn})$

Suppose the row rank is r and the following r vectors form a basis for the row space :

$$v_1 = (b_{11}, b_{12}, \ldots, b_{1n}), v_2 = (b_{21}, b_{22}, \ldots, b_{2n}),$$
$$\ldots, v_r = (b_{r1}, b_{r2}, \ldots, b_{rn})$$

Then each of the row vectors is a linear combination of the v_i, $i = 1, 2, \ldots, r$.

$$R_1 = \alpha_{11}v_1 + \alpha_{12}v_2 + \ldots + \alpha_{1r}v_r$$
$$R_2 = \alpha_{21}v_1 + \alpha_{22}v_2 + \ldots, + \alpha_{2r}v_r$$
$$\ldots \quad \ldots \quad \ldots \quad \ldots \quad \ldots$$
$$R_m = \alpha_{m1}v_1 + \alpha_{m2}v_2 + \ldots + \alpha_{mr}v_r$$

where α_{ij} are scalars, Setting the i th components of each of the above vector equations equal to each other, we obtain the following system of equations, each valid for $i = 1, 2, \ldots, n$.

$$a_{1i} = \alpha_{11}b_{1i} + \alpha_{12}b_{2i} + \ldots + \alpha_{1r}b_{ri}$$
$$a_{2i} = \alpha_{21}b_{1i} + \alpha_{22}b_{2i} + \ldots + \alpha_{2r}b_{ri}$$
$$\ldots \quad \ldots \quad \ldots \quad \ldots$$
$$a_{mi} = \alpha_{m1}b_{1i} + \alpha_{m2}b_{2i} + \ldots + \alpha_{mr}b_{ri}$$

Thus for $i = 1, 2, \ldots, n$ we have

$$\begin{bmatrix} a_{1i} \\ a_{2i} \\ \ldots \\ a_{mi} \end{bmatrix} = b_{1i}\begin{bmatrix} \alpha_{11} \\ \alpha_{21} \\ \ldots \\ \alpha_{m1} \end{bmatrix} + b_{2i}\begin{bmatrix} \alpha_{12} \\ \alpha_{22} \\ \ldots \\ \alpha_{m2} \end{bmatrix} + \ldots + b_{ri}\begin{bmatrix} \alpha_{1r} \\ \alpha_{2r} \\ \ldots \\ \alpha_{mr} \end{bmatrix}$$

In other words, each of the columns of A is linear combination of the r vectors.

$$\begin{bmatrix} \alpha_{11} \\ \alpha_{21} \\ \ldots \\ \alpha_{m1} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \alpha_{12} \\ \alpha_{22} \\ \ldots \\ \alpha_{m2} \end{bmatrix} \ldots, \begin{bmatrix} \alpha_{1r} \\ \alpha_{2r} \\ \ldots \\ \alpha_{mr} \end{bmatrix}$$

Linear Algebra-11

CamScanner

Thus the column space of the matrix A has dimension at most r, i. e. column rank $\leq r$. Similarly (considering the transpose matrix A^T) we obtain row rank $\leq$ column rank. Thus the row rank and the column rank of the matrix A are equal.

4.4 Reduction of a matrix to the normal form.

Theorem 4.4 Every non-zero matrix of rank r can be reduced to the normal form $\begin{bmatrix} I_r & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$ by a finite chain of elementary transformations, where I_r is an r-rowed unit matrix.

Proof : Let A be a given matrix of rank r.

Since $A \neq 0$, it has at least one non-zero element.

Let $a_{ij} = k \neq 0$.

By interchanging the i th row with the first row and the j th column with the first column, we obtain an equivalent matrix B such that $b_{11} = k \neq 0$. By elementary transformation $R_1\left(\frac{1}{k}\right)$ on B we obtain an equivalent matrix C such that $C_{11} = 1$.

Subtracting from the elements of the j th column of C, the products of the corresponding elements of the first column by c_{1j}, we get a matrix D whose all the elements in the first row except the first element are zero.

Again subtracting from the elements of i th row of D, the products of the corresponding elements of the first row by d_{i1} we obtain an equivalent matrix E such that all the elements in the first row and first column are zero except the first element which is unity. thus E is of the form $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & A_1 \end{bmatrix}$

Now if $A_1 \neq 0$, we can deal with it as we did with A, without affecting the first row and the first column.

Thus proceeding in this way, we shall obtain a diagonal matrix of the given form. Since the elementary transformations do not alter the rank of the matrix, the finally obtained diagonal matrix, whose rank is r, must have r and only r non-zero elements. Hence the theorem is proved.

Theorem 4.5 Let A be a matrix of order m xn and the rank of A is r. Then there exist two non-singular square matrices P of order m xm and Q of order n xn such that

$$PAQ = \begin{bmatrix} I_{r\times r} & O_{r\times n-r} \\ O_{m-r\times r} & O_{m-r\times n-r} \end{bmatrix}$$

where $I_{r\times r}$ is the identity matrix of order r.

Proof : Since A is a non-singular matrix of rank r, by a chain of elementary transformations it can be reduced to the normal form $\begin{bmatrix} I_r & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$ $\therefore A \sim \begin{bmatrix} I_r & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$.

Now every elementary row (column) transformation on a matrix can be affected by pre-multiplication (post multiplication) with the corresponding elementary matrix of suitable order.

Let P_i (i = 1, 2, 3, ..., s) denote the elementary matrix corresponding to the elementary row-transformations and Q_j (j = 1, 2, 3, ..., t) denote the elementary matrices corresponding to the elementary column transformations where P_1 (Q_1) is the first elementary matrix corresponding to the first elementary row (column) transformation.

Then since $A \sim \begin{bmatrix} I_r & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$, we can write

$$P_s, \ldots, P_2P_1 \; AQ_1Q_2, \ldots, Q_t = \begin{bmatrix} I_r & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

or, $PAQ = \begin{bmatrix} I_r & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$ where

$P = P_s P_{s-1} \ldots P_2P_1$ and $Q = Q_1 Q_2 \ldots Q_t$.

Since every elementary matrix is non-singular, P and Q as defined above being the product of non-singular matrices are also non-singular.

Thus we obtain $PAQ = \begin{bmatrix} I_r & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$.

Hence the theorem is proved.

Definition : Two matrices A and B are said to be **equivalent** if there exist non-singular matrices P and Q such that PAQ = B.

Theorem 4.6 If A is an m×n matrix of rank r then there exists a non-singular matrix P of order m such that $PA = \begin{bmatrix} B \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}$ where B is an r ×n matrix of rank r and 0 is the null matrix of order (m—r) × n.

Proof : Since A is an m×n matrix with ρ(A) = r. there exist non-singular matrices P and Q of orders m and n respectively such that $PAQ = \begin{bmatrix} I_r & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$ (1)

Further, since every non-singular matrix can be expressed as the product of elementary matrices, let $Q = Q_1, Q_2 \ldots Q_t$ where Q_i, (i = 1, 2, ..., t) are elementary matrices. Moreover, since every elementary matrix is non-singular, Q is also non-singular and hence has an inverse given by

$$Q^{-1} = (Q_1 Q_2 \ldots Q_t)^{-1} = Q_t^{-1} Q_{t-1}^{-1} \ldots Q_2^{-1} \ldots Q_1^{-1} \quad (2)$$

Post multiplying (1) by Q^{-1} and using (2) we get

$$PA = \begin{bmatrix} I_r & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} Q_t^{-1} Q_{t-1}^{-1} \ldots Q_2^{-1} Q_1^{-1} \quad (3)$$

Each Q_i^{-1} (i = 1, 2, ..., t) being the inverse of an elementary matrix is also an elementary matrix. Since every elementary column transformation of a matrix is equivalent to post-multiplication with the corresponding elementary matrix, the matrix on the right hand side of (3) is the matrix obtained from $\begin{bmatrix} I_r & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$ (*) by subjecting it to column transformation. But the (*) has the last (m–r) rows consisting of zeros only and since no column transformation can affect the last (m–r) zero

rows, we shall finally obtain on the right hand side of (3) the matrix of the form $\begin{bmatrix} B \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}$ where B is r×n matrix and 0 is (m – r) × n matrix. Thus from (3) we have $PA = \begin{bmatrix} B \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}$. Hence the theorem is proved.

Corollary : If A is an m ×n matrix of rank r, then there exists non-singular matrix Q of order n such that AQ = [C O] where C is an m ×r matrix of rank r and O is the null matrix of order m × (n – r).

Theorem 4.7 The rank of the product of two matrices can not exceed the rank of either matrix.

i. e. $\rho(AB) \le \rho(A)$ and $\rho(AB) \le \rho(B)$.

Proof : Let A be an m ×n matrix such that $\rho(A) = r$. Then there exists two non-singular matrices P and Q such that

$$PAQ = \begin{bmatrix} I_r & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \Rightarrow A = P^{-1}\begin{bmatrix} I_r & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} Q^{-1}$$

Now if B is an n ×p matrix, then

$$AB = p^{-1}\begin{bmatrix} I_r & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} Q^{-1}B$$

Now since P is a non-singular matrix, P^{-1} will be also a non-singular matrix. Then the rank of AB will be equal to the rank of $\begin{bmatrix} I_r & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}(Q^{-1}B)$. But the components of the last m–r rows of the matrix $\begin{bmatrix} I_r & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}(Q^{-1}B)$ will be all zero. Therefore, the rank of AB can not be greater than r, that is, $\rho(AB) \le r$. which implies that $\rho(AB) \le \rho(A)$.

Similarly, by the same procedure, we can show that $\rho(AB) \le \rho(B)$.

Remarks 1. The above theorem can also be expressed as $\rho(AB) \le \min\{\rho(A), \rho(B)\}$.

Corollary 1. If A, B and C are three matrices conformable for multiplication, then $\rho(ABC) \le \min\{\rho(A), \rho(B), \rho(C)\}$.

Theorem 4.8 If A is an idempotent matrix (i. e. $A^2 = A$) then rank (A) = trace of A i. e. $\rho(A) = tr(A)$.

Proof : If $\rho(A) = r$, then there exists non-singular matrices P and Q such that $PAQ = \begin{bmatrix} I_r & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$ (1)

Multiplying on the left of (1) by P^{-1} and on the right of (1) by Q^{-1}, we get

$$A = P^{-1}\begin{bmatrix} I_r & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} Q^{-1}$$

$$\therefore \quad A^2 = AA = P^{-1}\begin{bmatrix} I_r & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} Q^{-1}P^{-1}\begin{bmatrix} I_r & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} Q^{-1}$$

$$= P^{-1}\begin{bmatrix} I_r & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} Q^{-1} = A \text{ since } A^2 = A.$$

$$\text{or, } P^{-1}\begin{bmatrix} I_r & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} Q^{-1}P^{-1}\begin{bmatrix} I_r & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} Q^{-1} - P^{-1}\begin{bmatrix} I_r & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} Q^{-1} = 0$$

$$\text{or, } P^{-1}\begin{bmatrix} I_r & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}\left\{Q^{-1}P^{-1}\begin{bmatrix} I_r & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} - I_r\right\} Q^{-1} = 0$$ which implies $Q^{-1}P^{-1} = I \Rightarrow Q^{-1} = P$. Therefore, the normal form of an idempotent matrix A is given by $A = P^{-1}\begin{bmatrix} I_r & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} P$ where $\rho(A) = r$.

$$\text{Consider } tr(A) = tr\left[P^{-1}\begin{bmatrix} I_r & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} P\right]$$

$$= tr\left[PP^{-1}\begin{bmatrix} I_r & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}\right] \text{ Since } tr(AB) = tr(BA)$$

$$= tr\begin{bmatrix} I_r & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} = r = \rho(A).$$

Hence $\rho(A) = tr(A)$ if A is an idempotent matrix.

4.5 SYLVESTER'S LAW

Theorem 4.9 If A and B are square matrices of order n and $\rho(A) = r$, $\rho(B) = s$, then $\rho(AB) \geq r + s - n$

i. e $\rho(AB) \geq \rho(A) + \rho(B) - n$ where ρ denotes the rank of the matrix.

Proof : The equality holds when A and B are non-singular matrices. Since $\rho(A) = r$, there exists two non-singular matrices P and Q such that

$$PAQ = \begin{bmatrix} I_r & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \Rightarrow A = P^{-1}\begin{bmatrix} I_r & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} Q^{-1}$$

Let $C = P^{-1}\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 0 & I_{n-r} \end{bmatrix} Q^{-1}$, then we have

$$A + C = P^{-1}\begin{bmatrix} I_r & 0 \\ 0 & I_{n-r} \end{bmatrix} Q^{-1}$$

Now $\rho(A + C) = n$, $\rho(A) = r$ and $\rho(C) = n - r$.

Again since A + C is non-singular, we have

$\rho\{(A + C)B\} = \rho(B)$.

Therefore, $\rho(B) = \rho(AB + CB) \leq \rho(AB) + \rho(CB)$ (1)

[since for any two matrices $(A)_{m \times n}$ and $(B)_{m \times n}$

$\rho(A + B) \leq \rho(A) + \rho(B)$]

Also $\rho(CB) \leq \rho(C)$

[since for any two matrices $(A)_{m \times n}$ $B_{n \times r}$

we have $\rho(AB) \leq \min\{\rho(A), \rho(B)\}$]

Thus from (1), we get $\rho(B) \leq \rho(AB) + \rho(C) = \rho(AB) + n - r$

or, $\rho(B) \leq \rho(AB) + n - \rho(A)$

or, $\rho(AB) \geq \rho(A) + \rho(B) - n$ i. e $\rho(AB) \geq r + s - n$.

4.6 Condition for consistency of a system of linear equations

Consider the system of linear equations $Ax = b$, where A is an $m \times n$ matrix. Then the $m \times (n + 1)$ matrix $(A \mid b)$, obtained by adjoining the column vector b to the matrix A on the right, is called the **augmented matrix** of the system $Ax = b$.

Therem 4.10 The system of linear equations $Ax = b$ is **consistent** if and only if the rank of the augmented matrix $(A \mid b)$ is equal to the rank of the matrix A.

Proof : Let A be an $m \times n$ matrix and let rank $(A) = r$.

Then A has r linearly independent columns. Now we can take the first r columns $A^1, A^2, \ldots, A^r$ to be linearly independent. Then for each $j = r+1, r+2, \ldots, n$, A_j is a linear combination of $A^1, A^2, \ldots, A^r$. Now the augmented matrix $(A \mid b)$ has just one column, namely b, in addition to the n columns of A. Hence the maximum numbers of linearly independent columns in $(A \mid b)$ is either r or $r + 1$. Therefore, rank $(A \mid b)$ is either r or $r + 1$.

Suppose that rank $(A \mid b) = r$. Then the column vectors $A^1, A^2, \ldots, A^r$, b are linearly dependent.

Therefore, there exit scalars $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \ldots, \alpha_{r+1}$ (not all zero) such that $\alpha_1 A^1 + \alpha_2 A^2 + \ldots + \alpha_r A^r + \alpha_{r+1} b = 0$.

Now $\alpha_{r+1} \neq 0$, otherwise the column vectors $A^1, A^2, \ldots, A^r$ would be linearly dependent, contrary to our hypothesis.

$$\text{Hence } b = -\frac{\alpha_1}{\alpha_{r+1}} A^1 - \frac{\alpha_2}{\alpha_{r+1}} A^2 - \ldots - \frac{\alpha_r}{\alpha_{r+1}} A^r = A \begin{bmatrix} \beta_1 \\ \beta_2 \\ \vdots \\ \beta_r \\ 0 \\ \vdots \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\text{where } \beta_j = -\frac{\alpha_j}{\alpha_{r+1}} \quad j = 1, 2, \ldots, r$$

$$\text{Thus } x = \begin{bmatrix} \beta_1 \\ \beta_2 \\ \vdots \\ \beta_r \\ 0 \\ \vdots \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}$$ is a solution of the given system which is therefore consistent.

Conversely, suppose that the system $Ax = b$ is consistent and let $x = \begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ \vdots \\ x_n \end{bmatrix}$ be a solution.

Then $b = A \begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ \vdots \\ x_n \end{bmatrix} = x_1 A^1 + x_2 A^2 + \ldots + x_n A^n$

Now A^j, $j = r+1, r+2, \ldots, n$ is a linear combination of $A^1, A^2, \ldots, A^r$. Hence b is also a linear combination of $A^1, A^2, \ldots, A^r$. Therefore, $(r+1)$ column vectors $A^1, A^2, \ldots, A^r$, b are linearly dependent. Consequently, $(A|b)$ has only r linearly independent columns.

Thus rank $(A|b) = r$

Corollary : If A is an $m \times n$ matrix of rank m, the system $Ax = b$ is consistent.

WORKED OUT EXAMPLES.

Example 1. Find the rank of each of the following matrices :

(i) $\begin{bmatrix} 2 & 3 \\ 4 & 6 \end{bmatrix}$ (ii) $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 2 & 3 & 4 \\ 3 & 5 & 7 \end{bmatrix}$

Solution : (i) Let $A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 3 \\ 4 & 6 \end{bmatrix}$ Then

$$|A| = \begin{vmatrix} 2 & 3 \\ 4 & 6 \end{vmatrix} = 12 - 12 = 0.$$

So the rank of the matrix A is 1 (one) since $|A| = 0$, but not every element of A is zero. say $|2| \neq 0$

(ii) Let $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 2 & 3 & 4 \\ 3 & 5 & 7 \end{bmatrix}$ then

$$|A| = \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 2 & 3 & 4 \\ 3 & 5 & 7 \end{vmatrix}$$

$= 1(21 - 20) - 2(14 - 12) + 3(10 - 9)$
$= 1 - 4 + 3 = 0.$

So the rank of the matrix A is less than 3. Now let us take two-rowed minor of A, say.

$$\begin{vmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 2 & 3 \end{vmatrix} = 3 - 4 = -1 \neq 0.$$

Since $|A| = 0$, but $\begin{vmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 2 & 3 \end{vmatrix} \neq 0$,

therefore, the rank of the given matrix is 2.

Example 2. Find the rank of the matrix $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 2 & 4 & 6 \\ 3 & 6 & 9 \end{bmatrix}$

Solution : $|A| = \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 2 & 4 & 6 \\ 3 & 6 & 9 \end{vmatrix} = 2 \times 3 \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 1 & 2 & 3 \end{vmatrix}$

$= 6 \times 0 = 0$ (Since three rows are equal)

So the rank of the matrix A is less than 3. Now let us consider the two-rowed minors of A.

Say, $\begin{vmatrix} 4 & 6 \\ 6 & 9 \end{vmatrix} = 36 - 36 = 0$, $\begin{vmatrix} 2 & 3 \\ 6 & 9 \end{vmatrix} = 18 - 18 = 0$, $\begin{vmatrix} 2 & 3 \\ 4 & 6 \end{vmatrix} = 12 - 12 = 0$

$\begin{vmatrix} 2 & 6 \\ 3 & 9 \end{vmatrix} = 18 - 18 = 0$, $\begin{vmatrix} 1 & 3 \\ 3 & 9 \end{vmatrix} = 9 - 9 = 0$, $\begin{vmatrix} 1 & 3 \\ 2 & 6 \end{vmatrix} = 6 - 6 = 0$,

$\begin{vmatrix} 2 & 4 \\ 3 & 6 \end{vmatrix} = 12 - 12 = 0$, $\begin{vmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 3 & 6 \end{vmatrix} = 6 - 6 = 0$, $\begin{vmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 2 & 4 \end{vmatrix} = 4 - 4 = 0$.

Thus every two-rowed minor of A is zero. So the rank of A is less than 2. But $|4| = 4 \neq 0$. Hence the rank of A is 1 (one).

Example 3. Find the rank of the matrix

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 6 & 2 & 0 & 4 \\ -2 & -1 & 3 & 4 \\ -1 & -1 & 6 & 10 \end{bmatrix}$$ **[R. U. P. 1969]**

Solution : Since the given matrix A is of order 3×4, the rank of the given matrix A can not be greater than 3. Now we observe that the matrix A has the following largest square submatrices of order 3×3 :

$$A_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 6 & 2 & 0 \\ -2 & -1 & 3 \\ -1 & -1 & 6 \end{bmatrix}, \quad A_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 6 & 2 & 4 \\ -2 & -1 & 4 \\ -1 & -1 & 10 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$A_3 = \begin{bmatrix} 6 & 0 & 4 \\ -2 & 3 & 4 \\ -1 & 6 & 10 \end{bmatrix}, \quad A_4 = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 0 & 4 \\ -1 & 3 & 4 \\ -1 & 6 & 10 \end{bmatrix}$$

Now $|A_1| = \begin{bmatrix} 6 & 2 & 0 \\ -2 & -1 & 3 \\ -1 & -1 & 6 \end{bmatrix} = 6(-6+3) - 2(-12+3) + 0$
$= -18 + 18 = 0.$

$|A_2| = \begin{bmatrix} 6 & 2 & 4 \\ -2 & -1 & 4 \\ -1 & -1 & 10 \end{bmatrix} = 6(-10+4) - 2(-20+4) + 4(2-1)$
$= -36 + 32 + 4 = 0.$

$|A_3| = \begin{bmatrix} 6 & 0 & 4 \\ -2 & 3 & 4 \\ -1 & 6 & 10 \end{bmatrix} = 6(30-24) + 0 + 4(-12+3)$
$= 36 - 36 = 0.$

$|A_4| = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 0 & 4 \\ -1 & 3 & 4 \\ -1 & 6 & 10 \end{bmatrix} = 2(30-24) + 0 + 4(-6+3)$
$= 12 - 12 = 0.$

So the rank of the matrix A can not be 3. Let us consider the square submatrices of order 2×2. Then we can at once show that $\begin{vmatrix} 6 & 2 \\ -2 & -1 \end{vmatrix} = -6 + 4 = -2 \neq 0.$

Therefore, the rank of the given matrix is 2.

Example 4. Find the echelon form and the row reduced echelon form of the following matrix :

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 & 2 & 1 \\ 2 & 4 & 1 & -2 & 3 \\ 3 & 6 & 2 & -6 & 5 \end{bmatrix}$$ [R. U. S. 1989]

Solution : First let us reduce the matrix A to echelon form by the elementary row operations. We multiply 1st row by 2 and 3 and then subtract from 2nd & 3rd rows respectively.

$$\sim \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 & 2 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 3 & -6 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 5 & -12 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$$

We multiply 3rd row by 3.

$$\sim \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 & 2 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 3 & -6 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 15 & -36 & 6 \end{bmatrix}$$

We multiply 2nd row by 5 and then subtract from the 3rd row.

$$\sim \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 & 2 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 3 & -6 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & -6 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

This matrix is in row echelon form.

We subtract 3rd row from the 2nd row. Also we multiply 3rd row by $-\frac{1}{6}$.

$$\sim \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 & 2 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 3 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & -\frac{1}{6} \end{bmatrix}$$

We multiply 2nd row by $\frac{1}{3}$

$$\sim \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 & 2 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & -\frac{1}{6} \end{bmatrix}$$

We add 2nd row with the 1st row

$$\sim \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 0 & 2 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & -\frac{1}{6} \end{bmatrix}$$

We multiply 3rd row by 2 and then subtract from the 1st row.

$$\sim \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 0 & 0 & \frac{4}{3} \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & -\frac{1}{6} \end{bmatrix}$$

This matrix is in row reduced echelon form.

CamScanner

Example 5. Reduce the matrix A to the normal (or canonical form and hence obtain its rank where

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 0 & -1 \\ 3 & 4 & 1 & 2 \\ -2 & 3 & 2 & 5 \end{bmatrix}$$

Solution : We will apply both elementary column and row operations to the matrix A for reducing it to the normal form.

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 0 & -1 \\ 3 & 4 & 1 & 2 \\ -2 & 3 & 2 & 5 \end{bmatrix}$$

We replace C_2 and C_4 by $C_2 - 2C_1$ and $C_4 + C_1$ respectively

$$\sim \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 3 & -2 & 1 & 5 \\ -2 & 7 & 2 & 3 \end{bmatrix}$$

We replace C_2 and C_4 by $C_2 + 2C_3$ and $C_4 - 5C_3$ respectively.

$$\sim \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 3 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ -2 & 11 & 2 & -7 \end{bmatrix}$$

We replace C_1 by $C_1 + C_3$ and C_4 by $C_4 + \frac{7}{11} C_2$

$$\sim \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 4 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 11 & 2 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

We replace R_2 by $R_2 - 4R_1$.

$$\sim \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 11 & 2 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

We replace R_3 by $R_3 - 2R_2$.

$$\sim \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 11 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

CamScanner

We interchange C_2 and C_3.

$$\sim \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 11 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

We replace C_3 by $\frac{1}{11} C_3$.

$$\sim \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \sim [I_3 \;\; O] \text{ where } I_3 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \text{ and } O = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

Hence the rank of A is 3.

Example 6. Find the rank of the matrix

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & -1 & 3 & 4 \\ 0 & 3 & 4 & 1 \\ 2 & 3 & 7 & 5 \\ 2 & 5 & 11 & 6 \end{bmatrix}$$ by reducing it to the normal (or canonical) form.

Solution : We will apply both elementary row and column operations to the matrix A for reducing it to the normal form and will join successive matrices by the equivalence sign $\sim$.

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & -1 & 3 & 4 \\ 0 & 3 & 4 & 1 \\ 2 & 3 & 7 & 5 \\ 2 & 5 & 11 & 6 \end{bmatrix}$$

We replace R_3 and R_4 by $R_3 - R_1$ and $R_4 - R_3$ respectively.

$$\sim \begin{bmatrix} 2 & -1 & 3 & 4 \\ 0 & 3 & 4 & 1 \\ 0 & 4 & 4 & 1 \\ 0 & 2 & 4 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

We replace R_2 and R_3 by $R_2 - R_4$ and $R_3 - R_4$ respectively.

$$\sim \begin{bmatrix} 2 & -1 & 3 & 4 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 2 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 2 & 4 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

We replace C_1 by $\frac{1}{2}C_1$ and R_3 by $\frac{1}{2}R_3$.

$$\sim \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -1 & 3 & 4 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 2 & 4 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

We replace R_3 by $R_3 - R_2$.

$$\sim \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -1 & 3 & 4 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 2 & 4 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

We interchange R_3 and R_4.

$$\sim \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -1 & 3 & 4 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 2 & 4 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

We replace C_2, C_3 and C_4 by $C_2 + C_1$, $C_3 - 3C_1$ and $C_4 - 4C_1$ respectively.

$$\sim \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 2 & 4 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}.$$

We replace C_2 and C_3 by $C_2 - 2C_4$ and $C_3 - 4C_4$ respectively.

$$\sim \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

We interchange C_3 and C_4.

$$\sim \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \sim \begin{bmatrix} I_3 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}.$$ Hence the rank of A is 3.

Example 7. Determine the rank of the matrix A

where $A = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & -3 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 3 & 1 & 0 & 2 \\ 1 & 1 & -2 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$ **[D. U. S. 1987]**

Solution : Reduce the given matrix to echelon form by means of elementary row transformations and join successive matrices by the equivalence sign ~. Interchange first row and fourth row.

$$\sim \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & -2 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 3 & 1 & 0 & 2 \\ 0 & 1 & -3 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$$

We subtract first row from the second row and multiply the first row by 3 and then subtract from the third row.

$$\sim \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & -2 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 & 3 & 1 \\ 0 & -2 & 6 & 2 \\ 0 & 1 & -3 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$$

We multiply second row by 2 and then sutract from the third row. Also we add second row with the fourth row.

$$\sim \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & -2 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 & 3 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \sim \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & -2 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & -3 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

Second row is multiplied by −1.

This matrix is row equivalent to the given matrix A and is in the row echelon form. Since the echelon matrix has two non-zero rows, the rank of the given matrix A is 2.

Example 8. Determine the rank of the matrix

$$\begin{bmatrix} 2 & 3 & 5 & -3 & -2 \\ 3 & 4 & 3 & -1 & -3 \\ 5 & 6 & -1 & 3 & -5 \end{bmatrix}$$

Solution : Reduce the given matrix to row echelon form by means of elementary row transformations and join successive matrices by the equivalence sign ~. We subtract the first row from the second and interchange these rows.

$$\sim \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 3 & 5 & -3 & -2 \\ 1 & 1 & -2 & 2 & -1 \\ 5 & 6 & -1 & 3 & -5 \end{bmatrix} \sim \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & -2 & 2 & -1 \\ 2 & 3 & 5 & -3 & -2 \\ 5 & 6 & -1 & 3 & -5 \end{bmatrix}$$

We multiply the first row by 2 and by 5 and then subtract from the second and third rows respectively.

$$\sim \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & -2 & 2 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 9 & -7 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 9 & -7 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

We subtract the second row from the third row.

$$\sim \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & -2 & 2 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 9 & -7 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

This matrix is row equivalent to the given matrix and is in the row echelon form. Since the echelon matrix has two non-zero rows, the rank of the given matrix is 2.

Example 9. Find the rank of the matrix A

$$\text{where } A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 3 & 1 & -2 & -3 \\ 1 & 4 & 3 & -1 & -4 \\ 2 & 3 & -4 & -7 & -3 \\ 3 & 8 & 1 & -7 & -8 \end{bmatrix}$$ **[D. U. H. 1987]**

Solution : Reduce the given matrix to row echelon form by means of the elementary row transformations and join successive matrices by the equivalence sign ~. We subtract the first row from the second row and also multiply the first row by 2 and by 3 and then subtract from the third row and the fourth row respectively.

$$\sim \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 3 & 1 & -2 & -3 \\ 0 & 1 & 2 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & -3 & -6 & -3 & 3 \\ 0 & -1 & -2 & -1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

We multiply second row by 3 and add with third row. Also we add second row with the fourth row.

$$\sim \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 3 & 1 & -2 & -3 \\ 0 & 1 & 2 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

This matrix is row equivalent to the given matrix and is in the row echelon form. Since the echelon matrix has two non-zero rows; the rank of the given matrix is 2.

Example 10. Determine the rank of the matrix

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 2 & 0 & 4 & 0 & 4 \\ 0 & 2 & 4 & 4 & 0 & 2 \\ 1 & 1 & 6 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ -1 & 1 & -2 & 3 & 0 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$$

Solution : Reduce the given matrix to row echelon form by means of elementary row transformations and join successive matrices by the equivalence sign ~. Interchange first and third rows and also fourth and fifth rows.

$$\sim \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 6 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 2 & 4 & 4 & 0 & 2 \\ 2 & 2 & 0 & 4 & 0 & 4 \\ -1 & 1 & -2 & 3 & 0 & 2 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

We multiply first row by 2 and then subtract from the third row. Also we add first row with fourth row.

$$\sim \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 6 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 2 & 4 & 4 & 0 & 2 \\ 0 & 0 & -12 & 2 & 0 & 4 \\ 0 & 2 & 4 & 4 & 0 & 2 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

We subtract second row from the fourth row.

$$\sim \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 6 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 2 & 4 & 4 & 0 & 2 \\ 0 & 0 & -12 & 2 & 0 & 4 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

CamScanner

We now multiply second and third rows by $\frac{1}{2}$ and by $\left(-\frac{1}{12}\right)$ respectively.

$$\sim \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 6 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 2 & 2 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & -\frac{1}{6} & 0 & -\frac{1}{3} \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

This matrix is row equivalent to the given matrix and is in the row echelon form. Since the echelon matrix has three non-zero rows, the rank of the given matrix is 3.

Example 11. Prove that the following system of linear equations is inconsistent :

$$\left.\begin{aligned} 3x_1 + 4x_2 - x_3 + 2x_4 &= 1 \\ x_1 - 2x_2 + 3x_3 + x_4 &= 2 \\ 3x_1 + 14x_2 - 11x_3 + x_4 &= 3 \end{aligned}\right\}$$

Proof : Form the augmented matrix

$$(A \mid b) = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 4 & -1 & 2 & \vdots & 1 \\ 1 & -2 & 3 & 1 & \vdots & 2 \\ 3 & 14 & -11 & 1 & \vdots & 3 \end{bmatrix}$$

Reduce the augmented matrix to row echelon form by the elementary row operations and join successive matrices by the equivalence sign ~. Interchange first and second rows.

$$\sim \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -2 & 3 & 1 & \vdots & 2 \\ 3 & 4 & -1 & 2 & \vdots & 1 \\ 3 & 14 & -11 & 1 & \vdots & 3 \end{bmatrix}$$

We multiply first row by 3 and then subtract from the second and third rows.

$$\sim \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -2 & 3 & 1 & \vdots & 2 \\ 0 & 10 & -10 & -1 & \vdots & -5 \\ 0 & 20 & -20 & -2 & \vdots & -3 \end{bmatrix}$$

We multiply second row by 2 ..nd then subtract from the third row.

$$\sim \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -2 & 3 & 1 & \vdots & 2 \\ 0 & 10 & -10 & -1 & \vdots & -5 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & \vdots & 7 \end{bmatrix}$$

CamScanner

Thus the augmented matrix is reduced to row-echelon form. Here we observe that rank (A) = 2 and rank (A | b) = 3. Therefore, rank A ≠ rank (A | b). Hence the given system of linear equations is inconsistent.

Example 12. Solve the following system of linear equations :

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x_1 + 2x_2 + 3x_3 + 4x_4 + 5x_5 &= 1 \\ 2x_1 + 3x_2 + 4x_3 + 5x_4 + 6x_5 &= -1 \\ 3x_1 + 5x_2 + 6x_3 + 7x_4 + 4x_5 &= 2 \\ 4x_1 + 7x_2 + 10x_3 + 13x_4 + 16x_5 &= 1 \\ 5x_1 + 8x_2 + 9x_3 + 10x_4 + 3x_5 &= 3 \end{aligned}\right\}$$

Solution : Form the augmented matrix

$$(A|b) = \left[\begin{array}{ccccc|c} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 1 \\ 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 & -1 \\ 3 & 5 & 6 & 7 & 4 & 2 \\ 4 & 7 & 10 & 13 & 16 & 1 \\ 5 & 8 & 9 & 10 & 3 & 3 \end{array}\right]$$

Reduce the augmented matrix to row-echelon form by elementary row operations and join successive matrices by the equivalence sign '~'. We multiply first row by 2, 3, 4, and 5 and then subtract from the 2nd, 3rd, 4th and 5th rows respectively.

$$\sim \left[\begin{array}{ccccc|c} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 1 \\ 0 & -1 & -2 & -3 & -4 & -3 \\ 0 & -1 & -3 & -5 & -11 & -1 \\ 0 & -1 & -2 & -3 & -4 & -3 \\ 0 & -2 & -6 & -10 & -22 & -2 \end{array}\right]$$

We subtract 2nd row from the 4th row, and also we multiply 3rd row by 2 and then subtract from the 5th row.

$$\sim \left[\begin{array}{ccccc|c} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 1 \\ 0 & -1 & -2 & -3 & -4 & -3 \\ 0 & -1 & -3 & -5 & -11 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{array}\right]$$

We subtract 2nd row from the 3rd row.

$$\sim \left[\begin{array}{ccccc|c} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 1 \\ 0 & -1 & -2 & -3 & -4 & -3 \\ 0 & 0 & -1 & -2 & -7 & 2 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{array}\right]$$

We multiply 3rd row by 2 and then subtract from the 2nd row.

$$\sim \left[\begin{array}{ccccc|c} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 1 \\ 0 & -1 & 0 & 1 & 10 & -7 \\ 0 & 0 & -1 & -2 & -7 & 2 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{array}\right]$$

We multiply both 2nd and 3rd rows by (–1).

$$\sim \left[\begin{array}{ccccc|c} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & -1 & -10 & 7 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 2 & 7 & -2 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{array}\right]$$

We multiply 2nd row by 2 and then subtract from the 1st row.

$$\sim \left[\begin{array}{ccccc|c} 1 & 0 & 3 & 6 & 25 & -13 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & -1 & -10 & 7 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 2 & 7 & -2 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{array}\right]$$

We multiply 3rd row by 3 and then subtract from the 1st row.

$$\sim \left[\begin{array}{ccccc|c} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 4 & -7 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & -1 & -10 & 7 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 2 & 7 & -2 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{array}\right]$$

CamScanner

This matrix is in row-echelon form. Therefore,

rank (A) = rank (A|b) = 3. Hence the given system is consistent and transforms into the linear system.

$$\left.\begin{array}{rrrrrl} x_1 & & & + 4x_5 & = & -7 \\ & x_2 & & -x_4 & -10x_5 = & 7 \\ & & x_3 & +2x_4 & +7x_5 = & -2 \end{array}\right\}$$

This system is in echelon form and it has three equations in five unknowns. Therefore, the system has 5-3 = 2 free variables which are x_4 and x_5. Hence the system has infinite number of non-zero solutions.

Let x_4 = a and x_5 = b where a and b are arbitrary constants (real numbers).

Then $x_3 = -2 - 2a - 7b$

$x_2 = 7 + a + 10b$

$x_1 = -7 - 4b$

Thus the general solution is $x_1 = -7 - 4b$

$x_2 = 7 + a + 10b$

$x_3 = -2 - 2a - 7b$

$x_4 = a$

$x_5 = b$

where a and b are arbitrary constants.

4.7 Sweep out Method and its application

The method is explained and illustrated with the help of different worked out examples.

Example 13. Test the consistency and hence solve the following system of linear equations by using **sweep out method :**

$$\left.\begin{array}{l} x + y + z = 1 \\ x + 3y + 6z = 10 \\ x + 2y + 3z = 4 \\ x + 4y + 10z = 19 \end{array}\right\}$$

Solution :

x	y	z	
1	1	1	$1 \to R_1$
1	3	6	$10 \to R_2$
1	2	3	$4 \to R_3$
1	4	10	$19 \to R_4$
1	1	1	$1 \to R_5 = \frac{R_1}{1} \to$ 1st pivotal row
0	2	5	$9 \to R_6 = R_2 - R_5$
0	1	2	$3 \to R_7 = R_3 - R_5$
0	3	9	$18 \to R_8 = R_4 - R_5$
	1	2·5	$4\cdot5 \to R_9 = \frac{R_6}{2} \to$ 2nd pivotal row
	0	−0·5	$-1\cdot5 \to R_{10} = R_7 - R_9$
	0	1·5	$4\cdot5 \to R_{11} = R_8 - 3R_9$
		1	$3 \to R_{12} = \frac{R_{10}}{-0\cdot5} \to$ 3rd pivotal row
		0	$0 \to R_{13} = R_{11} - 1\cdot5 R_{12}$

Here the rank of the coefficient matrix A = 3 and the rank of the augmented matrix (A|B) = 3.

Hence the system of linear equations is consistent.

From the 1st pivotal row $x + y + z = 1$

" " 2nd " " $y + 2\cdot5z = 4\cdot5$

" " 3rd " " $z = 3$

Putting z = 3 in the second pivotal row, we have

$y + 7\cdot5 = 4\cdot5$ or, $y = -3$.

Also putting z = 3 and y = − 3 in the equation $x + y + z = 1$ for the 1st pivotal row, we get $x = 1$.

Hence $x = 1$, $y = -3$, $z = 3$ is the unique solution of the given system of linear equations.

Example 14. Find rank of the matrix

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & -3 & -2 & -3 \\ 1 & 3 & -2 & 0 & -4 \\ 3 & 8 & -7 & -2 & -11 \\ 2 & 1 & -9 & -10 & -3 \end{bmatrix}$$ **[D. U. S. 1983]**

by using **Sweep out method.**

Solution :

$$\begin{array}{ccccc|l}
1 & 2 & -3 & -2 & -3 & \to R_1 \\
1 & 3 & -2 & 0 & -4 & \to R_2 \\
3 & 8 & -7 & -2 & -11 & \to R_3 \\
2 & 1 & -9 & -10 & -3 & \to R_4
\end{array}$$

$$\boxed{1 \;\; 2 \; -3 \; -2 \; -3} \to R_5 = \frac{R_1}{1} \to \text{1st pivotal row}$$

$$\begin{array}{c|cccc|l}
0 & 1 & 1 & 2 & -1 & \to R_6 = R_2 - R_5 \\
0 & 2 & 2 & 4 & -2 & \to R_7 = R_3 - 3R_5 \\
0 & -3 & -3 & -6 & 3 & \to R_8 = R_4 - 2R_5
\end{array}$$

$$\boxed{1 \;\; 1 \; -1} \to R_9 = \frac{R_6}{1} \text{ 2nd pivotal row}$$

$$\begin{array}{c|ccc|l}
0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & \to R_{10} = R_7 - 2R_9 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & \to R_{11} = R_8 + 3R_9
\end{array}$$

Now the rank of the given matrix is equal to the number of pivotal rows = 2.

EXERCISES - 4

1. Find the echelon form and the row reduced echelon form of the matrix

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 3 & -1 & 2 \\ 0 & 11 & -5 & 3 \\ 2 & -5 & 3 & 1 \\ 4 & 1 & 1 & 5 \end{bmatrix}$$

Answers : $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 3 & -1 & 2 \\ 0 & 11 & -5 & 3 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$, and $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & \frac{4}{11} & \frac{13}{11} \\ 0 & 1 & -\frac{5}{11} & \frac{3}{11} \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$

2. Reduce the following matrix to echelon form and then to its row canonical form :

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 3 & -2 & 5 & 1 \\ 3 & -1 & 2 & 0 & 4 \\ 4 & -5 & 6 & -5 & 7 \end{bmatrix}$$

CamScanner

Answers : $\begin{bmatrix} 2 & 3 & -2 & 5 & 1 \\ 0 & -11 & 10 & -15 & 5 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$ and $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & \frac{4}{11} & \frac{5}{11} & \frac{13}{11} \\ 0 & 1 & -\frac{10}{11} & \frac{15}{11} & -\frac{5}{11} \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$

We write the rank of a matrix A = ρ (A)

3. Determine the ranks of the following matrices :

(i) $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 2 & 4 \end{bmatrix}$ (ii) $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 1 & 2 & 5 \\ 2 & 4 & 8 \end{bmatrix}$

(iii) $\begin{bmatrix} 4 & 2 & -1 & 3 \\ 0 & 5 & -1 & 2 \\ 12 & -4 & -1 & 5 \end{bmatrix}$ (iv) $\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 2 & 4 & 6 \\ 3 & -1 & 4 & -2 \\ 6 & -1 & 10 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$

(v) $\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & -1 & 3 \\ 1 & 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 1 & -1 & 1 & 4 \end{bmatrix}$ **[J. U. 1972]**

Answer : (i) rank is 1 (one)
(ii) rank is 2 (iii) rank is 2
(iv) rank is 2 (v) rank is 3.

4. (a) Find the rank of the matrix

$A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 \\ -1 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 3 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$ by any method. **[D. U. P. 1983]**

(b) Find the rank of the matrix

$B = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 3 & -2 & -1 \\ 2 & 6 & -4 & -2 \\ 1 & 3 & -2 & 1 \\ 2 & 6 & 1 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$ **[C. U. P. 1977]**

Answers : (a) ρ (A) = 2 (b) ρ (B) = 3.

5. (a) Determine the rank of the matrix

$A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -1 & 2 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ -1 & -3 & 0 & -2 \end{bmatrix}$. **[D. U. P. 1982]**

CamScanner

(b) Determine the rank of the matrix

$$\begin{bmatrix} 4 & 2 & 1 & 3 \\ 6 & 3 & 4 & 7 \\ 2 & 1 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

Answers : (a) $\rho(A) = 2$

(b) rank is 2.

6. Compute the ranks of the following matrices :

(i) $\begin{bmatrix} -1 & 1 & 3 & 2 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & -1 \\ 0 & -1 & -1 & 0 \\ 2 & -1 & 1 & 2 \\ 3 & 2 & -2 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$ (ii) $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & -3 & -2 & -3 \\ 1 & 3 & -2 & 0 & -4 \\ 3 & 8 & -7 & -2 & -11 \\ 2 & 1 & -9 & -10 & -3 \end{bmatrix}$

[D. U. S. 1985] **[D. U. S. 1983]**

Answers: (i) rank is 4

(ii) rank is 2.

7. Find the rank of each of the following matrices :

(i) $\begin{bmatrix} 2 & 1 & 0 & -1 \\ 3 & 4 & 2 & 5 \\ -1 & 0 & 3 & -2 \\ 4 & 1 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$ (ii) $\begin{bmatrix} -1 & 1 & 0 & 2 & 3 \\ 1 & 1 & -1 & -1 & 2 \\ 3 & 0 & -1 & 1 & -2 \\ 2 & -1 & 0 & 2 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$

[D. U. Prel. 1984] **[D. U. Prel 1984]**

Answers : (i) rank is 4

(ii) rank is 4.

8. (a) Find the rank of the matrix A

where $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 & 3 \\ 3 & 4 & 0 & -1 \\ -1 & 0 & -2 & 7 \end{bmatrix}$

(b) Determine the rank of the matrix A.

where $A = \begin{bmatrix} -6 & 1 & 0 & 3 & 2 \\ 2 & -4 & 3 & -7 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & -2 & -1 & 5 \\ -4 & -1 & -1 & -6 & 12 \end{bmatrix}$

CS CamScanner

(c) Compute the rank of the matrix

$$\begin{bmatrix} 2 & 6 & -5 & 8 \\ 4 & 3 & -1 & 7 \\ -1 & 1 & 6 & 0 \\ 5 & 1 & 4 & 7 \end{bmatrix}$$

Answers : (a) $\rho(A) = 2$ (b) $\rho(A) = 3$ (c) rank is 3

9. For the matrix $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 4 & 0 \\ -2 & -3 & -1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 7 & 1 \\ -2 & -2 & 6 & 2 \\ -3 & -6 & -12 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$

show the followings :

(i) All minors of A of order 3 or more are zero.

(ii) The rank of A is 2. i. e $\rho(A) = 2$.

10. Find the ranks of the following matrices :

(i) $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\ 2 & 3 & 3 & 2 \\ 5 & 9 & 12 & 14 \end{bmatrix}$ (ii) $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 3 & -2 & 5 & 4 \\ 1 & 4 & 1 & 3 & 5 \\ 1 & 4 & 2 & 4 & 3 \\ 2 & 7 & -3 & 6 & 13 \end{bmatrix}$

Answers : (i) rank is 2. (ii) rank is 3

11. (i) Find the rank of matrix

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & -1 & 2 & 1 \\ 3 & 0 & 1 & -2 \\ -2 & 1 & -1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$$ [C. U. P. 1979]

(ii) Find the rank of the matrix A

where $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 1 & 3 & 0 & 3 \\ 1 & -2 & -3 & -3 \\ 1 & 1 & 2 & 3 \end{bmatrix}$

Answers : (i) rank is 3 (ii) $\rho(A) = 3$.

CamScanner

12. (i) Find the rank of the matrix A

$$\text{where } A = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 6 & 1 & 2 \\ 1 & 0 & \frac{1}{6} & 1 \\ 1 & -7 & 0 & 1 \\ 2 & 1 & 0 & 3 \\ 3 & -6 & 0 & 4 \end{bmatrix}$$

(ii) Find the rank of the matrix

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 3 & 4 & 3 \\ 3 & 9 & 12 & 9 \\ -1 & -3 & -4 & -3 \end{bmatrix}$$

Answers : (i) $\rho(A) = 3$

(ii) $\rho(A) = 1$.

13. (i) Find the rank of the matrix A,

$$\text{where } A = \begin{bmatrix} -1 & 2 & 0 & 4 & 5 & -3 \\ 3 & -7 & 2 & 0 & 1 & 4 \\ 2 & -5 & 2 & 4 & 6 & 1 \\ 4 & -9 & 2 & -4 & -4 & 7 \end{bmatrix}$$

(ii) Determine the rank of the matrix

$$\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 3 & -2 & -1 & 2 \\ 0 & 2 & 6 & -4 & -2 & 4 \\ 0 & 1 & 3 & -2 & 1 & 4 \\ 0 & 2 & 6 & 1 & -1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$ [J. U. 1978]

Answers : (i) $\rho(A) = 2$. (ii) rank is 3

14. (i) Find the rank of the matrix

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 3 & 2 & 0 & 1 \\ 9 & 2 & -1 & 6 & 4 \\ 7 & -4 & -5 & 6 & 2 \\ 17 & 1 & -4 & 12 & 7 \end{bmatrix}$$

(ii) Determine the rank of the matrix

$$\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 1 & 3 & 2 \\ 1 & 2 & -1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 2 & 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & -4 & -5 & -2 \end{bmatrix}$$

Answers : (i) rank is 2. (ii) rank is 3.

CamScanner

15. Find the ranks of the following matrices :

(i) $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 2 \\ 2 & 3 & 5 & 1 \\ 1 & 3 & 4 & 5 \end{bmatrix}$ (ii) $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 3 & -2 & 1 \\ 2 & 0 & -3 & 2 \\ 3 & 3 & -3 & 3 \end{bmatrix}$

Answers : (i) rank is 2. (ii) rank is 3.

16. Find the ranks of the following matrices :

(i) $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & -3 \\ 2 & 1 & 0 \\ -2 & -1 & 3 \\ -1 & 4 & -2 \end{bmatrix}$ (ii) $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 2 \\ 4 & 5 & 5 \\ 5 & 8 & 1 \\ -1 & -2 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$

[D. U. S. 1980] **[C. U. P. 1973]**

Answers : (i) rank is 3 (ii) rank is 3.

17. (i) Determine the rank of the matrix :

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 3 & 4 & 7 \\ 2 & 4 & 5 & 8 \\ 3 & 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 9 \end{bmatrix}$$

(ii) Find the rank of the matrix

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 2 & -1 & 2 & -1 & 2 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$ **[D. U. P. 1982]**

Answers : (i) rank is 4. (ii) rank is 3.

18. Find the ranks of the following matrices :

(i) $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 3 & 1 \\ 2 & 4 & 0 \\ 2 & 4 & 0 \\ 1 & 3 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$ (ii) $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 4 & 2 & 4 \\ 1 & 3 & 1 & 2 \\ 1 & 2 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 & -1 & -2 \end{bmatrix}$

Answers : (i) rank is 2 (ii) rank is 2.

CamScanner

19. Determine the rank of the matrix A.

$$\text{where } A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 2 & 0 & 1 \\ 3 & 2 & 2 & 3 \\ 3 & 4 & 1 & 3 \end{bmatrix}$$

(ii) Find the rank of the matrix

$$\begin{bmatrix} 2 & 1 & 0 & -1 & 3 \\ 1 & 2 & 1 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 3 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ -1 & -5 & -3 & -7 & 3 \end{bmatrix}$$ **[D. U. P. 1984]**

Answers : (i) $\rho(A) = 2$. (ii) rank is 3.

20. Find the ranks of the following matrices :

$$\text{(i)} \quad A = \begin{bmatrix} 6 & 1 & 3 & 8 \\ 4 & 2 & 6 & -1 \\ 13 & 3 & 9 & 7 \\ 16 & 4 & 12 & 15 \end{bmatrix} \quad \text{(ii)} \quad B = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 3 & 1 & 0 & 4 \\ 3 & 1 & 2 & -1 & 1 \\ 4 & -1 & 3 & -2 & -2 \\ 5 & 4 & 3 & -1 & 6 \end{bmatrix}$$

Answers : (i) $\rho(A) = 2$. (ii) $\rho(B) = 3$

21. Find the rank of the following matrix :

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 & 7 \\ 4 & 5 & 6 & 7 & 8 \\ 5 & 6 & 7 & 8 & 9 \\ 10 & 11 & 12 & 13 & 14 \\ 15 & 16 & 17 & 18 & 19 \end{bmatrix}$$

Answer : $\rho(A) = 2$.

22. Find the rank of the following matrix :

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -3 & 2 & 2 & 1 \\ 0 & 3 & 6 & 0 & -2 \\ 2 & -3 & -2 & 4 & 4 \\ 3 & -3 & 6 & 6 & 3 \\ 5 & -3 & 10 & 10 & 5 \end{bmatrix}$$

Answer : $\rho(A) = 3$.

CamScanner

23. Find the rank of the matrix

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 & 7 \\ 4 & 5 & 6 & 7 & 8 \\ 6 & 7 & 8 & 9 & 10 \\ 8 & 9 & 10 & 11 & 12 \\ 12 & 13 & 14 & 15 & 16 \end{bmatrix}$$

Answer : $\rho(A) = 2$.

24. Find the rank of the matrix

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} o & c & -b & a' \\ -c & o & a & b' \\ b & -a & o & c' \\ -a' & -b' & -c' & o \end{bmatrix}$$ where $aa' + bb' + cc' = 0$ and a, b, c are all positive numbers.

Answer : $\rho(A) = 2$.

25. For the matrix $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & -2 \\ 2 & -2 & 1 & 3 \\ 3 & 0 & 4 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$

find the non-singular matrices P and Q such that PAQ is in normal form. and hence determine the rank of the matrix A.

Answer : $P = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ -2 & 1 & 0 \\ -1 & -1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}, Q = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & \frac{1}{3} & -\frac{4}{3} & -\frac{1}{3} \\ 0 & -\frac{1}{6} & -\frac{5}{6} & \frac{7}{6} \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$

26. Reduce the following matrix to normal form and hence

find its rank : $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & -1 & -1 \\ 3 & 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$

Answer : $P = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ \frac{1}{2} & -\frac{1}{2} & 0 \\ -2 & -1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}, Q = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$

$PAQ = \begin{bmatrix} I_2 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$, $\rho(A) = 2$.

CamScanner

27. Reduce the following matrix to normal form and hence find its rank : $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 2 \\ 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 0 & -1 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$

Answer : $P = \begin{bmatrix} -1 & 0 & 0 \\ -1 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$, $Q = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$

$\rho(A) = 2$, since $PAQ = \begin{bmatrix} I_2 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$.

28. Find the rank of the following matrix by reducing it to the normal form :

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 1^2 & 2^2 & 3^2 & 4^2 \\ 2^2 & 3^2 & 4^2 & 5^2 \\ 3^2 & 4^2 & 5^2 & 6^2 \\ 4^2 & 5^2 & 6^2 & 7^2 \end{bmatrix}$$

Answer : $\rho(A) = 3$.

29. Reduce the following matrix to normal form and hence obtain its rank :

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & -5 & 6 \\ 3 & -2 & 1 & 2 \\ 5 & -2 & -9 & 14 \\ 4 & -2 & -4 & 8 \end{bmatrix}$$

Answer : $\rho(A) = 2$.

30. Reduce the following matrix to normal form and hence obtain its rank :

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} -2 & -1 & -3 & -1 \\ 1 & 2 & 3 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$$

Answer : $\rho(A) = 2$.

CamScanner

31. If A is a square matrix of order n such that $A^2 = A$, then prove that $\rho(A) + \rho(I - A) = n$ where I is a unit matrix of order n.

32. If A, B, C are any three matrices such that their products considered are defined then prove that

$$\rho(AB) + \rho(BC) \le \rho(ABC) + \rho(B).$$

33. If a, b, c are all unequal, find the rank of the following matrix, using only row-operations :

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} o & b-a & c-a & b+c \\ a-b & o & c-b & c+a \\ a-c & b-c & o & a+b \\ b+c & c+a & a+b & o \end{bmatrix}$$

Answer : $\rho(A) = 2$.

34. For all values of a, find the rank of the following matrix : $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 3 & -2 & a \\ 2 & 2a-2 & -a-2 & 3a-1 \\ 3 & a+2 & -3 & 2a+1 \end{bmatrix}$

Answers : $\rho(A) = 4$ unless $a = 1$ or $a = 5$

If $a = 1$, $\rho(A) = 3$ and if $a = 5$, $\rho(A) = 2$.

35. Solve the following systems of linear equations :

(i) $\left.\begin{aligned} x + y + z &= 6 \\ 2x + 3y + 4z &= 20 \\ 3x - 2y + z &= 2 \end{aligned}\right\}$ (ii) $\left.\begin{aligned} x + 2y + 3z &= 5 \\ 2x - y + z &= 5 \\ 4x + 2y - 3z &= 5 \end{aligned}\right\}$

Answers : $\left.\begin{aligned} &\text{(i)} \quad x = 1, y = 2, z = 3 \\ &\text{(ii)} \quad x = 2, y = 0, z = 1 \end{aligned}\right\}$

CamScanner

36. Solve the following systems of linear equations :

(i) $$\left.\begin{aligned} x + y + z + t &= 2 \\ 2x + 3y + 4z + 5t &= 9 \\ 3x - 2y + z + 2t &= 9 \\ x + 2y - 2z + 3t &= 5 \end{aligned}\right\}$$

(ii) $$\left.\begin{aligned} x + y + z - 2t &= -4 \\ x - 2y + 3z + 4t &= 10 \\ 2x + 3y - z + 2t &= 9 \\ 4x - y + 2z - t &= -7 \end{aligned}\right\}$$

Answers : (i) $x = 1, y = -1, z = 0, t = 2,$

(ii) $x = -1, y = 2, z = 1, t = 3.$

37. Solve the following system of linear equations :

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x_1 + x_2 + x_3 + x_4 + x_5 &= 15 \\ x_1 - x_2 + x_3 - x_4 + x_5 &= 3 \\ x_1 + 2x_2 + 3x_3 + x_4 - 2x_5 &= 8 \\ 2x_1 + 3x_2 - x_3 - 2x_4 + x_5 &= 2 \\ 3x_1 - 2x_2 + 3x_3 - 2x_4 + x_5 &= 5 \end{aligned}\right\}$$

Answer : $x_1 = 1, x_2 = 2, x_3 = 3, x_4 = 4, x_5 = 5.$

CamScanner

CHAPTER FIVE

VECTORS IN $\mathbb{R}^n$ AND C^n

5.1 Introduction to vectors

Some plysical quantities which are completely determined when their magnitudes are given in terms of a specific unit are called **scalars** e.g. mass, length, volume, area, speed, temperature, time and also any real number.

On the other hand, some physical quantities which are completely determined when their magnitudes as well as directions are given are called **vectors.** e.g. weight, force, velocity, acceleration, tension, and electric current density etc.

Vectors are generally represented geometrically as directed line segment with an arrow head on the end of it where the length of the line indicates the **magnitude** of the vector and arrow denotes its **direction.**

5.2 Euclidean n-space $\mathbb{R}^n$

If n is a positive integer then an **ordered n-tuple** is a sequence of real numbers $(x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_n)$ and Euclidean n-space $\mathbb{R}^n$ is defined as the set of all ordered n-tuples $(x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_n)$ of real numbers x_i $(i = 1, 2, \ldots, n)$. A particular n-tuple in $\mathbb{R}^n$ say $x = (x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_n)$ is called a **point** or a **vector** in $\mathbb{R}^n$; the real numbers x_i $(i = 1, 2, \ldots, n)$ are called the **components** or **entries** or the **coordinates** of the vector x. A 1-tuple of numbers is just a real number. When $n = 1$, $\mathbb{R}^1 = \mathbb{R}$, the set of real numbers. $\mathbb{R}^1$, $\mathbb{R}^2$ and $\mathbb{R}^3$ are often called the **line**, the **plane** and the **space** respectively.

CamScanner

5.3 Vector addition and scalar multiplication in $\mathbb{R}^n$

Let x and y be vectors in $\mathbb{R}^n$, then $x = (x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_n)$ and $y = (y_1, y_2, \ldots, y_n)$.

The **sum** of x and y written as $x + y$, is the vector obtained by adding corresponding components, that is,

$$x + y = (x_1 + y_1, x_2 + y_2, \ldots, x_n + y_n)$$

The **product** of the vector x by a scalar (real number) α, written as αx, is the vector obtained by multiplying each component of x by α, that is,

$$\alpha x = (\alpha x_1, \alpha x_2, \ldots, \alpha x_n).$$

We also define $-x = (-1)x$ and $x - y = x + (-y)$.

5.4 Basic properties of the vectors in $\mathbb{R}^n$ under vector addition and scalar multiplication

Theorem 1. For any vectors $x, y, z \in \mathbb{R}^n$ and any scalars $\alpha, \beta \in \mathbb{R}$,

(i)	$x + y = y + x$	(v)	$\alpha(x + y) = \alpha x + \alpha y$
(ii)	$(x + y) + z = x + (y + z)$	(vi)	$(\alpha + \beta)x = \alpha x + \beta x$
(iii)	$x + 0 = x$	(vii)	$(\alpha\beta x) = \alpha(\beta x)$
(iv)	$x + (-x) = 0$	(viii)	$1x = x$

Proof : (i) Let $x = (x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_n)$ and $y = (y_1, y_2, \ldots, y_n)$

the $x + y = (x_1 + y_1, x_2 + y_2, \ldots, x_i + y_i, \ldots, x_n + y_n)$

and $y + x = (y_1 + x_1\ y_2 + x_2, \ldots, y_i + x_i \ldots, y_n + x_n)$

Therefore, $x_i + y_i$ is the i th component of $x + y$ and $y_i + x_i$ is the i th component of $y + x$. but $\mathbb{R}$ is a field of real numbers, therefore commutative law under addition holds in $\mathbb{R}$. Thus $x_i + y_i = y_i + x_i$ $(i = 1, 2, \ldots, n)$ Hence $x + y = y + x$ since their corresponding components are equal.

(ii) Let x_i, y_i and z_i be the i th components of x, y and z respectively, then $x_i + y_i$ is the i th component of $x + y$ and so

$(x_i + y_i) + z_i$ is the ith component of $(x + y) + z$. On the other hand, $y_i + z_i$ is the i th component of $y + z$ and so $x_i + (y_i + z_i)$ is the i th component of $x + (y + z)$. but $\mathbb{R}$ is a field of real numbers therefore associative law under addition holds in $\mathbb{R}^n$. Thus $(x_i + y_i) + z_i = x_i + (y_i + z_i)$ for $i = 1, 2, ..., n$.

Hence $(x + y) + z = x + (y + z)$ since their corresponding components are equal.

(iii) Let $x = (x_1, x_2, ..., x_n)$ and $O = (0, 0, ..., 0)$ then

$$\begin{aligned} x + 0 &= (x_1, x_2, ..., x_n) + (0, 0, ..., 0) \\ &= (x_1 + 0, x_2 + 0, ..., x_n + 0) \\ &= (x_1, x_2, ..., x_n) = x \end{aligned}$$

(iv) Let $x = (x_1, x_2, ..., x_n)$ then $-x = (-1)\,x$

$$\begin{aligned} &= (-1)\,(x_1, x_2, ..., x_n) \\ &= (-x_1, -x_2, ..., -x_n) \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore\ x + (-x) &= (x_1, x_2, ..., x_n) + (-x_1, -x_2, ..., -x_n) \\ &= (x_1 + (-x_1), x_2 + (-x_2), ..., x_n + (-x_n)) \\ &= (x_1 - x_1, x_2 - x_2, ..., x_n - x_n) \\ &= (0, 0, ..., 0) = 0. \end{aligned}$$

(v) Since $x_i + y_i$ is the i th component of $x + y$, $\alpha\,(x_i + y_i)$ is the i th component of $\alpha\,(x + y)$. Again since αx_i and αy_i are the i th components of αx and αy respectively, $\alpha x_i + \alpha y_i$ is the i th component of $\alpha x + \alpha y$.

But α, x_i and y_i are all real numbers.

Thus $\alpha(x_i + y_i) = \alpha x_i + \alpha y_i$ for $i = 1, 2, ..., n$

Hence $\alpha(x + y) = \alpha x + \alpha y$ as corresponding components are equal.

(vi) Since α and β are scalars, $\alpha + \beta$ is the addition of two scalars which is also a scalar. Again since αx and βx are vectors, αx_i and βx_i are the i th components of αx and βx resp ectively and also $\alpha x_i + \beta x_i$ is the i th component of $\alpha x + \beta x$.

CamScanner

But α, β and x_i are all real numbers.

Hence $(\alpha + \beta)\, x_i = \alpha x_i + \beta x_i$ for $i = 1, 2, \ldots, n$.

Thus $(\alpha + \beta)\, x = \alpha x + \beta x$, as corresponding components are equal.

(viii) Since βx_i is the i th component of βx, $\alpha\,(\beta x_i)$ is the i th component of $\alpha\,(\beta x)$. Again $(\alpha\beta)\, x_i$ is the i th component of $(\alpha\beta)x$. But α, β and x_i are all real numbers, $\therefore\ (\alpha\beta)x_i = \alpha\,(\beta x_i)$ for $i = 1, 2, \ldots, n$.

Hence $(\alpha\beta)x = \alpha(\beta x)$.

(viii) Let $x = (x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_n)$ then

$1.\, x = 1\,(x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_n) = (1x_1, 1x_2, \ldots, 1x_n) = (x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_n) = x$

5.5 Dot or scalar product of two vectors in $\mathbb{R}^n$

Let x and y be two vectors in $\mathbb{R}^n$, then we can write $x = (x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_n)$ and $y = (y_1, y_2, \ldots, y_n)$.

The **dot** or **scalar** or **inner product** of x and y denoted by $x.y$ is the scalar obtained by multiplying corresponding components and adding the resulting products :

$x.y = x_1 y_1 + x_2 y_2 + \ldots + x_n y_n$ The vectors x and y are said to be **orthogonal** (or **perpendicular**) if their dot product is zero, that is, if $x.y = 0$.

5.6 Distance and norm in $\mathbb{R}^n$

Let $x = (x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_n)$ and $y = (y_1, y_2, \ldots, y_n)$ be two **vectors** (or **points**) in $\mathbb{R}^n$. Then the **distance** between x and y, written as $d(x,y)$ is defined by

$$d\,(x, y) = ||x - y|| = \sqrt{(x_1 - y_1)^2 + (x_2 - y_2)^2 + \ldots + (x_n - y_n)^2}.$$

The **norm** or **length** of the vector $x = (x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_n)$, written as $||x||$ is defined to be the non-negative square root of $x.x$, that is,

$$||x|| = \sqrt{x.x} = \sqrt{x_1^2 + x_2^2 + \ldots + x_n^2}.$$

When n = 1, $||x|| = |x|$ which is the usual **absolute value** of x. A vector e is called the **unit vector** if its norm is 1 (one); that is, if $||e|| = 1$.

If $x = (x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_n)$ is a non-zero vector in $\mathbb{R}^n$, then the vector $e_n = \frac{x}{||x||}$ is a **unit vector** in $\mathbb{R}^n$ in the same direction as x.

5.7 Basic properties of dot product in $\mathbb{R}^n$

Theorem 2. For any vectors $x, y, z \in \mathbb{R}^n$ and any scalar $\lambda \in \mathbb{R}$

(i) $x.y = y.x$ (ii) $(x+y).z = x.z + y.z$

(iii) $(\lambda x).y = \lambda (x.y)$ (iv) $x.x \geq 0$ and $x.x = 0$ iff $x = 0$.

Proof : (i) Let $x, y \in \mathbb{R}^n$ then $x = (x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_n)$ and

$$y = (y_1, y_2, \ldots, y_n).$$

Now by definition of dot product, we have

$$\begin{aligned} x.y &= x_1y_1 + x_2y_2 + \ldots, + x_ny_n \\ &= y_1x_1 + y_2x_2 + \ldots + y_n x_n \quad \text{since commutative law} \\ &= y.x. \quad \text{for multiplication holds in } \mathbb{R}. \end{aligned}$$

(ii) Let $x = (x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_n)$, $y = (y_1, y_2, \ldots, y_n)$ and

$$z = (z_1, z_2, \ldots, z_n).$$

Since $x + y = (x_1 + y_1, x_2 + y_2, \ldots, x_n + y_n)$,

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore (x+y).z &= (x_1 + y_1) z_1 + \ldots, + (x_n + y_n) z_n \\ &= x_1z_1 + y_1z_1 + x_2 z_2 + y_2z_2 + \ldots + x_n z_n + y_nz_n \\ &= (x_1z_1 + x_2 z_2 + \ldots + x_nz_n) + (y_1z_1 + y_2z_2 + \ldots + y_nz_n) \\ &= x.z + y.z. \end{aligned}$$

(iii) Since $\lambda x = \lambda(x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_n) = (\lambda x_1, \lambda x_2, \ldots, \lambda x_n)$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore (\lambda x).y &= (\lambda x_1)y_1 + (\lambda x_2)y_2 + \ldots + (\lambda x_n) y_n \\ &= \lambda x_1y_1 + \lambda x_2y_2 + \ldots + \lambda x_ny_n \\ &= \lambda (x_1 y_1 + x_2 y_2 + \ldots + x_n y_n) \\ &= \lambda (x.y) \end{aligned}$$

(iv) Since x_i^2 is non-negative for each i and since the sum of non-negative real numbers is non-negative,

$$\therefore x \cdot x = x_1^2 + x_2^2 + \ldots, + x_n^2 \geq 0.$$

Furthermore, $x \cdot x = 0$ if and only if $x_i = 0$ for each i, that is, if and only if $x = 0$.

5.8 Cauchy-Schwarz inequality

Statement : For any vectors $u = (u_1, u_2, \ldots, u_n)$ and $v = (v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_n)$ in $\mathbb{R}^n$, $|u.v| \leq ||u|| \; ||v||$.

Proof : We shall prove the following stronger statement

$$|u \cdot v| \leq \sum_{i=1}^{n} |u_i \, v_i| \leq ||u|| \, ||v||$$

If $u = 0$ or $v = 0$, then the inequality reduces to $0 \leq 0 \leq 0$ which is true. Thus we have to consider the cases in which $u \neq 0$ and $v \neq 0$, i.e where $||u|| \neq 0$ and $||v|| \neq 0$.

Furthermore, $|u \cdot v| = |u_1 v_1 + u_2 v_2 + \ldots + u_n v_n|$

$$\leq |u_1 v_1| + |u_2 v_2| + \ldots, + |u_n v_n|$$

$$= \sum_{i=1}^{n} |u_i v_i|.$$

Now we have to prove only the second inequality.

For any two real numbers $x, y \in \mathbb{R}$, we have

$$0 \leq (x - y)^2 = x^2 - 2xy + y^2$$

or, $\quad 2xy \leq x^2 + y^2 \qquad (1)$

Set $x = \dfrac{|u_i|}{||u||}$ and $y = \dfrac{|v_i|}{||v||}$ in (1) to get,

for any i, $\quad 2 \dfrac{|u_i|}{||u||} \dfrac{|v_i|}{||v||} \leq \dfrac{|u_i|^2}{||u||^2} + \dfrac{|v_i|^2}{||v||^2} \qquad (2)$

But by definition of the norm of a vector we have

$\|u\|^2 = \Sigma u_i^2 = \Sigma |u_i|^2$ & $\|v\|^2 = \Sigma v_i^2 = \Sigma |v_i|^2$, summing (2) for i and using $|u_i v_i| = |u_i|\,|v_1|$, we get

$$2\Sigma \frac{|u_i v_i|}{\|u\|\,\|v\|} \le \frac{\Sigma |u_i|^2}{\|u\|^2} + \frac{\Sigma |v_i|^2}{\|v\|^2} = \frac{\|u\|^2}{\|u\|^2} + \frac{\|v\|^2}{\|v\|^2} = 2.$$

or, $\dfrac{\Sigma |u_i v_i|}{\|u\|\,\|v\|} \le 1$

or, $\Sigma |u_i v_i| \le \|u\|\,\|v\|$.

5.9 Minkowski's inequality (or triangle inequality)

Statement : For any vectors $u = (u_1, u_2, \ldots, u_n)$ and $v = (v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_n)$ in $\mathbb{R}^n$, $\|u+v\| \le \|u\| + \|v\|$.

Proof : If $\|u+v\| = 0$, the inequality clearly holds.

Thus we have only to consider the case $\|u+v\| \ne 0$.

Now $|u_i + v_i| \le |u_i| + |v_i|$ for any real numbers $u_i, v_i \in \mathbb{R}$.

Hence $\|u+v\|^2 = \Sigma (u_i + v_i)^2 = \Sigma |u_i + v_i|^2$

$$= \Sigma |u_i + v_i|\,|u_i + v_i|$$

$$\le \Sigma |u_i + v_i|(|u_i| + |v_i|)$$

$$= \Sigma |u_i + v_i|\,|u_i| + \Sigma |u_i + v_i|\,|v_i|$$

But by **Cauchy –Schwarz inequality,** we have

$$\Sigma |u_i + v_i|\,|u_i| \le \|u+v\|\,\|u\|$$

and $\Sigma |u_i + v_i|\,|v_i| \le \|u+v\|\,\|v\|$

Thus $\|u+v\|^2 \le \|u+v\|\,\|u\| + \|u+v\|\,\|v\|$

$$= \|u+v\|(\|u\| + \|v\|)$$

Dividing both sides by $\|u+v\|$, we get $\|u+v\| \le \|u\| + \|v\|$.

Remark : Minkowski's inequality can also be stated in the following alternative form :

$$\left\{\sum_{i=1}^{n} (a_i + b_i)^p\right\}^{\frac{1}{p}} \leq \left\{\sum_{i=1}^{n} a_i^p\right\}^{\frac{1}{p}} + \left\{\sum_{i=1}^{n} b_i^p\right\}^{\frac{1}{p}}$$

where $a_i \geq 0$, $b_i > 0$ $(i = 1, 2, \ldots, n)$ and $p > 1$.

Definition Directed line segment in $\mathbb{R}^n$

Let $x, y \in \mathbb{R}^n$: $x = (x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_n)$ and

$$y = (y_1, y_2, \ldots, y_n).$$

Then the **directed line segmment** from x to y, denoted by $\overrightarrow{xy}$ is a vector $\overrightarrow{xy} = y - x = (y_1 - x_1, y_2 - x_2, \ldots, y_n - x_n)$ which is also called **located vector.**

Definition Hyperplane in $\mathbb{R}^n$

Let $\alpha_1 x_1 + \alpha_2 x_2 + \ldots + \alpha_n x_n = b$ (1)

be a linear equation in n unknowns $x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_n$

where $z = (\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \ldots, \alpha_n) \in \mathbb{R}^n$ and $z \neq 0$.

Then the subset $H = \{(\beta_1, \beta_2, \ldots, \beta_n) : \sum_{i=1}^{n} \alpha_i \beta_i = b\}$

of $\mathbb{R}^n$ is called a **hyperplane** of $\mathbb{R}^n$ and the equation (1) is called an **equation** of the hyperplane H. The vector

$z = (\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \ldots, \alpha_n)$ is called a **normal** of the hyperplane H.

In particular, a hyperplane H in $\mathbb{R}^2$ is a line and a hyperplane H in $\mathbb{R}^3$ is a plane.

5.10 Curves in $\mathbb{R}^n$

Let I be an interval (finite or infinite) in the real line $\mathbb{R}$ then a continuous function $f: I \to \mathbb{R}^n$ is a curve in $\mathbb{R}^n$. Thus to each $t \in I$ there is assigend the following point (or vector) in $\mathbb{R}^n$: $f(t) = [f_1(t), f_2(t), \ldots, f_n(t)]$

Moreover, the derivative of $f(t)$ yields the vector

$$v(t) = \frac{df(t)}{dt} = \left[\frac{df_1(t)}{dt}, \frac{df_2(t)}{dt}, \ldots, \frac{df_n(t)}{dt}\right]$$

which is the tangent to the curve.

Normalizing v(t) yeilds $T(t) = \frac{\upsilon(t)}{\|vt\|}$ which is the unit tangent vector to the curve in $\mathbb{R}^n$.

5.11 Lines in $\mathbb{R}^n$

The line L in $\mathbb{R}^n$ Passing through the point $P(\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \ldots, \alpha_n)$ and in the direction of non-zero vector $u = (v_1, v_2, \ldots\ldots, v_n)$ consists of the points $X(x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_n)$ which satisfy

$$X = P + t\upsilon \text{ or } \begin{cases} x_1 = \alpha_1 + \upsilon_1 t \\ x_2 = \alpha_1 + \upsilon_2 t \\ \ldots \quad \ldots \quad \ldots \\ \ldots \quad \ldots \quad \ldots \\ x_n = \alpha_n + \upsilon_n t \end{cases}$$

where the Parameter t takes on all real numbers.

5.12 Spatial vectors and $\hat{i}, \hat{j}, \hat{k}$ notations in $\mathbb{R}^3$

Vectors in $\mathbb{R}^3$ are called **spatial vectors** which have many applications especially in Physics and Applied Mathematics. The following notations for unit vectors in $\mathbb{R}^3$ are frequently used for such vectors :

$\hat{i} = (1,0,0)$ denotes the unit vector along x – axis

$\hat{j} = (0,1,0)$ denotes the unit vector along y – axis

$\hat{k} = (0,0,1)$ denotes the unit vector along z–axis

Thus any vector $u = (a, b, c)$ in $\mathbb{R}^3$ can be expresed uniquely in the form

$\upsilon = (a, b, c) = a\hat{i} + b\hat{j} + c\hat{k}$ which is known as **spatial vector.**

since $\hat{i}, \hat{j}$ & $\hat{k}$ are units vectors and are mutually orthogonal, we have

$$\hat{i}.\hat{i} = \hat{j}.\hat{j} = \hat{k}.\hat{k} = 1 \;\&\; \hat{i}.\hat{j} = \hat{j}.\hat{k} = \hat{k}.\hat{i} = 0$$

5.13 Cross product of two vectors in $\mathbb{R}^3$

If $u = u_1\hat{i} + u_2\hat{j} + u_3\hat{k}$ and $v = v_1\hat{i} + v_2\hat{j} + v_3\hat{k}$

Then $u \times v = \begin{vmatrix} \hat{i} & \hat{j} & \hat{k} \\ u_1 & u_2 & u_3 \\ v_1 & v_2 & v_3 \end{vmatrix} = (u_2v_3 - u_3v_2)\hat{i} + (u_3v_1 - u_1v_3)\hat{j} + (u_1v_2 - u_2v_1)\hat{k}$.

Since $u \times v$ is a vector, it is also called **vector product** or **outer product** of u and v.

The cross product of the vectors $\hat{i}, \hat{j}$ and $\hat{k}$ are as follows :

$\hat{i} \times \hat{i} = \hat{j} \times \hat{j} = \hat{k} \times \hat{k} = 0$

$\hat{i} \times \hat{j} = \hat{k}$, $\hat{j} \times \hat{k} = i$, $\hat{k} \times \hat{i} = \hat{j}$

and $\hat{j} \times \hat{i} = -\hat{k}$, $\hat{k} \times \hat{j} = -\hat{i}$ $\hat{i} \times \hat{k} = -\hat{j}$.

5.14 Complex numbers

$u = a + bi$ is called a **complex number** where $a, b \in \mathbb{R}^n$ and $i = \sqrt{-1}$.

Complex number is also defined by the following alternative form: a complex number is an ordered pair (a, b) of real numbers. Thus $u = a + bi = (a, b)$.

The set of complex numbers is denoted by the symbol C. The conjugate of the complex number $u = (a, b) = a + bi$ is denoted and defined by $\bar{u} = \overline{a + bi} = a - bi$.

Then $u\bar{u} = (a + bi)(a - bi) = a^2 + b^2$.

The **absolute value** of u, written as $|u|$, is defined as the distance from u to the origin:

$$|u| = \sqrt{a^2 + b^2} \text{ or } |u|^2 = a^2 + b^2.$$

$$\therefore u\bar{u} = |u|^2.$$

If $u = a + bi \neq 0$ then the inverse u^{-1} of u and division of w by u are given respectively by $u^{-1} = \dfrac{\bar{u}}{u\bar{u}} = \dfrac{a}{a^2 + b^2} + \dfrac{-b}{a^2 + b^2} i$

and $\dfrac{w}{u} = wu^{-1}$ where $w \in C$.

5.15 Vectors in C^n

The set of all n- tuples of complex numbers, denoted by C^n, is called **Complex n - space.**

The elements of C^n are called **points** or **vectors** and the elements of C are called **scalars.**

Vector addition in C^n and **scalar multiplication** on C^n are given respectively by

$$(u_1, u_2, \ldots, u_n) + (v_1, v_2, \ldots, u_n) = (u_1 + v_1, u_2 + v_2, \ldots, u_n + v_n)$$

$$w(u_1 u_2, \ldots, u_n) = (wu_1, wu_2, \ldots, wu_n)$$

where $u_i, v_i, w \in C$.

Let u and v be arbitrary vectors in C^n, then

$u = (u_1, u_2, \ldots, u_n)$ and $v = (v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_n)$

where $v_i, u_i \in C$.

Now the **dot** or **inner product** of u and v is dfined as follows:

$$u.v = u_1 \overline{v_1} + u_2 \overline{v_2} + \ldots + u_n \overline{v_n}$$

The **norm** of u is defined by

$$(|u|| = \sqrt{u.u} = \sqrt{u_1\overline{u_1} + u_2\overline{u_2} + \ldots + u_n\overline{u_n}}$$

$$= \sqrt{|u_1|^2 + |u_2|^2 + \ldots + |u_n|^2}$$

Here we observe that u. u and so $||u||$ are real and positive when $u \neq o$ and O when $u = o$.

The space C^n with the above operations of vector addition, scalar multiplication and dot product, is called **Complex Euclidean n – space.**

Theorm 5. For any complex numbers $u, v \in C$,

(i) $\overline{u + v} = \overline{u} + \overline{v} +$ (ii) $\overline{uv} = \overline{u}\,\overline{v}$

(iii) $\overline{\overline{u}} = u$ (iv) $|uv|^2 = |u|^2 |v|^2$.

(v) $|u + v| \leq |u| + |v|$.

Proof: Let $u = a + bi$ and $v = c + di$

where $a, b, c, d \in \mathbb{R}$

(i) $\overline{u+v} = \overline{(a+bi)+(c+di)} = \overline{(a+c)+(b+d)i}$

$= (a+c) - (b+d)i$

$= a + c - bi - di$

$= (a-bi) + (c-di) = \overline{u} + \overline{v}$

(ii) $\overline{uv} = \overline{(a+bi)\ (c+di)} = \overline{(ac-bd)+(ad+bc)i}$

$= (ac-bd) - (ad+bc)i$

$= (a-bi)(c-di) = \overline{u}\ \overline{v}.$

(iii) $\overline{\overline{u}} = \overline{\overline{a+bi}} = \overline{a-bi} = a-(-b)i = a+bi = u$

(iv) $|uv|^2 = (uv)\ (\overline{uv}) = uv(\overline{u}\ \overline{v})$

$= (u\overline{u})(v\overline{v}) = |u|^2\ |v|^2.$

(v) Let $u = a + bi$ and $v = c + di$ where $a, b, c\ d \in \mathbb{R}$

Consider the vectors $x = (a, b)$ and $y = (c, d)$

then $|u| = \sqrt{a^2+b^2} = ||x||$ and $|u| = \sqrt{c^2+d^2} = ||y||$

also $|u+v| = |(a+c)+(b+d)i| = \sqrt{(a+c)^2+(b+d)^2}$

$= ||(a+c, b+d)|| = ||x+y||$

Now using the **Minkowski's inequality**

$||x+y|| \le ||x|| + ||y||$, we get

$|u+v| = ||x+y|| \le ||x|| + ||y|| = |u| + |v|$

Hence $|u+v| \le |u| + |v|$.

Theorem 6. For any vectors $u, v \in C^n$ and any scalar $w \in C$,

(i) $u.v = \overline{v.u}$

(ii) $(wu).v = w(u.v)$

(iii) $u.(wv) = \overline{w}(u.v)$

Proof: Let $u = (u_1, u_2, \ldots, u_n)$ and $v = (v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_n)$

where $u_i, v_i \in C$ $(i = 1, 2, \ldots, n)$

(i) Using the properties of conjugate, we have

$$\overline{v.u} = \overline{v_1\,\overline{u}_1 + v_2\,\overline{u}_2 + \ldots + v_n\,\overline{u}_n}$$

$$= \overline{v_1\,\overline{u}_1} + \overline{v_2\,\overline{u}_2} + \ldots + \overline{v_n\,\overline{u}_n}$$

$$= \overline{v}_1 u_1 + \overline{v}_2 u_2 + \ldots + \overline{v}_n u_n$$

since $\overline{\overline{u}}_i = u_i$ $(i = 1, 2, \ldots, n)$

$$= u_1\overline{v}_1 + u_2\overline{v}_2 + \ldots + u_n\overline{v}_n = u.v$$

(ii) Since $w\,u = w(u_1, u_2, \ldots, u_n) = (wu_1, wu_2, \ldots, wu_n)$

$$\therefore (wu).\,v = wu_1\overline{v_1} + wu_2\overline{v_2} + \ldots + wu_n\overline{v_n}$$

$$= w(u_1\overline{v_1} + u_2\overline{v_2} + \ldots + u_n\overline{v_n})$$

$$= w(u.\,v)$$

(iii) Since $wv = w\,(v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_n) = (wv_1, wv_2, \ldots, wv_n)$

$$\therefore u.(wv) = u_1\overline{wv_1} + u_2\overline{wv_2} + \ldots + u_n\overline{wv_n}$$

$$= u_1\overline{w}\,\overline{v}_1 + u_2\overline{w}\,\overline{v}_2 + \ldots + u_1\overline{w}\,\overline{v}_n$$

$$= \overline{w}(u_1\overline{v}_1 + u_2\overline{v}_2 + u_n\overline{v}_n)$$

$$= \overline{w}\,(u.v)$$

Hence $u.\,(wv) = \overline{w}\,(u.v)$.

Worked out examples

Example 1. Let $x = (1, -2, 3, -1)$, $y = (2, 1, -5, 0)$

and $z = (5, -3, -1, 1)$.

Find (i) $2x + 3y - 5z$ (ii) $x.\,y$, $x.z$ and $y.z$ (iii) $\|x\|$, $\|y\|$ and $\|z\|$.

Solution : (i) First we will perform the scalar multiplication and then the vector addition.

$$2x + 3y - 5z = 2\,(1, -2, 3, -1) + 3\,(2, 1, -5, 0) - 5\,(5, -3, -1, 1)$$

$$= (2, -4, 6, -2) + (6, 3, -15, 0) + (-25, 15, 5, -5)$$

$$= (2 + 6 - 25, -4 + 3 + 15, 6 - 15 + 5, -2 + 0 - 5)$$

$$= (-17, 14, -4, -7).$$

(ii) $x \cdot y = 1 \cdot 2 + (-2) \cdot 1 + 3 \cdot (-5) + (-1) \cdot 0$

$= 2 - 2 - 15 + 0 = -15.$

$x \cdot z = 1 \cdot 5 + (-2) \cdot (-3) + 3 \cdot (-1) + (-1) \cdot 1$

$= 5 + 6 - 3 - 1 = 7.$

$y \cdot z = 2 \cdot 5 + 1 \cdot (-3) + (-5) \cdot (-1) + 0 \cdot 1$

$= 10 - 3 + 5 + 0 = 12$

(iii) $\|x\|^2 = 1^2 + (-2)^2 + 3^2 + (-1)^2 = 1 + 4 + 9 + 1 = 15$

$\therefore \|x\| = \sqrt{15}.$

$\|y\|^2 = 2^2 + 1^2 + (-5)^2 + 0^2 = 4 + 1 + 25 = 30$

$\therefore \|y\| = \sqrt{30}.$

$\|z\|^2 = 5^2 + (-3)^2 + (-1)^2 + 1^2 = 25 + 9 + 1 + 1 = 36$

$\therefore \|z\| = \sqrt{36} = 6.$

Example 2. Determine λ so that the vectors x and y are orthogonal where $x = (1, \lambda, 3)$ and $y = (3, -5, 4)$.

Solution : Compute $x \cdot y$, set it equal to zero and then solve for λ.

$$x \cdot y = 1 \cdot 3 + \lambda \cdot (-5) + 3 \cdot 4 = 3 - 5\lambda + 12 = 0$$

$$\text{or, } 15 - 5\lambda = 0, \quad \therefore \lambda = 3.$$

Example 3. Let u be a normal of a hyperplane H in $\mathbb{R}^n$. If $x, y \in H$, then show that $\overrightarrow{xy}$ is orthogonal to u.

Proof : Since $x, y \in H$, $x = (x_1\ x_2, \ldots, x_n)$

$y = (y_1, y_2, \ldots, y_n)$.

Let $\alpha_1 z_1 + \alpha_2 z_2 + \ldots + \alpha_n z_n = b$ (1) be an equation of H. Then u $= (\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \ldots, \alpha_n)$.

Since $x, y \in H$, both x and y are solutions of (1)

$\therefore \quad \alpha_1 x_1 + \alpha_2 x_2 + \ldots + \alpha_n x_n = b$ (2)

$\alpha_1 y_1 + \alpha_2 y_2 + \ldots + \alpha_n y_n = b$ (3)

Now $\overrightarrow{xy} = y - x = (y_1 - x_1, y_2 - x_2, \ldots, y_n - x_n)$

Then $u \cdot \overrightarrow{xy} = \alpha_1 (y_1 - x_1) + \alpha_2 (y_2 - x_2) + \ldots + \alpha_n (y_n - x_n)$

$= \alpha_1 y_1 - \alpha_1 x_1 + \alpha_2 y_2 - \alpha_2 x_2 + \ldots + \alpha_n y_n - \alpha_n x_n$

$= (\alpha_1 y_1 + \alpha_2 y_2 + \ldots + \alpha_n y_n) - (\alpha_1 x_1 + \alpha_2 x_2 + \ldots + \alpha_n x_n)$

$= b - b = 0.$ using (2) & (3)

Thus $u \cdot \overrightarrow{xy} = 0$. That is, $\overrightarrow{xy}$ is orthogonal to u.

Example 4. Let $u = (5 - 2i, 1 + 3i)$ &, $v = (2 + 3i, -2 - 4i)$

Find (i) $u + 2v$ (ii) $3iu$ (iii) $(2 - 3i)v$ (iv) $u \cdot v$ (v) $\|u\|$ & $\|v\|$

Solution : (i) $2v = 2(2 + 3i, -2 - 4i) = (4 + 6i, -4 - 16i)$

$u + 2v = (5 - 2i, 1 + 3i) + (4 + 6i, -4 - 16i)$

$= (5 - 2i + 4 + 6i, 1 + 3i - 4 - 16i)$

$= (9 + 4i, -3 - 13i).$

(ii) $3i\,u = 3i(5 - 2i, 1 + 3i)$

$= (15i - 6i^2, 3i + 9i^2)$

$= (15i + 6, 3i - 9)$

$= (6 + 15i, -9 + 3i)$

(iii) $(2 - 3i)v = (2 - 3i)(2 + 3i, -2 - 4i)$

$= (4 - 9i^2, -4 - 8i + 6i + 12i^2)$

$= (4 + 9, -4 - 2i - 12)$

$= (13, -16 - 2i) = (13 + 0i, -16 - 2i).$

(iv) $u \cdot v = (5 - 2i)\overline{(2 + 3i)} + (1 + 3i)\overline{(-2 - 4i)}$

$= (5 - 2i)(2 - 3i) + (1 + 3i)(-2 + 4i)$

$= 10 - 15i - 4i + 6i^2 - 2 + 4i - 6i + 12i^2$

$8 - 21i - 6 - 12 = -10 - 21i.$

(v) $\|u\|^2 = u \cdot u = (5 - 2i)(5 + 2i) + (1 + 3i)(1 - 3i)$

$= 5^2 - 2^2 i^2 + 1^2 - 3^2 i^2$

$= 25 + 4 + 1 + 9 = 39$

$\therefore \|u\| = \sqrt{39}$

$\|v\|^2 = v \cdot v = (2+3i)(2-3i) + (-2-4i)(-2+4i)$

$= 2^2 + 3^2 + (-2)^2 + 4^2$

$= 4 + 9 + 4 + 16 = 33$

$\therefore \|v\| = \sqrt{33}.$

Example 5. For any vectors u, v, w $\in C^n$, prove that

(i) $(u+v) \cdot w = u \cdot w + v \cdot w$

(ii) $w \cdot (u+v) = w \cdot u + w \cdot v$

Proof : Let $u = (u_1, u_2, \ldots, u_n)$, and $v = (v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_n)$ and

Then $u + v = (u_1 + v_1, u_2 + v_2, \ldots, u_n + v_n)$

(i) $(u+v) \cdot w = (u_1 + v_1)\overline{w_1} + (u_2 + v_2)\overline{w_2} + \ldots + (u_n + v_n)\overline{w_n}$

$= u_1\overline{w_1} + v_1\overline{w_1} + u_2\overline{w_2} + v_2\overline{w_2} + \ldots + u_n\overline{w_n} + v_n\overline{w_n}$

$= (u_1\overline{w_1} + u_2\overline{w_2} + \ldots + u_n\overline{w_n}) + (v_1\overline{w_1} + v_2\overline{w_2} + \ldots + v_n\overline{w_n})$

$= u \cdot w + v \cdot w.$

$\therefore (u+v) \cdot w = u \cdot w + v \cdot w$

(ii) $w \cdot (u+v) = w_1\overline{(u_1 + v_1)} + w_2\overline{(u_2 + v_2)} + \ldots + w_n\overline{(u_n + v_n)}$

$= w_1(\overline{u_1} + \overline{v_1}) + w_2(\overline{u_2} + \overline{v_2}) + \ldots + w_n(\overline{u_n} + \overline{v_n})$

$= w_1\overline{u_1} + w_1\overline{v_1} + w_2\overline{u_2} + w_2\overline{v_2} + \ldots + w_n\overline{u_n} + w_n\overline{v_n}$

$= (w_1\overline{u_1} + w_2\overline{u_2} + \ldots + w_n\overline{u_n}) + (w_1\overline{v_1} + w_2\overline{v_2} + \ldots + w_n\overline{v_n})$

$= w \cdot u + w \cdot v$

$\therefore \quad w \cdot (u+v) = w \cdot v + w \cdot v.$

EXERCISES – 5

1. Let $x = (2, -1, 0, -3)$, $y = (1, -2, -1, 5)$ and $z = (1, 3, -5, 2)$. Find (i) $2x - 5y$; (ii) $3x - 2y - 5z$ (iii) $x + 2y - 2z$ (iv) $x \cdot y$, $x \cdot z$ & $y \cdot z$

(v) $||x||$, $||y||$ and $||z||$.

Answers : (i) (–1, 8, 5, –31) (ii) (–1, –14, 27, – 29)

(iii) (2, –11, 8, 3) (iv) – 11, –7, 10 (v) $\sqrt{14}$, $\sqrt{31}$, $\sqrt{39}$.

2. Determine λ such that $||x|| = \sqrt{39}$ where $x = (1, \lambda, -2, 5)$.

Answer : $\lambda = 3, -3$.

3. If x and y are orthogonal, find λ :

(i) $x = (\lambda, 1, 2)$, $y = (1 + \lambda, 4, -3)$

(ii) $x = (\lambda, -2, 3, -4)$, $y = (5, -4, 5, 7)$.

(iii) $x = (1, \lambda, -3)$, $y = (2, -5, 4)$.

Answer : (i) $\lambda = 1, -2$ (ii) $\lambda = 1$ (iii) $\lambda = -2$.

4. Determine α and β if x is orthogonal to both y and z respectively, where $x = (1, \alpha, 2, -1)$, $y = (2, 1, 3, \beta)$ and $z = (\beta, 1, -4, 2)$.

Answer : $\alpha = 1$, $\beta = 9$.

5. Find the distance between the vectors x and y where $x = (6, 3, -2, -4, 1)$ and $y = (3, -1, 0, -7, -2)$.

Answer : $\sqrt{47}$.

6. Find λ such that $||x - y|| = 6$ where $x = (4, \lambda, 1, -3)$ and $y = (3, -1, 6, -2)$

Answer : $\lambda = 2, -4$.

7. Consider points P (3, λ, –2) and Q (5, 3, 4) in $\mathbb{R}^3$. Find λ so that $\overrightarrow{PQ}$ is orthogonal to the vector (4, –3, 2).

Answer : $\lambda = -\frac{11}{3}$.

8. Let $u = (5 - 3i,\ 2 + 3i)$ and $v = (3 + 5i,\ 1 - 2i)$.

Find (i) $2u + 3v$, (ii) $2iu$, (iii) $(2 - 5i)\,v$

(iv) $u \cdot v$, $v \cdot u$ (v) $\|u\|$ and $\|v\|$.

Answers : (i) $(19 + 9i,\ 7 + 0i)$, (ii) $(6 + 10i,\ -6 + 4i)$

(iii) $(31 - 5i,\ -8 - 9i)$ (iv) $-4 - 27i,\ -4 + 27i$

(v) $\sqrt{47}, \sqrt{39}$.

9. Find the dot products $u \cdot v$ and $v \cdot u$ where

$u = (3 - 2i,\ 5i,\ 1 + 3i)$ and $v = (5 + 2i,\ 2 - 3i,\ 7 + 4i)$.

Answers : $u \cdot v = 15 + 11i$

$v \cdot u = 15 - 11i$

10. Normalize the following vectors :

(i) $u = (5, -2, -3, 7, -1)$ (ii) $v = (2, -1, 0, -7, 2)$

Answers : (i) $\left(\frac{5}{2\sqrt{11}}, \frac{-2}{2\sqrt{11}}, \frac{-3}{2\sqrt{11}}, \frac{7}{2\sqrt{11}}, \frac{-1}{2\sqrt{11}}\right)$.

(ii) $\left(\frac{2}{\sqrt{58}}, \frac{-1}{\sqrt{58}}, \frac{0}{\sqrt{58}}, \frac{-7}{\sqrt{58}}, \frac{-2}{\sqrt{58}}\right)$.

CamScanner

CHAPTER SIX

VECTOR SPACES

6.1 Binary operation (or composition) on a set

It is a rule by which two elements can be combined together to give a new element. Such a rule may be addition, subtraction, multiplication and so on. The most fundamental concept for studying algebraic structures is that of binary operation on a set.

Definition : Let S be a non-empty set. Then

$S \times S = \{(a, b) : a \in S, b \in S\}$. A **binary operation** on a set S is a function (or mapping) from $S \times S$ into S; i. e if $f : S \times S \to S$, then f is said to be a **binary operation** on the set S.

Often we use the symbols $*$, o, + , $\times$, ... etc to denote the binary operations on set. Thus '$*$' will be a binary operation on S if and only if $a * b \in S$ for every $a, b \in S$ and $a*b$ is unique.

A binary operation on a set S is also sometimes called a **binary composition** in the set S. If $a*b \in S$ for every $a, b \in S$, then we also say that S is **closed** with respect to the composition denoted by '$*$'.

A set having one or more binary operations is known as **algebraic structure.**

Now we will define some algebraic structures such as Groups, Rings, Fields and Vector Spaces using binary operations.

6.2 Definition of group with examples

A group G is a non-empty set of elements for which a binary operation $*$ is defined. This operation satisfies the following axioms :

(i) **Closure,** If $a, b \in G$ implies that $a * b \in G$.

(ii) **Associativity.** If $a, b, c \in G$ implies that

$$(a * b) * c = a * (b * c)$$

CamScanner

(iii) **Identity.** There exists a unique element $e \in G$ (called the **identity element**) such that $a * e = e * a = a$ for all $a \in G$.

(iv) **Inverse.** For every $a \in G$ there exists an element $a' \in G$ (called the **inverse** of a) such that $a * a' = a' * a = e$.

When the binary operation is **addition** G is called an **additive group** and when the binary operation is multiplication G is called a **multiplicative group.**

A group G is called **abelian** (or **commutative**) if for every $a, b \in G$, $a * b = b * a$.

Example 1. The set $\{1, -1\}$ is a group with respect to the binary operation of multiplication.

Example 2. The set $\{1, -1, i, -i\}$ where $i = \sqrt{-1}$ is a group with respect to the binary operation of multiplication.

Example 3. The set of all integers, i. e. $\{..., -3, -2, -2, -1, 0, 1, 2, 3, ...\}$ is a group with respect to the binary operation of addition.

6.3 Definition of ring with examples

A **ring** R is an **additive abelian group** with the following additional properties :

(i) The group R is **closed** with respect to the binary operation multiplication. i.e $a, b \in R \Rightarrow ab \in R$

(ii) Multiplication is **associative** i. e.

$(ab)c = a(bc)$ for all $a, b, c \in R$.

(iii) Multiplication is **distributive** with respect to addition on both the left and the right, that is,

$$\left.\begin{aligned} a(b + c) &= ab + ac \\ (b + c)a &= ba + ca \end{aligned}\right\} \text{ for all } a, b, c \in R.$$

Example 1. The set $Z = \{0, \pm 1, \pm 2, ...\}$ is a ring under the binary operations of ordinary addition and multiplication.

Example 2. Consider the set $Z = \{0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5\}$.

Z is ring under the binary operations of addition and multiplication modulo 6.

6.4 Definition of field with examples

A **field** is a commutative ring with unit element in which every non-zero element has a multiplicative inverse.

Examples of fields are the ring of rational numbers, the ring of real numbers and the ring of complex numbers.

6.5 Field properties of real numbers

For every pair of real numbers a and b there corresponds a real number called their **sum** and is denoted by a + b. The addition composition has the following properties :

A(1) $a + b = b + a$ for every a, b in R **(commutative).**

A(2) $(a + b) + c = a + (b + c)$ for every a, b, c in R **(Associative)**

A (3) There exists a real number, viz 0 such that

$a + 0 = 0 + a = a$ **(existense of additive identity)**

A (4) To each real number a, there corresponds a real number, viz (–a) such that $(-a) + a = a + (-a) = o$

(existence of additive inverse)

Also for every pair of real numbers a and b there corresponds a real number called their **product** and is denoted by ab. The multiplication composition has the following properties :

M (1) $ab = ba$ for every a, b in R **(Commutative)**

M (2) $(ab)\,c = a\,(bc)$ for every a, b, c in R **(Associative)**

M (3) There exists a real number, viz 1 such that for every

$a \in R$ $1a = a1 = a$. **(existence of multiplicative identity)**

M (4) To each real number $a \neq 0$, there corresponds another, viz $\frac{1}{a}$ such that $\left(\frac{1}{a}\right) a = a \left(\frac{1}{a}\right) = 1$

(existence of multiplicative inverse)

AM (1) $a(b + c) = ab + ac$ for every a, b, c in R

(Distributive law)

6.6 Definition of a vector space (or linear space)

A **vector space** over an arbitrary field F is a non-empty set V, whose elements are called **vectors** for which two operations are prescribed. The first operation, called **vector addition**, assigns to each pair of vectors u and v in V a vector denoted by u + v, called their **sum**. The second operation, called **scalar multiplication** assings to each vector v in V and each scalar α in F a vector denoted by α v which is in V. The two operations are required to satisfy the following axioms :

A (1) **Addition is commutative.**

For all vectors $u, v \in V$, $u + v = v + u$.

A (2) **Addition is associative**

For all vectors $u, v, w \in V$, $(u + v) + w = u + (v + w)$

A (3) **Existence of O (zero vector).**

There exists a vector $O \in V$ such that for all $v \in V$

$v + O = O + v = v$.

A (4) **Existence of negative.**

For each $v \in V$ there is a vector

$-v \in V$ for which $v + (-v) = (-v) + v = 0$

M (1) For any scalar $\alpha \in F$ and any

vectors $u, v \in V$, $\alpha(u + v) = \alpha u + \alpha v$

M(2) For any scalars $\alpha, \beta \in F$ and any

vector $v \in V$, $(\alpha + \beta)v = \alpha v + \beta v$.

M (3) For any scalars $\alpha, \beta \in F$ and any

vector $v \in V$, $(\alpha\beta)v = \alpha(\beta v)$,

M (4) For each $v \in V$, $1v = v$

where 1 is the unit scalar and $1 \in F$.

For some applications it is necessary to consider vector spaces where the scalars are complex numbers rather than the real numbers. Such vector spaces are called **complex vector spaces.**

Vector spaces are also sometimes called **linear spaces.**

6.7 Examples of vector space

Example 1. $\mathbb{R}^2 = \{(a, b) \mid a, b \in \mathbb{R}\}$ is a vector space over the field $F = \mathbb{R}$ with respect to the operations of vector addition in $\mathbb{R}^2$ and scalar multiplication on $\mathbb{R}^2$.

$\mathbb{R}^2$ represents the set of all points in the plane.

Example 2. $\mathbb{R}^3 = \{(a, b, c) \mid a, b, c \in \mathbb{R}\}$ is a vector space over the field $F = \mathbb{R}$ with respect to the operations of vector addition in $\mathbb{R}^3$ and scalar multiplication on $\mathbb{R}^3$.

$\mathbb{R}^3$ represents the set of all points in space.

Example 3. Let V be any plane through the origin in $\mathbb{R}^3$. Then the points in V form a vector space under the standard addition and scalar multiplication operations for vectors in $\mathbb{R}^3$.

Example 4. For any arbitrary field F and any integer n, the set of all n-tuples $(u_1, u_2, \ldots, u_n)$ of elements of F is a vector space over F under vector addition and scalar multiplication given by $(u_1, u_2, \ldots, u_n) + (v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_n) = (u_1 + v_1, u_2 + v_2, \ldots, u_n + v_n)$

$\alpha(u_1, u_2, \ldots, u_n) = (\alpha u_1, \alpha u_2, \ldots, \alpha u_n)$ where $u_i, v_i, \alpha \in F$.

This vector space is generally denoted by F^n. The zero vector in F^n is the n-tuple of zero i. e. $0 = (o, o, \ldots, o)$.

Example 5. Let M be the set of all $m \times n$ matrices with entries from an arbitrary field F. Then M is a vector space over F with respect to the operations of matrix addition and scalar multiplication given by

$$\begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & \cdots & a_{1n} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & \cdots & a_{2n} \\ \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots \\ a_{m1} & a_{m2} & \cdots & a_{mn} \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} b_{11} & b_{12} & \cdots & b_{1n} \\ b_{21} & b_{22} & \cdots & b_{2n} \\ \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots \\ b_{m1} & b_{m2} & \cdots & b_{mn} \end{bmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{bmatrix} a_{11} + b_{11} & a_{12} + b_{12} & \dots & a_{1n} + b_{1n} \\ a_{21} + b_{21} & a_{22} + b_{22} & \dots & a_{2n} + b_{2n} \\ \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots \\ a_{m1} + b_{m1} & a_{m2} + b_{m2} & \dots & a_{mn} + b_{mn} \end{bmatrix}$$

and $\alpha \begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & \dots & a_{1n} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & \dots & a_{2n} \\ \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots \\ a_{m1} & a_{m2} & \dots & a_{mn} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \alpha a_{11} & \alpha a_{12} & \dots & \alpha a_{1n} \\ \alpha a_{21} & \alpha a_{22} & \dots & \alpha a_{2n} \\ \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots \\ \alpha a_{m1} & \alpha a_{m2} & \dots & \alpha a_{mn} \end{bmatrix}$

where a_{ij}, b_{ij} and $\alpha \in F$.

Example 6. Let V be the set of all continuous real valued functions defined on the closed interval [0, 1]. For any f, g $\in$ V and $\alpha \in \mathbb{R}$, define f + g and αf by $(f + g)(x) = f(x) + g(x)$

$(\alpha f)(x) = \alpha f(x)$ for every x in [0, 1].

Under these operations V becomes a vector space over $\mathbb{R}$. (since the sum of continuous functions and scalar multiple of any continuous function are continuous)

Example 7. Let V be the set of all polynomials

$a_0 x^n + a_1 x^{n-1} + a_2 x^{n-2} + \dots + a_{n-1} x + a_n$ with co-efficients a_i from an arbitrary field F. Then V is a vector space over F with respect to the usual operations of addition of polynomials and multiplication by a constant.

Example 8. Let S denote the set of all pairs of positive real numbers. $u = (u_1, u_2)$, $v = (v_1, v_2)$,

Define $u + v = (u_1 v_1, u_2 v_2)$ and $\alpha u = (u_1^{\alpha}, u_2^{\alpha})$ (α is any scalar)

where $u_1 v_1$ and $u_2 v_2$ are the usual products of real numbers and u_1^{α} and u_2^{α} are the αth powers. S together with this prescription for addition and scalar multiplication is a vector space which we denote by M^2.

Example 9. Let $\mathbb{R}_p$ be the set of all positive real numbers and define for $x, y \in \mathbb{R}_p$ a vector sum by $x + y = xy$ where the product on the right is the usual product of numbers. If a is any number and $x \in \mathbb{R}_p$ define $a\,x = x^a$, that is, the number x raised to the a power.

We claim that with these definitions of vector addition and scalar multiplication $\mathbb{R}_p$ becomes a vector space.

Example 10. The set of all continuous functions $y = f(x), -\infty < x < +\infty$ satisfying the differential equation $y'' - y' - 2y = 0$ is a vector space. (In fact any solution of this differential equation is a linear combination of $y = e^{-x}$ and $y = e^{2x}$).

Theorem 6.1 Let V be a vector space over an arbitrary field F. Then,

(i) For any scalar $\alpha \in F$ and $0 \in V$, $\alpha 0 = 0$.

(ii) For $o \in F$ and any vector $v \in V$, $ov = 0$

(iii) For $\alpha \in F$ and $v \in V$, $(-\alpha)\, v = \alpha(-v) = -\alpha v$.

(iv) If $\alpha v = 0$, where $\alpha \in F$ and $v \in V$, then $\alpha = o$ or $v = 0$.

Proof : (i) $\alpha 0 = \alpha\,(0 + 0) = \alpha 0 + \alpha 0$

Adding $-\alpha 0$ to both sides, we get

$(-\alpha 0) + \alpha 0 = (-\alpha 0) + (\alpha 0 + \alpha 0)$

$= (-\alpha 0 + \alpha 0) + \alpha 0 = 0 + \alpha 0$

or, $0 = 0 + \alpha 0 = \alpha 0 \therefore \alpha 0 = 0$.

(ii) $0 = ov + (-ov) = (o + o)\, v + (-ov)$

$= (ov + ov) + (-ov)$

$= (ov + (ov + -ov) = ov + 0 = ov$

$\therefore ov = 0$.

(iii) $0 = \alpha 0 = \alpha(v + (-v)) = \alpha v + \alpha(-v)$

Adding $-\alpha v$ to both sides, we get

$-\alpha v + 0 = -\alpha v + (\alpha v + \alpha(-v))$

$= (-\alpha v + \alpha v) + \alpha(-v)$

$= 0 + \alpha(-v)$

or, $-\alpha v = \alpha(-v) \therefore \alpha(-v) = -\alpha v$

Again, $0 = ov = (\alpha + (-\alpha))\, v = \alpha v + (-\alpha) v$

Adding $-\alpha v$ to both sides, we get

$$-\alpha v + 0 = -\alpha v + (\alpha v + (-\alpha) v)$$
$$= (-\alpha v + \alpha v) + (-\alpha)v$$
$$= ((-\alpha) + \alpha)v + (-\alpha)v$$
$$= \alpha v + (-\alpha v) = 0 + (-\alpha) v$$

or, $-\alpha v = (-\alpha)v \quad \therefore (-\alpha) v = -\alpha v$.

(iv) Suppose that $\alpha v = 0$ and $\alpha \neq o$, then, there exists a scalar $\alpha^{-1} \in F$ such that $\alpha^{-1}\alpha = 1$, hence

$$v = 1v = (\alpha^{-1} \alpha)v = \alpha^{-1} (\alpha v) = \alpha^{-1}(0) = 0.$$

Definition of Cartesian or Euclidean space

Let n be a positive integer. The cartesian n–space denoted by $\mathbb{R}^n$ is the set of all sequences $(u_1, u_2, \ldots, u_n)$ of n real numbers together with two operations

$$(u_1, u_2, \ldots, u_n) + (v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_n) = (u_1 + v_1, u_2 + v_2, \ldots, u_n + v_n)$$

and $\alpha (u_1, u_2, \ldots, u_n) = (\alpha u_1, \alpha u_2, \ldots, \alpha u_n)$.

In particular, $\mathbb{R}^1 = \mathbb{R}$ is the set of all real numbers with their usual addition and multiplication.

Theorem 6.2 For each positive integer n, Euclidean space $\mathbb{R}^n$ is a vector space.

Proof : We shall have to show that $\mathbb{R}^n$ satisfies all axioms of a vector space.

(i) Let $u = (u_1, u_2, \ldots, u_n)$ and $v = (v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_n)$ be in $\mathbb{R}^n$ then

$$u + v = (u_1, u_2, \ldots, u_n) + (v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_n)$$
$$= (u_1 + v_1, u_2 + v_2, \ldots, u_n + v_n)$$
$$= (v_1 + u_1, v_2 + u_2, \ldots, v_n + u_n) = v + u.$$ So axiom A (1) is true.

(ii) Let $u = (u_1, u_2, \ldots, u_n)$, $v = (v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_n)$ and $w = (w_1, w_2, \ldots, w_n)$ be in $\mathbb{R}^n$. Then

$$(u + v) + w = (u_1 + v_1, u_2 + v_2, \ldots, u_n + v_n) + (w_1, w_2, \ldots, w_n)$$
$$= (u_1 + v_1 + w_1, u_2 + v_2 + w_2, \ldots, u_n + v_n + w_n)$$
$$= (u_1, u_2, \ldots, u_n) + (v_1 + w_1, v_2 + w_2, \ldots, v_n + w_n)$$
$$= u + (v + w).$$ So axiom A (2) holds.

(iii) Let $0 = (o, o, \ldots, o)$ be in $\mathbb{R}^n$. Then for any $u = (u_1, u_2, \ldots, u_n)$ in $\mathbb{R}^n$ we will have

$$u + 0 = (u_1, u_2, \ldots, u_n) + (o, o, \ldots, o)$$
$$= (u_1 + o, u_2 + o, \ldots, u_n + o)$$
$$= (u_1, u_2, \ldots, u_n) = u.$$

Moreover, if $v = (v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_n)$ is any vector in $\mathbb{R}^n$ such that $u + v = u$, then $(u_1 + v_1, u_2 + v_2, \ldots, u_n + v_n) = (u_1, u_2, \ldots, u_n)$

$$\left.\begin{array}{l} \text{Therefore, } u_1 + v_1 = u_1 \text{ implies } v_1 = 0 \\ \qquad u_2 + v_2 = u_2 \text{ implies } v_2 = 0 \\ \qquad \ldots \quad \ldots \quad \ldots \quad \ldots \\ \qquad u_n + v_n = u_n \text{ implies } v_n = 0 \end{array}\right\}$$

i. e. $v = (o, o, \ldots, o) = 0$. Thus 0 is the unit vector with property that $u + 0 = u$ and so the axiom A (3) holds.

(iv) Let $u = (u_1, u_2, \ldots, u_n)$ and set

$-u = (-u_1, -u_2, \ldots, -u_n)$. Then

$$u + (-u) = (u_1, u_2, \ldots, u_n) + (-u_1, -u_2, \ldots, -u_n)$$
$$= (u_1 - u_1, u_2 - u_2, \ldots, u_n - u_n)$$
$$= (o, o, \ldots, o) = 0.$$

Moreover, if $w = (w_1, w_2, \ldots, w_n)$ is any vector in $\mathbb{R}^n$ such that $u + w = 0$, then $(u_1 + w_1, u_2 + w_2, \ldots, u_n + w_n) = (o, o, \ldots, o)$ and therefore, $u_1 + w_1 = 0$ implies $w_1 = -u_1$

$u_2 + w_2 = 0$ implies $w_2 = -u_2$

... ...

... ...

$u_n + w_n = 0$ implies $w_n = -u_n$

i. e. $w = -u$. Thus $-u$ is the unique vector with the property that $u + (-u) = 0$ and so axiom A (4) holds.

(v) Let α be a real number (scalar) and $u = (u_1, u_2, \ldots, u_n)$ and $v = (v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_n)$ be vectors in $\mathbb{R}^n$. Then

$$\alpha(u + v) = \alpha(u_1 + v_1, u_2 + v_2, \ldots, u_n + v_n)$$
$$= (\alpha(u_1 + v_1), \alpha(u_2 + v_2), \ldots, \alpha(u_n + v_n))$$
$$= (\alpha u_1 + \alpha v_1, \alpha u_2 + \alpha v_2, \ldots, \alpha u_n + \alpha v_n)$$
$$= (\alpha u_1, \alpha u_2, \ldots, \alpha u_n) + (\alpha v_1, \alpha v_2, \ldots, \alpha v_n)$$
$$= \alpha(u_1, u_2, \ldots, u_n) + \alpha(v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_n) = \alpha u + \alpha v.$$

So that axiom M(1) holds.

(vi) Let α, β be the real numbers (scalars) and

$u = (u_1, u_2, \ldots, u_n)$ be in $\mathbb{R}^n$, Then

$$(\alpha + \beta) u = ((\alpha + \beta) u_1, (\alpha + \beta) u_2, \ldots, (\alpha + \beta) u_n)$$
$$= (\alpha u_1 + \beta u_1, \alpha u_2 + \beta u_2, \ldots, \alpha u_n + \beta u_n)$$
$$= (\alpha u_1, \alpha u_2, \ldots, \alpha u_n) + (\beta u_1, \beta u_2, \ldots, \beta u_n)$$
$$= \alpha(u_1, u_2, \ldots, u_n) + \beta(u_1, u_2, \ldots, u_n)$$
$$= \alpha u + \beta u$$ So axiom M (2) is satisfied.

(vii) Let α, β be real numbers (scalars) and $u = (u_1, u_2, \ldots, u_n)$ be in $\mathbb{R}^n$. Then $(\alpha\beta) u = \alpha\beta (u_1, u_2, \ldots, u_n) = (\alpha\beta u_1, \ldots, \alpha\beta u_n)$

$$= \alpha(\beta u_1, \beta u_2, \ldots, \beta u_n)$$
$$= \alpha (\beta(u_1, u_2, \ldots, u_n)) = \alpha (\beta u)$$

So axiom M (3) holds.

(viii) Let 1 be the unit scalar and

$u = (u_1, u_2, \ldots, u_n)$ be in $\mathbb{R}^n$. Then

$$1u = 1(u_1, u_2, \ldots, u_n) = (1u_1, 1u_2, \ldots, 1u_n)$$
$$= (u_1, u_2, \ldots, u_n) = u$$

So axiom M (4) is satisfied.

Therefore, $\mathbb{R}^n$ is a vector space.

Theorem 6.3 Let V be the set of all functions from a non-empty set S into an arbitrary field F. For any functions $f, g \in V$ and any scalar $\alpha \in F$ let $f + g$ and αf be the functions in V defined by $(f + g)(x) = f(x) + g(x)$ and $(\alpha f)(x) = \alpha f(x)$ for every $x \in S$.

Prove that V is a vector space over F.

Proof : Since S is non-empty, V is also non-empty. Now we have to show that all the axioms of a vector space hold.

(i) Let f, g∈V, Then

$$(f + g)(x) = f(x) + g(x) = g(x) + f(x)$$
$$= (g + f)(x) \text{ for every } x \in S.$$

Thus f + g = g + f. So axiom A (1) holds.

(ii) Let f, g, h∈V, To show that (f + g) + h = f + (g + h), It is required to show that function (f + g) + h and the function f + (g + h)) both assign the same value to each $x \in S$. Now

$$((f + g) + h)(x) = (f + g)(x) + h(x) = (f(x) + g(x)) + h(x).$$
$$(f + (g + h))(x) = f(x) + (g + h)(x) = f(x) + (g(x) + h(x)).$$

for every $x \in S$.

But f (x), g(x) and h (x) are scalars in the field F where addition of scalars is associative.

Hence $(f(x) + g(x)) + h(x) = f(x) + (g(x) + h(x))$

Accordingly, (f + g) + h = f + (g + h).

So axiom A (2) is satisfied.

(iii) Let O denote the zero function.

$O(x) = 0$ for every $x \in S$.

Then for any function $f \in V$

$$(f + 0)(x) = f(x) + 0(x) = f(x) + 0 = f(x)$$

for every $x \in S$.

Thus f + 0 = f and 0 is the zero vector in V.

So axiom A (3) holds.

(iv) For any function $f \in V$, let – f be the function defined by $(-f)x = -f(x)$.

Then $(f + (-f))(x) = f(x) + (-f)(x) = f(x) - f(x) = 0 = 0(x)$

for every $x \in S$. Hence $f + (-f) = 0$

So axiom A (4) is satisfied.

(v) Let $\alpha \in F$ and $f, g \in V$.

Then $(\alpha(f + g))(x) = \alpha((f + g)(x)) = \alpha(f(x) + g(x))$

$= \alpha f(x) + \alpha g(x)$

$= (\alpha f)(x) + (\alpha g)(x) = (\alpha f + \alpha g)(x)$ for every $x \in S$.

[Since α, $f(x)$, $g(x)$ are scalars in the field F where multiplication is distributive over addition]

Hence $\alpha(f + g) = \alpha f + \alpha g$.

So axiom M (1) is satisfied.

(vi) Let $\alpha, \beta \in F$ and $f \in V$.

Then $((\alpha + \beta) f)(x) = (\alpha + \beta) f(x) = \alpha f(x) + \beta f(x)$

$= (\alpha f)(x) + (\beta f)(x)$

$= (\alpha f + \beta f)(x)$ for every $x \in S$.

Hence $(\alpha + \beta) f = \alpha f + \beta f$.

So axiom M (2) holds.

(vii) Let $\alpha, \beta \in F$ and $f \in V$.

Then $((\alpha\beta) f)(x) = (\alpha\beta) f(x) = \alpha(\beta f(x))$

$= \alpha(\beta f)(x) = (\alpha(\beta f))(x)$ for every $x \in S$.

Hence $(\alpha\beta) f = \alpha(\beta f)$ So axiom M (3) holds.

(viii) Let $f \in V$, then for the unit scalar $1 \in F$

$(1f)(x) = 1f(x) = f(x)$ for every $x \in S$.

Hence $1f = f$. So axiom M (4) is satisfied

Since all the axioms are satisfied, so V is a vector space over F.

6.3 Subspaces of a vector space

Let W be a non-empty subset of a vector space V over the field F. We call W a **subspace** of V if and only if W is a vector space over the field F under the laws of vector addition and scalar multiplication defined on V, or equivalently, W is a **subspace** of V whenever $w_1, w_2 \in W$, $\alpha, \beta \in F$ implies that $\alpha w_1 + \beta w_2 \in W$.

6.9 Examples of subspaces

Example 1. Let V be any vector space over the field F. Then the set {0} consisting of the zero vector alone and also the entire space V are subspaces of V.

Example 2. Consider the vector space $\mathbb{R}^2 = \{(a, b) \mid a, b \in \mathbb{R}\}$.

Then $W_1 = \{(a, 0) \mid a \in \mathbb{R}\}$, $W_2 = \{(0, b) \mid b \in \mathbb{R}\}$ and

$W_3 = \{(a, b) \mid a = b \text{ and } a, b \in \mathbb{R}\}$ are subspaces of $\mathbb{R}^2$.

W_1 and W_2 represent the sets of all points on the x-axis and on the y-axis respectively.

Also W_3 represents the set of all points on the line $y = x$.

Example 3. Consider the vector space

$\mathbb{R}^3 = \{(a, b, c) \mid a, b, c \in \mathbb{R}\}$

Then $W_1 = \{(a, b, 0) \mid a, b \in \mathbb{R}\}$, $W_2 = \{0, b, c) \mid b, c \in \mathbb{R}\}$

and $W_3 = \{(a, o, c) \mid a, c \in \mathbb{R}\}$ are subspaces of $\mathbb{R}^3$. W_1, W_2 and W_3 represent the sets of all points in the X–Y, Y–Z and Z–X planes respectively.

Example 4. Consider the vector space

$\mathbb{R}^3 = \{(a, b, c) \mid a, b, c \in \mathbb{R}^3\}$.

Then $W_1 = \{(a, 0,0) \mid a \in \mathbb{R}\}$, $W_2 = \{(0, b, 0) \mid b \in \mathbb{R}\}$

and $W_3 = \{(0,0,c) \mid c \in \mathbb{R}\}$ are subspaces of $\mathbb{R}^3$. W_1, W_2 and W_3 represent the sets of all points on the x-axis, y-axis and z -axis respectively.

Example 5. Let M_{22} be the vector space of all square 2×2 matrices. Then the set W of all 2×2 matrices having zeroes on the main diagonal is a subspace of the vector space M_{22}.

Example 6. Let V be the vector space of all square $n \times n$ matrices. Then the set consisting of those matrices $A = [a_{ij}]$ for which $a_{ij} = a_{ji}$ called **symmetric matrices** is a subspace of V.

CamScanner

Example 7. Let V be the vector space of all functions of a real variable x and let W be the set of all functions $f \in V$ for which $f(5) = 0$. Suppose that $f, g \in W$ and let $h = f + g$. Then $f(5) = 0$, $g(5) = 0$ and so $h(5) = f(5) + g(5) = 0 + 0 = 0$.

It follows that $h \in W$ and so W is closed under addition. Again let $k = \alpha f$ where α is any scalar. $k(5) = \alpha f(5) = \alpha 0 = 0$ whence $k \in W$. Clearly, W is closed under scalar multiplication. Thus W is a subspace of V.

Example 8. The set of all continuous functions is a subspace of the vector space of all real valued functions.

Example 9. Let C be the set of all complex numbers. Then C is a vector space over the real field $\mathbb{R}$.

Let $W = \{ib \mid b \in R, i = \sqrt{(-1)}\}$. Then W is a subspace of C.

Theorem 6.4 W is a subspace of V if and only if

(i) W is non-empty

(ii) W is closed under vector addition i, e, $v, w \in W$ implies that $v + w \in W$.

(iii) W is colsed under scalar multiplication i, e, $v \in W$ implies that $\alpha v \in W$ for every $\alpha \in F$.

Proof : Suppose that the given three conditions (i) (ii) (iii) hold in W; then W is non-empty and closed under vector addition and scalar multiplication. Since the vectors in W belong to V axioms A(1), A(2), M(1), M(2), M(3) and M(4) hold in W. Hence we have only to show that A(3), A(4) hold in W. By condition (i) W is non-empty, say $u \in W$, then by condition (iii) $0u = 0 \in W$ and $v + 0 = v$ for every $v \in W$. Hence A(3) holds in W.

Again, if $v \in W$ then $(-1)v = -v \in W$ and $v + (-v) = 0$

Hence A(4) holds in W. Thus W is a subspace of V.

Conversely, if W is a subspace of V then clearly the given conditions (i), (ii), (iii) hold in W. Hence the theorem is proved.

CamScanner

Theorem 6.5 A non-empty subset W of a vector space V over the field F is a subspace of V if and only if

(i) $u, v \in W \Rightarrow u - v \in W$ (ii) $\alpha \in F, u \in W \Rightarrow \alpha u \in W$.

Proof : The conditions are necessary

If W is a subspace of V, then W is an abelian group with respect to vector addition.

i, e, $u, v \in W \Rightarrow u, -v \in W$

$\Rightarrow u + (-v) \in W$

$\Rightarrow u - v \in W$.

Also W must be closed under scalar multiplication, i, e $\alpha \in F$, $u \in W \Rightarrow \alpha u \in W$. Thus conditions (i) and (ii) are necessary.

The conditions are sufficient

Let w be a non-empty subset of V satisfying the two given conditions, From condition (i), we have

$u \in W \Rightarrow u - u \in W \Rightarrow O \in W$.

Thus zero vector of V belongs to W and it will also be the zero vector of W.

Now $O \in W$, $u \in W \Rightarrow O - u \in W \Rightarrow -u \in W$.

Thus additive inverse of each element of W is also in W.

Again, $u \in W$, $v \in W \Rightarrow u \in W$, $-v \in W$

$\Rightarrow u - (-v) \in W$

$\Rightarrow u + v \in W$.

Hence W is closed with respect to vector addition.

Since the elements of W are also the elements of V, therefore vector addition will be commutative as well as associative in W.

Hence W is an abelian group under vector addition. Also from condition (ii) W is closed under scalar multiplication. The remaining postulates of a vector space will hold in W since they hold in V of which W is a subset. Thus W is a subspace of V.

Theorem 6.6 A non-empty subset W of a vector space V over the field F is a subspace of V if and only if

$\alpha, \beta \in F$ and $u, v \in W \Rightarrow \alpha u + \beta v \in W$.

Proof : The condition is necessary

If W is a subspace of V, then W must be closed under vector addition and scalar multiplication, Therefore,

$\alpha \in IR$, and $u \in W \Rightarrow \alpha u \in W$

$\beta \in F$ and $v \in W \Rightarrow \beta v \in W$.

Now $\alpha u \in W$ and $\beta v \in W \Rightarrow \alpha u + \beta v \in W$.

Thus the condition is necessary.

The condition is sufficient

Suppose that W is a non-empty subset of V satisfying the given condition, i.e $\alpha, \beta \in F$ and $u, v \in W \Rightarrow \alpha u + \beta v \in W$.

Let $\alpha = \beta = 1$, then $1 \in F$ and $u, v \in W \Rightarrow 1u + 1v \in W$

i.e, $u + v \in W$

[since $u \in W \Rightarrow u \in V$ and $1u = u \in V$.]

Thus W is closed under vector addition,

Now taking $\alpha = -1$, $\beta = o$, we see that if $u \in W$,

then $(-1)\, u + o\, u \in W \Rightarrow -(1u) + O \in W \Rightarrow -u \in W$.

Therefore, the additive inverse of each element of W is also in W.

Now $u \in W$ and $-u \in W$.

$\therefore u + (-u) \in W \Rightarrow O \in W$.

Thus zero vector of V belongs to W and it will also be the zero vector of W.

Since the elements of W are also the elements of V, therefore, vector addition will be associative as well as commutative in W, Therefore, W is an abelian group with respect to vector addition,

Now taking $v = O$, we see that if $\alpha, \beta \in F$ and $u \in W$, then $\alpha u + \beta O \in W$ i.e $\alpha u + O \in W \Rightarrow \alpha u \in W$.

Thus w is closed under scalar multiplication. The remaining postulates of a vector space will hold in W since they hold in V of which W is a subset. Hence W is a subspace of V.

Definition : Let S and T be two sets. By $S \cap T$ we mean the **interesection** of S and T, the set of all elements common to S and T, By $S \cup T$ we mean the **union** of S and T, the set of all elements which are in at least one of S and T.

Theorem 6.7 The intersection of two subspaces S and T of a vector space V is also a subspace of V.

Proof : Since S and T are subspaces of V, they are non-empty and clearly $0 \in S$ and $0 \in T$. Therefore, $0 \in S \cap T$ and hence $S \cap T \neq \emptyset$.

Now let $u, v \in S \cap T$ then $u, v \in S$ and $u, v \in T$. Since S and T are subspaces of V, $u, v \in S$ implies that $\alpha u + \beta v \in S$ where $\alpha, \beta \in F$. Similarly, $u, v \in T$ implies that $\alpha u + \beta v \in T$ where $\alpha, \beta \in F$.

Hence $u, v \in S \cap T$ implies that $\alpha u + \beta v \in S \cap T$ for $\alpha, \beta \in F$.

Therefore, $S \cap T$ is subspace of the vector space V.

It is to be noted that the union of S and T is not a subspace of V unless $S \subset T$ or $T \subset S$,

[the symbol "$\subset$" means contained in]

Theorem 5.8 The intersection of any family of subspaces of a vector space is a subspace.

Proof : Let $\{S_i \mid i \in I\}$ be any family of subspaces of a vector space V over the field F. Let $S = \bigcap_{i \in I} S_i$.

Since $0 \in S_i$ for every $i \in I$, we have $0 \in S$. Hence S is a non-empty subset of V. Now $u, v \in S$ and $\alpha, \beta \in F$ implies that $u \in S_i$, $v \in S_i$ for every $i \in I$ as $S = \bigcap_{i \in I} S_i$ and hence $\alpha u + \beta v \in S_i$ for every $i \in I$, since each S_i is a subspace of V.

$\therefore \alpha u + \beta v \in S$.

Therefore, S is a subspace of V.

WORKED OUT EXAMPLES

Example 1. Show that $S = \{(a, o, c) : a, c \in \mathbb{R}\}$ is a subspace of the vector space $\mathbb{R}^3$.

Proof : For $0 \in \mathbb{R}^3$, $0 = (o, o, o) \in S$

Since the second component of 0 is o,

Hence S is non-empty.

For any vectors $u = (a, o, c)$ and $v = (a', o, c')$ in S and any scalars (real numbers) α, β, we have

$$\alpha u + \beta v = \alpha (a, o, c) + \beta(a', o, c')$$
$$= (\alpha a, o, \alpha c) + (\beta a', o, \beta c')$$
$$= (\alpha a + \beta a', o, \alpha c + \beta c')$$

Since second component is zero.

Thus $\alpha u + \beta v \in S$ and so S is a subspace of $\mathbb{R}^3$.

Example 2. Show that

$T = \{(a, b, c, d) \in \mathbb{R}^4 : 2a - 3b + 5c - d\}$ is a subspace of $\mathbb{R}^4$.

Proof : For $0 \in \mathbb{R}^4$, $0 = (o, o, o, o) \in T$

Since $2.o - 3.o + 5.o - o = o$

Hence T is non-empty.

Suppose that $u = (a, b, c, d)$ and $v = (a', b', c', d')$ are in T then $2a - 3b + 5c - d = o$ and $2a' - 3b' + 5c' - d' = o$.

Now for any scalars (real numbers) α, β

We have $\alpha u + \beta v = \alpha(a, b, c, d) + \beta(a', b', c', d')$

$= (\alpha a, \alpha b, \alpha c, \alpha d) + (\beta a', \beta b' \beta c', \beta d')$

$= (\alpha a + \beta a', \alpha b + \beta b', \alpha c + \beta c', \alpha d + \beta d')$

Also we have $2(\alpha a + \beta a') - 3(\alpha b + \beta b') + 5(\alpha c + \beta c') - (\alpha d' + \beta d')$

$= \alpha(2a - 3b + 5c - d) + \beta(2a' - 3b' + 5c' - d') = \alpha o + \beta o = o.$

Thus $\alpha u + \beta v \in T$ and so T is a subspace of $\mathbb{R}^4$.

Example 3. $W = \{(a, b, c) \mid a, b, c \in \mathbb{R}$ and $a - 2b + 3c = 5\}$ is not a subspace of $\mathbb{R}^3$.

For $0 \in \mathbb{R}^3$, $0 = (o, o, o) \notin W$, Since $o - 2.0 + 3.0 = 0 \neq 5$.

Example 4. Let V be the vector space of all square $n \times n$ matrices over the real field $F = \mathbb{R}$.

Show that W is a subspace of V where :

(i) W consists of all symmetric matrices, that is, all matrices $A = [a_{ij}]$ for which $a_{ij} = a_{ji}$. $i, j = 1, 2, 3, \ldots\ldots, n$.

(ii) W consists of all matrices which commute with a given matrix T; that is, $W = \{A \in V : AT = TA\}$. **[D. U. H. T 1986]**

Proof : (i) $O \in W$ since all entries of O are o and hence equal. Now suppose that $A = [a_{ij}]$ and $B = [b_{ij}]$ belong to W, that is, $a_{ij} = a_{ji}$ and $b_{ij} = b_{ji}$.

Then for any scalars $\alpha, \beta \in F$, $\alpha A + \beta B$ is the matrix whose ij-entry is $\alpha a_{ij} + \beta b_{ij}$.

But $\alpha a_{ij} + \beta b_{ij} = \alpha a_{ji} + \beta b_{ji}$. Thus $\alpha A + \beta B$ is also a symmetric matrix. Therefore, $\alpha A + \beta B \in W$.

Hence W is a subspace of V.

(ii) $O \in W$ since $OT = O = TO$. Now suppose that $A, B \in W$; that is, $AT = TA$ and $BT = TB$.

For any scalars $\alpha, \beta \in F$

$$(\alpha A + \beta B)\,T = (\alpha A)\,T + (\beta B)\,T$$
$$= \alpha\,(AT) + \beta(BT)$$
$$= \alpha\,(TA) + \beta(TB)$$
$$= T\,(\alpha A) + T(\beta B)$$
$$= T\,(\alpha A + \beta B).$$

Therefore, $\alpha A + \beta B$ commutes with T. Thus $\alpha A + \beta B \in W$.

Hence W is a subspace of V.

Example 5. Let $V = \mathbb{R}^3$, show that W is not a subspace of V where : **[D. U. P. 1972]**

(i) $W = \{(a, b, c) \mid a \geq 0\}$ i.e W consists of those vectors of $\mathbb{R}^3$ whose first component is non-negative.

(ii) $W = \{(a, b, c) \mid a^2 + b^2 + c^2 \leq 1\}$ i.e W consists of those vectors of $\mathbb{R}^3$ whose lengths do not exceed 1.

[D. U. T. H. 1993, 94]

(iii) $W = \{(a, b, c) \mid a, b, c \in Q\}$ i.e W consists of those vectors of $\mathbb{R}^3$ whose components are rational numbers.

Proof : (i) Let $v = (2, 3, 5) \in W$ and $\alpha = -3 \in \mathbb{R} = F$.

Then $\alpha v = -3\,(2, 3, 5) = (-6, -9, -15) \notin W$, since -6 is negative.

Hence W is not a subspace of V.

(ii) Let $u = (0, 1, 0)$ and $v = (0, 0, 1)$

Then $u \in W$ since $0^2 + 1^2 + 0^2 = 1 \leq 1$

and $v \in W$ since $0^2 + 0^2 + 1^2 = 1 \leq 1$.

Now for any two scalars $\alpha = \beta = 1 \in \mathbb{R} = F$,

$$\alpha u + \beta v = 1\,(0\,1, 0) + 1\,(0, 0, 1)$$
$$= (0, 1, 0) + (0, 0, 1)$$
$$= (0, 1, 1) \notin W$$

Since $o^2 + 1^2 + 1^2 = 2 \nleq 1$.

Hence W is not a subspace of V.

(iii) Let $v = (3, 5, 7) \in W$ and $\alpha = \sqrt{3} \in \mathbb{R} = F$.

Then $\alpha v = \sqrt{3}(3, 5, 7) = (3\sqrt{3}, 5\sqrt{3}, 7\sqrt{3}) \notin W$

since its components are not rational.

Hence W is not a subspace of V.

Example 6. Let V be a vector space of all 2×2 matrices over the real field $\mathbb{R}$. Show that W is not a subspace of V where :

(i) W consists of all matrices with zero determinant;

(ii) W consists of all matrices A for which $A^2 = A$.

Proof : (i) Let $A = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$ and $B = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$

Then $A, B \in W$, since $\det(A) = 0$ and $\det(B) = 0$.

But $A + B = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \notin W$

since $\det(A + B) = -1 \neq 0$.

Hence W is not a subspace of V.

(ii) The unit matrix $I = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$ belongs W, since

$$I^2 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} = I$$

But $4I = \begin{bmatrix} 4 & 0 \\ 0 & 4 \end{bmatrix}$ does not belong to W

Since $(4I)^2 = \begin{bmatrix} 4 & 0 \\ 0 & 4 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 4 & 0 \\ 0 & 4 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 16 & 0 \\ 0 & 16 \end{bmatrix} \neq 4I$.

Hence W is not a subspace of V.

6.10 Linear combination of vectors

Let V be a vector space over the field F and let $v_1, \ldots, v_n \in V$ then any vector $v \in V$ is called a **linear combination** of $v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_n$ if and only if there exist scalars $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \ldots, \alpha_n$ in F such that $v = \alpha_1 v_1 + \alpha_2 v_2 + \ldots + \alpha_n v_n = \sum_{i=1}^{n} \alpha_i v_i$.

Example 7. Consider the vectors $v_1 = (2, 1, 4)$, $v_2 = (1, -1, 3)$ and $v_3 = (3, 2, 5)$ in $\mathbb{R}^3$. Show that $v = (5, 9, 5)$ is a linear combination of v_1, v_2 and v_3.

Proof : In order to show that v is a linear combination of v_1, v_2 and v_3, there must be scalars α_1, α_2 and α_3 in F such that

$$v = \alpha_1 v_1 + \alpha_2 v_2 + \alpha_3 v_3$$

i. e. $(5, 9, 5) = \alpha_1 (2, 1, 4) + \alpha_2 (1, -1, 3) + \alpha_3 (3, 2, 5)$

$$= (2\alpha_1, \alpha_1, 4\alpha_1) + (\alpha_2, -\alpha_2, 3\alpha_2) + (3\alpha_3, 2\alpha_3, 5\alpha_3)$$

$$= (2\alpha_1 + \alpha_2 + 3\alpha_3, \alpha_1 - \alpha_2 + 2\alpha_3, 4\alpha_1 + 3\alpha_2 + 5\alpha_3)$$

Equating corresponding components and forming linear system we get

$$\left.\begin{aligned} 2\alpha_1 + \alpha_2 + 3\alpha_3 &= 5 \\ \alpha_1 - \alpha_2 + 2\alpha_3 &= 9 \\ 4\alpha_1 + 3\alpha_2 + 5\alpha_3 &= 5 \end{aligned}\right\} \qquad (1)$$

Reduce the system (1) to echelon form by elementary operations. Interchange first and second equations Then we have the equivalent system

$$\left.\begin{aligned} \alpha_1 - \alpha_2 + 2\alpha_3 &= 9 \\ 2\alpha_1 + \alpha_2 + 3\alpha_3 &= 5 \\ 4\alpha_1 + 3\alpha_2 + 5\alpha_3 &= 5 \end{aligned}\right\} \qquad (2)$$

We multiply first equation by 2 and by 4 and then subtract from the second and third equations respectively. Then we have the equivalent system

$$\left.\begin{aligned} \alpha_1 - \alpha_2 + 2\alpha_3 &= 9 \\ 3\alpha_2 - \alpha_3 &= -13 \\ 7\alpha_2 - 3\alpha_3 &= -31 \end{aligned}\right\} \qquad (3)$$

We multiply second equation by $\frac{7}{3}$ and then subtract from the third equation. Then we have the equivalent system

$$\left.\begin{aligned} \alpha_1 - \alpha_2 + 2\alpha_3 &= 9 \\ 3\alpha_2 - \alpha_3 &= -13 \\ -\frac{2}{3}\alpha_3 &= -\frac{2}{3} \end{aligned}\right\} \qquad (4)$$

From the third equation, we have $\alpha_3 = 1$. Substituting $\alpha_3 = 1$ in the second equation we get $3\alpha_2 - 1 = -13$ or, $3\alpha_2 = -12$

or, $\alpha_2 = -4$.

Again substituting $\alpha_2 = -4$, $\alpha_3 = 1$ in the first equation, we get $\alpha_1 + 4 + 2 = 9 \quad \therefore \alpha_1 = 3$

So the solution of the system is $\alpha_1 = 3$, $\alpha_2 = -4$, $\alpha_3 = 1$.

Hence $v = 3v_1 - 4v_2 + v_3$.

Therefore, v is a linear combination of v_1, v_2 and v_3.

Example 8. Is the vector $v = (2, -5, 3)$ in $\mathbb{R}^3$ is a linear combination of the vectors

$v_1 = (1, -3, 2)$, $v_2 = (2, -4, -1)$ and $v_3 = (1, -5, 7)$.

Solution : Let $v = \alpha_1 v_1 + \alpha_2 v_2 + \alpha_3 v_3$ where α_1, α_2 and α_3 are unknown scalars.

i.e $(2, -5, 3) = \alpha_1 (1, -3, 2) + \alpha_2 (2, -4, -1) + \alpha_3 (1, -5, 7)$

$$= (\alpha_1, -3\alpha_1, 2\alpha_1) + (2\alpha_2, -4\alpha_2, -\alpha_2) + (\alpha_3, -5\alpha_3, 7\alpha_3)$$

$$= (\alpha_1 + 2\alpha_2 + \alpha_3, -3\alpha_1 - 4\alpha_2 - 5\alpha_3, 2\alpha_1 - \alpha_2 + 7\alpha_3)$$

Equating corresponding components and forming the linear system we get

$$\left.\begin{aligned} \alpha_1 + 2\alpha_2 + \alpha_3 &= 2 \\ -3\alpha_1 - 4\alpha_2 - 5\alpha_3 &= -5 \\ 2\alpha_1 - \alpha_2 + 7\alpha_3 &= 3 \end{aligned}\right\}$$

Reduce the system to echelon form by the elementary operations. We multiply 1st equation by -3 and 2 and then subtract from 2nd & 3rd equations respectively. Then we have the equivalent system

$$\left.\begin{aligned} \alpha_1 + 2\alpha_2 + \alpha_3 &= 2 \\ 2\alpha_2 - 2\alpha_3 &= 1 \\ -5\alpha_2 + 5\alpha_3 &= -1 \end{aligned}\right\}$$

We multiply 2nd equation by $\frac{5}{2}$ and then add with the 3rd equation. Then we have the equivalent system

$$\left.\begin{aligned} \alpha_1 + 2\alpha_2 + \alpha_3 &= 2 \\ 2\alpha_2 - 2\alpha_3 &= 1 \\ 0 + 0 &= \frac{3}{2} \end{aligned}\right\} \Rightarrow \left.\begin{aligned} \alpha_1 + 2\alpha_2 + \alpha_3 &= 2 \\ 2\alpha_2 - 2\alpha_3 &= 1 \\ 0 &= \frac{3}{2} \end{aligned}\right\}$$

This system has an equation of the form $0 = \frac{3}{2}$

which is not true. Hence the above system is inconsistent i.e it has no solution. Thus the vector v is not a linear combination of the given vectors v_1, v_2 and v_3.

Example 9. For which value of λ will be the vector $v = (1, \lambda, 5)$ in $\mathbb{R}^3$ is a linear combination of the vectors $v_1 = (1, -3, 2)$ and $v_2 = (2, -1, 1)$.

Solution : Let $v = \alpha_1 v_1 + \alpha_2 v_2$ where α_1 and α_2 are unknown scalars. i.e $(1, \lambda, 5) = \alpha_1 (1, -3, 2) + \alpha_2 (2, -1, 1)$

$$= (\alpha_1, -3\alpha_1, 2\alpha_1) + (2\alpha_2, -\alpha_2, \alpha_2)$$

$$= (\alpha_1 + 2\alpha_2, -3\alpha_1 - \alpha_2, 2\alpha_1 + \alpha_2)$$

Equating corresponding components and forming the linear system, we have

$$\left.\begin{aligned} \alpha_1 + 2\alpha_2 &= 1 \\ -3\alpha_1 - \alpha_2 &= \lambda \\ 2\alpha_1 + \alpha_2 &= 5 \end{aligned}\right\} \qquad (*)$$

Reduce the system to echelon form by the elementary operations. We multiply 1st equation by -3 and 2 and then subtract from 2nd and 3rd equations respectively. Then we have the equivalent system

$$\left.\begin{aligned} \alpha_1 + 2\alpha_2 &= 1 \\ 5\alpha_2 &= \lambda + 3 \\ -3\alpha_2 &= 3 \end{aligned}\right\}$$

We multiply 3rd equation by $-\frac{1}{3}$. Then we have the equivalent system

$$\left.\begin{aligned} \alpha_1 + 2\alpha_2 &= 1 \\ 5\alpha_2 &= \lambda + 3 \\ \alpha_2 &= -1 \end{aligned}\right\}$$

This system has solution for $\lambda = -8$ and the solution is $\alpha_1 = 3, \alpha_2 = -1$

i.e the system (*) has solution for $\lambda = -8$.

Hence v is a linear combination v_1 and v_2 if $\lambda = -8$.

Example 10. Write the matrix $A = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & -1 \\ 1 & -2 \end{bmatrix}$ as a linear combination of the matrices $A_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 0 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$, $A_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$ and $A_3 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$. **[D. U. H. T. 1994]**

Solution : Set A as a linear combination of A_1, A_2 and A_3 using the unknowns α_1, α_2 and α_3.

$A = \alpha_1 A_1 + \alpha_2 A_2 + \alpha_3 A_3$.

that is, $\begin{bmatrix} 3 & -1 \\ 1 & -2 \end{bmatrix} = \alpha_1 \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 0 & -1 \end{bmatrix} + \alpha_2 \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} + \alpha_3 \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$

or, $\begin{bmatrix} 3 & -1 \\ 1 & -2 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \alpha_1 & \alpha_1 \\ 0 & -\alpha_1 \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} \alpha_2 & \alpha_2 \\ -\alpha_2 & 0 \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} \alpha_3 & -\alpha_3 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$

$= \begin{bmatrix} \alpha_1 + \alpha_2 + \alpha_3 & \alpha_1 + \alpha_2 - \alpha_3 \\ 0 - \alpha_2 + 0 & -\alpha_1 + 0 + 0 \end{bmatrix}$

Equating corresponding components and forming the linear system we get

$$\left.\begin{aligned} \alpha_1 + \alpha_2 + \alpha_3 &= 3 \\ \alpha_1 + \alpha_2 - \alpha_3 &= -1 \\ -\alpha_2 &= 1 \\ -\alpha_1 &= -2 \end{aligned}\right\}$$

Hence the the solution of the system is $\alpha_1 = 2, \alpha_2 = -1, \alpha_3 = 2$

Therefore, $A = 2A_1 - A_2 + 2A_3$;

that is, A is a linear combination of A_1, A_2 and A_3.

Example 11. Write the matrix $A = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 1 \\ 1 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$ as a linear combination of the matrices

$A_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$, $A_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$ and $A_3 = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 2 \\ 0 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$.

Solution : Set A as a linear combination of A_1, A_2 and A_3 using the unknown scalars α_1, α_2 and α_3.

$$A = \alpha_1 A_1 + \alpha_2 A_2 + \alpha_3 A_3$$

$$\begin{bmatrix} 3 & 1 \\ 1 & -1 \end{bmatrix} = \alpha_1 \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} + \alpha_2 \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix} + \alpha_3 \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 2 \\ 0 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{bmatrix} \alpha_1 & \alpha_1 \\ \alpha_1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ \alpha_2 & \alpha_2 \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 2\alpha_3 \\ 0 & -\alpha_3 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{bmatrix} \alpha_1 & \alpha_1 + 2\alpha_3 \\ \alpha_1 + \alpha_2 & \alpha_2 - \alpha_3 \end{bmatrix}$$

Equating corresponding components and forming the linear system, we get

$$\left.\begin{aligned} \alpha_1 \qquad\qquad &= 3 \\ \alpha_1 \qquad + 2\alpha_3 &= 1 \\ \alpha_1 + \alpha_2 \qquad\quad &= 1 \\ \alpha_2 - \alpha_3 &= -1 \end{aligned}\right\}$$

Hence the solution of the system is $\alpha_1 = 3$, $\alpha_2 = -2$, $\alpha_3 = -1$

Therefore, $A = 3A_1 - 2A_2 - A_3$

Thus A is a linear combination of A_1, A_2 and A_3.

6.11 Linear span of a subset of a vector space

If S is a non-empty subset of a vector space V, then L (S), the **linear span** of S, is the set of all linear combinations of finite sets of elements of S.

Example 12. The vectors $e_1 = (1, o, o)$, $e_2 = (o, 1, o)$ and $e_3 = (o, o, 1)$ generate the vector space $\mathbb{R}^3$. For any vector $(v_1, v_2, v_3) \in \mathbb{R}^3$ is a linear combination of e_1, e_2 and e_3, specifically $(v_1, v_2, v_3) = v_1 (1, o, o) + v_2 (o, 1, o) + v_3 (o, o, 1)$

$$= v_1 e_1 + v_2 e_2 + v_3 e_3.$$

Theorem 6.9 Let S be a non-empty subset of a vector space V, then L (S) is a subspace of V containing S. Furthermore, if W is any other subspace of V containing S, then $L(S) \subset W$.

Proof : If $u \in S$, then $lu = u \in S$; hence S is a subset of L (S). Also L (S) is non-empty, since S is non-empty.

Now suppose that $u, v \in L(S)$, then

$u = \alpha_1 u_1 + \alpha_2 u_2 + \ldots + \alpha_m u_m$ and

$v = \beta_1 v_1 + \beta_2 v_2 + \ldots + \beta_n v_n$, where

$u_i, v_j \in S$ and α_i, β_j are scalars in F. Thus for $\lambda, \mu \in F$,

$$\lambda u + \mu v = \lambda(\alpha_1 u_1 + \alpha_2 u_2 + \ldots + \alpha_m u_m)$$
$$+ \mu(\beta_1 v_1 + \beta_2 v_2 + \ldots + \beta_n v_n)$$
$$= (\lambda\alpha_1) u_1 + (\lambda\alpha_2) u_2 + \ldots + (\lambda\alpha_m) u_m +$$
$$(\mu\beta_1) v_1 + (\mu\beta_2) v_2 + \ldots + (\mu\beta_n) v_n$$

which is a linear combination of the elements of S and so is again in L (S). Hence L (S) is a subspace of V.

Now suppose that W is a subspace of V containing S and $u_1, u_2, \ldots, u_m \in S \subset W$. then all multiples $\alpha_1 u_1, \alpha_2 u_2, \ldots, \alpha_m u_m \in W$ where $\alpha_i \in F$ and hence the sum $\alpha_1 u_1 + \alpha_2 u_2 + \ldots + \alpha_m u_m \in W$; that is; W contains all linear combinations of elements of S. Consequently, $L(S) \subset W$. Hence the theorem is proved.

Theorem 6.10 : If S and T are subsets of a vector space V over the field F, then.

(i) $S \subseteq T \Rightarrow L(S) \subseteq L(T)$

(ii) $L(S \cup T) = L(S) + L(T)$

(iii) S is a subspace of V if and only if $L(S) = S$

(iv) $L(L(S)) = L(S)$

Proof : (i) Let $u = \alpha_1 u_1 + \alpha_2 u_2 + \ldots + \alpha_n u_n \in L(S)$

where $\{u_1, u_2, \ldots, u_n\}$ is a finite subset of S and

$\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \ldots, \alpha_n \in F$. Since $S \subseteq T$, therefore,

$\{u_1, u_2, \ldots, u_n\}$ is also a finite subset of T.

So $u = \alpha_1 u_1 + \alpha_2 u_2 + \ldots + \alpha_n u_n \in L(T)$

Thus $u \in L(S) \Rightarrow u \in L(T)$. $\therefore L(S) \subseteq L(T)$

Hence $S \subseteq T \Rightarrow L(S) \subseteq L(T)$.

(ii) Let $u \in L(S \cup T)$ then

$u = \alpha_1 u_1 + \alpha_2 u_2 + \ldots + \alpha_n u_n + \beta_1 v_1 + \beta_2 v_2 + \ldots + \beta_m v_m$

where $\{u_1, u_2, \ldots, u_n, v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_m\}$ is a finite subset of $S \cup T$ such that $\{u_1, u_2, \ldots, u_n\} \subseteq S$ and $\{v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_m\} \subseteq T$.

Now $\alpha_1 u_1 + \alpha_2 u_2 + \ldots + \alpha_n u_n \in L(S)$

and $\beta_1 v_1 + \beta_2 v_2 + \ldots + \beta_m v_m \in L(T)$.

Therefore, $u \in L(S) + L(T)$.

Evidently $L(S \cup T) \subseteq L(S) + L(T)$ (A).

Let w be any element of $L(S) + L(T)$

then $w = u + v$ for $u \in L(S)$ and $v \in L(T)$.

Now since u is a linear combination of a finite number of elements of S and v is a linear combination of a finite number of elements of T. Therefore, $u + v$ will be a linear combination of a finite numbers of elements of $S \cup T$. Thus $u + v \in L(S \cup T)$.

Hence $L(S) + L(T) \subseteq L(S \cup T)$ (B)

Therefore, from (A) and (B), we get

$$L(S \cup T) = L(S) + L(T).$$

(iii) Suppose that S is a subspace of V. Then we have to prove that $L(S) = S$. Let $u \in L(S)$.

Then $u = \alpha_1 u_1 + \alpha_2 u_2 + \ldots + \alpha_n u_n$ where $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \ldots, \alpha_n \in F$

and $u_1, u_2, \ldots, u_n \in S$. But S is a subspace of V.

Therefore, it is closed with respect to scalar multiplication and vector addition.

Hence $u = \alpha_1 u_1 + \alpha_2 u_2 + \ldots + \alpha_n u_n \in S$.

Thus $u \in L(S) \Rightarrow u \in S$.

Therefore, $L(S) \subseteq S$. Also $S \subseteq L(S)$.

Hence $L(S) = S$.

Conversely, suppose that L (S) = S, then we have to prove that S is a subspace of V;

Now we know that L(S) is a subspace of V.

Since S = L(S), Therefore, S is also a subspace of V.

(iv) We know that L (S) is a subspace of V.

Therefore, by part (iii), it follows that L (L(S)) = L (S).

Example 12 (a) Show that the vectors u = (1, 2, 3), v = (0, 1, 2) and w = (0, 0, 1) generate $\mathbb{R}^3$. **[C. U.P. 1975]**

Proof : We must determine whether an arbitrary vector v = (a, b, c) in $\mathbb{R}^3$ can be expressed as a linear combination v = xu + yv + zw of the vectors u, v and w. Expressing this equation in terms of components gives.

$$\begin{aligned}(a, b, c) &= x(1, 2, 3) + y(0, 1, 2) + z(0, 0, 1)\\ &= (x, 2x, 3x) + (0, y, 2y) + (0, 0, z)\\ &= (x, 2x + y, 3x + 2y + z)\end{aligned}$$

Equating corresponding components and forming the linear system we get

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x \quad\quad &= a\\ 2x + \quad y &= b\\ 3x + 2y + z &= c\end{aligned}\right\} \Rightarrow \left.\begin{aligned} z + 2y + 3x &= c\\ y + 2x &= b\\ x &= a\end{aligned}\right\}$$

The above system is in echelon form and is consistent. In fact, the system has the solution $x = a$, $y = b - 2a$, $z = c - 2b + a$

Thus u, v and w generate (span) $\mathbb{R}^3$.

Example 13. Determine whether vectors $v_1 = (2, -1, 3)$ $v_2 = (4, 1, 2)$ and $v_3 = (8, -1, 8)$ span $\mathbb{R}^3$.

Solution : We must determine whether an arbitrary vector v = (a, b, c) in $\mathbb{R}^3$ can be expressed as a linear combination $v = \alpha_1 v_1 + \alpha_2 v_2 + \alpha_3 v_3$ of the vectors v_1, v_2 and v_3 Expressing this equation in terms of components, we get

$$(a\ b,\ c) = \alpha_1\ (2, -1, 3) + \alpha_2\ (4, 1, 2) + \alpha_3\ (8, -1, 8)$$
$$= (2\alpha_1, -\alpha_1, 3\alpha_1) + (4\alpha_2, \alpha_2, 2\alpha_2) + (8\alpha_3, -\alpha_3, 8\alpha_3)$$
$$= (2\alpha_1 + 4\alpha_2 + 8\alpha_3, -\alpha_1 + \alpha_2 - \alpha_3, 3\alpha_1 + 2\alpha_2 + 8\alpha_3)$$

Equating corresponding components and forming the linear system, we have

$$\left.\begin{aligned} 2\alpha_1 + 4\alpha_2 + 8\alpha_3 &= a \\ -\alpha_1 + \alpha_2 - \alpha_3 &= b \\ 3\alpha_1 + 2\alpha_2 + 8\alpha_3 &= c \end{aligned}\right\}$$

This problem thus reduces to determining whether or not this system is consistent for all values of a, b and c. Now this system will be consistent for all a, b and c, if and only if the matrix of co-efficients.

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 4 & 8 \\ -1 & 1 & -1 \\ 3 & 2 & 8 \end{bmatrix} \text{ is invertible.}$$

Now the determinant of A is

$$|A| = \begin{vmatrix} 2 & 4 & 8 \\ -1 & 1 & -1 \\ 3 & 2 & 8 \end{vmatrix} \begin{aligned} &= 2(8+2) - 4(-8+3) + 8(-2-3) \\ &= 20 + 20 - 40 = 0. \end{aligned}$$

Hence the co-efficient matrix A is not invertible and consequently, v_1, v_2 and v_3 do not span $\mathbb{R}^3$.

Example 14. Determine whether the vectors $u_1 = (1, \frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{4})$, $u_2 = (-2, -4, -8)$ and $u_3 = (3, 9, 27)$ generate (span) $\mathbb{R}^3$.

Solution : We must determine whether an arbitrary vector $u = (a, b, c) \in \mathbb{R}^3$ can be expressed as a linear combination $u = x_1 u_1 + x_2 u_2 + x_3 u_3$ of the vectors u_1, u_2, and u_3.

Expressing this equation in term of components, we get

$$(a, b, c) = x_1\left(1, \frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{4}\right) + x_2\ (-2, -4, -8) + x_3\ (3, 9, 27)$$
$$= \left(x_1, \frac{1}{2}x_1, \frac{1}{4}x_1\right) + (-2x_2, -4x_2, -8x_2) + (3x_3, 9x_3, 27x_3)$$
$$= (x_1 - 2x_2 + 3x_3, \frac{1}{2}x_1 - 4x_2 + 9x_3, \frac{1}{4}x_1 - 8x_2 + 27x_3)$$

Now form the system of linear equations by equating the corresponding components.

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x_1 - 2x_2 + 3x_3 &= a \\ \tfrac{1}{2}x_1 - 4x_2 + 9x_3 &= b \\ \tfrac{1}{4}x_1 - 8x_2 + 27x_3 &= c \end{aligned}\right\}$$

or, equivalently

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x_1 - 2x_2 + 3x_3 &= a \\ x_1 - 8x_2 + 18x_3 &= 2b \\ x_1 - 32x_2 + 108x_3 &= 4c \end{aligned}\right\} \quad (1)$$

Now we reduce the system to echelon form by the elementary transformations. We subtract first equation from the second and third equations respectively. Then we have the equivalent system

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x_1 - 2x_2 + 3x_3 &= a \\ -6x_2 + 15x_3 &= 2b - a \\ -30x_2 + 105x_3 &= 4c - a \end{aligned}\right\} \quad (2)$$

We multiply second equation by 5 and then subtract from the third equation. Thus we get the equivalent system

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x_1 - 2x_2 + 3x_3 &= a \\ -6x_2 + 15x_3 &= 2b - a \\ 30x_3 &= 4c - a - 10b + 5a \end{aligned}\right\} \quad (3)$$

which is in echelon form

From the third equation, we get $x_3 = \frac{1}{15}(2a - 5b + 2c)$

Putting the value of x_3 in the second equation,

we get $-6x_2 + 2a - 5b + 2c = 2b - a$

or, $6x_2 = 2a - 5b + 2c - 2b + a = 3a - 7b + 2c$

$\therefore x_2 = \frac{1}{6}(3a - 7b + 2c)$.

Again, putting the values of x_2 and x_3 in the first equation we get $x_1 - \frac{1}{3}(3a - 7b + 2c) + \frac{2}{5}(2a - 5b + 2c) = a$

or, $15x_1 - 15a + 35b - 10c + 6a - 15b + 6c = 15a$

or, $15x_1 = 24a - 20b + 4c$

$$x_1 = \frac{1}{15}(24a - 20b + 4c).$$

Therefore, $(a, b, c) = \frac{1}{15}(24a - 20b + 4c)\,u_1 + \frac{1}{6}(3a - 7b + 2c)\,u_2 + \frac{1}{15}(2a - 5b + 2c)\,u_3$.

Hence u_1, u_2, u_3, span $\mathbb{R}^3$.

Verification of the result

(i) $\frac{1}{15}(24a - 20b + 4c) - \frac{1}{3}(3a - 7b + 2c) + \frac{1}{5}(2a - 5b + 2c)$

$= \frac{1}{15}(24a - 20b + 4c - 15a + 35b - 10c + 6a - 15b + 6c)$

$= \frac{1}{15}(30a - 15a + 35b - 35b + 10c - 10c = \frac{1}{15}(15a) = a.$

(ii) $\frac{1}{15}(12a - 10b + 2c) - \frac{1}{3}(6a - 14b + 4c) + \frac{1}{5}(6a - 15b + 6c)$

$= \frac{1}{15}(12a - 10b + 2c - 30a + 70b - 20c + 18a - 45b + 18c)$

$= \frac{1}{15}(30a - 30a + 70b - 55b + 20c - 20c)$

$= \frac{1}{15}(15b) = b.$

(iii) $\frac{1}{15}(6a - 5b + c) - \frac{1}{3}(12a - 28b + 8c) + \frac{1}{5}(18a - 45b + 18c)$

$= \frac{1}{15}(6a - 5b + c - 60a + 140b - 40c + 54a - 135b + 54c)$

$= \frac{1}{15}(60a - 60a + 140b - 140b + 55c - 40c)$

$= \frac{1}{15}(15c) = c.$

Hence the result is verified.

6.12 Row space and column space of a matrix

Let A be an arbitrary $m \times n$ matrix over the real field $\mathbb{R}$:

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & \dots & a_{1n} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & \dots & a_{2n} \\ \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots \\ a_{m1} & a_{m2} & \dots & a_{mn} \end{bmatrix}$$

The m rows of A are $R_1 = (a_{11}, a_{12}, \dots, a_{1n})$

$R_2 = (a_{21}, a_{22}, \dots, a_{2n}), \dots, R_m = (a_{m1}, a_{m2}, \dots, a_{mn})$.

These m rows viewed as vectors in R^n span a subspace of R^n called the **row space** of A.

Again, the columns of A are

$$C_1 = \begin{bmatrix} a_{11} \\ a_{21} \\ \dots \\ a_{m1} \end{bmatrix} \quad C_2 = \begin{bmatrix} a_{12} \\ a_{22} \\ \dots \\ a_{m2} \end{bmatrix} \dots, C_n = \begin{bmatrix} a_{1n} \\ a_{2n} \\ \dots \\ a_{mn} \end{bmatrix}$$

These n columns of A viewed as vectors in R^m, span a subspace of R^m called the **column space** of A.

Definition : For any two subspaces S and T of a vector space V, their **sum** S + T is the set given by $\{u+v \mid u \in S \text{ and } v \in T\}$.

Theorem 5.11 For any two subspaces S and T of a vector space V, S + T is a subspace of V.

Proof : Clearly, $0 = 0 + 0 \in S + T$: So $S + T \neq \varnothing$

i.e. S + T is non-empty.

Let $x, y \in S + T$, $\alpha, \beta \in F$. Then $x = u_1 + v_1$, $y = u_2 + v_2$

where $u_1, u_2 \in S$ and $v_1, v_2 \in T$.

Thus $\alpha x + \beta y = \alpha(u_1 + v_1) + \beta(u_2 + v_2)$

$$= \alpha u_1 + \alpha v_1 + \beta u_2 + \beta v_2$$

$$= \alpha u_1 + \beta u_2 + \alpha v_1 + \beta v_2 \quad (1)$$

Now since S and T are subspaces of V

$\alpha u_1 + \beta u_2 \in S$ and $\alpha v_1 + \beta v_2 \in T$.

Consequently, (1) gives that $\alpha x + \beta y \in S + T$.

Hence S + T is a subspace of V.

6.13 Direct sum of subspaces

The vector space V is said to be the **direct sum** of its subspaces S and T, denoted by $V = S \oplus T$ if every vector $v \in V$ can be written in one and only one way as $v = u + w$, where $u \in S$ and $w \in T$.

Theorem 5.12 The vector space V is the direct sum of its subspaces S and T if and only if (i) V = S + T and (ii) $S \cap T = \{0\}$.

Proof : Suppose that $V = S \oplus T$. Then any $v \in V$ can be uniquely written in the form $v = u + w$, where $u \in S$ and $w \in T$.

Thus in particular ; $V = S + T$.

Now suppose that $v \in S \cap T$. Then

(1) $v = v + 0$, where $v \in S$ and $0 \in T$.

(2) $v = 0 + v$, where $0 \in S$ and $v \in T$.

Since such a sum for v must be unique.

$\therefore v = o$; Accordingly $S \cap T = \{0\}$.

On the other hand, suppose that $V = S + T$ and $S \cap T = \{0\}$

Let $v \in V$ since $V = S + T$, there exist $u \in S$ and $w \in T$ such that $v = u + w$. Now we have to show that such a sum is unique. If the sum is not unique, let $v = u' + w'$ where $u' \in S$ and $w' \in T$. Then $u + w = u' + w'$ and so $u - u' = w' - w$. But $u - u' \in S$ and $w' - w \in T$, hence by $S \cap T = \{0\}$, $u - u' = 0$ and $w' - w = 0$.

Therefore, $u = u'$ and $w = w'$. Thus such a sum for $v \in V$ is unique and $V = S \oplus T$.

Example 15. Let S and T be subspaces of $\mathbb{R}^4$ defined by $S = \{a, b, 0, 0) \mid a, b \in F\}$ and $T = \{(0, 0, c, d) \mid c, d \in F\}$. One can easily verify that both these subsets are subspaces of $\mathbb{R}^4$.

The zero vector of $\mathbb{R}^4$ is $(0, 0, 0, 0)$. Then $z = (a, b, 0, 0)$ $= (0, 0, c, d)$ for some $a, b, c, d \in F$ implies that $a = b = c = 0$. Hence $z = 0$, so that $S \cap T = \{0\}$.

Therefore, $S + T = S \oplus T$. Now every $(a_1, b_1, c_1, d_1) \in \mathbb{R}^4$ can be expressed as $(a_1, b_1, 0, 0) + (0, 0, c_1, d_1)$ with $(a_1, b_1, 0, 0) \in S$ and $(0, 0, c_1, d_1) \in T$. This gives $\mathbb{R}^4 = S \oplus T$.

EXERCISES – 6 (A)

1. Let $u = (1, 2, 1, -2)$, $v = (3, 0, 4, 1)$ and $w = (6, 3, -3, 0)$ be the vectors in $\mathbb{R}^4$. Compute the following vectors : (i) $2u + v - w$ (ii) $5u - 3v - w$.

Answers : (i) $(-1, 1, 9, -3)$

(ii) $(-10, 7, -4, -13)$.

2 . (i) Find $x \in \mathbb{R}^5$ such that $u + x = v$

where $u = (2, -1, 0, 3, 6)$ and $v = (0, 1, 2, -1, -2)$ [D. U. P. 1982]

(ii) Solve the vector equation $u + x = v$ for the following pair of vectors u and v in $\mathbb{R}^5$: $u = \left(\frac{1}{2}, 3, \frac{1}{3}, -6, 1\right)$

$$v = \left(\frac{1}{2}, 4, -1, \frac{1}{3}, 1\right)$$

Answers : (i) $x = (-2, 2, 2, -4, -8)$

(ii) $x = \left(0, 1, -\frac{4}{3}, -\frac{17}{3}, 0\right)$.

3. Let $u_1 = (-1, 3, 2, 0)$, $u_2 = (2, 0, 4, -1)$, $u_3 = (7, 1, 1, 4)$ and $u_4 = (6, 3, 1, 2)$. Find scalars α_1, α_2, α_3 and α_4 such that $\alpha_1 u_1 + \alpha_2 u_2 + \alpha_3 u_3 + \alpha_4 u_4 = (0, 5, 6, -3)$

Answer : $\alpha_1 = 1$, $\alpha_2 = 1$, $\alpha_3 = -1$, $\alpha_4 = 1$.

4. Let V be a vector space over the field F. Let u and v any two vectors in V and α be any scalar in F.

Show that (i) $(-1)v = -v$

(ii) $\alpha(u - v) = \alpha u - \alpha v$.

5. Verify whether the following sets are subspaces of $V_3(\mathbb{R})$:

(i) $\{(x, 2y, 5) : x, y \in \mathbb{R}\}$

(ii) $\{(x, x + y, 3z), x, y, z \in \mathbb{R}\}$.

Answers: (i) The set is not a subspace.

(ii) The set is a subspace.

6. Show that $S = \{(x_1, x_2, x_3) \in \mathbb{R}^3 \mid x_1 - x_2 + x_3 = 0\}$ is a subspace of $\mathbb{R}^3$. [D. U. P. 1983]

7. Show that $W = \{(a, b, c, d) \mid (a, b, c, d) \in \mathbb{R}^4$ and $3a - 2b - 2c - d = 0\}$, is a subspace of $\mathbb{R}^4$. [D. U. S. 1984]

8. Show that $W = \{(a, b, c) \in \mathbb{R}^3 \mid a+b+c = 0\}$ is a subspace of $\mathbb{R}^3$. [D. U. H. 1988]

9. Show that $V = \{(a, b, c, d) \in \mathbb{R}^4 \mid a + b + c + d = 0\}$ is a subspace of $\mathbb{R}^4$.

10. Which of the following are subspaces of $\mathbb{R}^3$?

(i) $S = \{(x, y, z) \in \mathbb{R}^3 \mid y - 6z = 0\}$

(ii) $T = \{(x, y, z) \in \mathbb{R}^3 \mid x + y + z = 1\}$ [D. U. P. 1985]

Answers : (i) S is a subspace of $\mathbb{R}^3$

(ii) T is not a subspace of $\mathbb{R}^3$.

11. Show that $W = \{(a, b, c) \mid a, b, c \in \mathbb{R}$ and $2a - b + c = 10\}$ is not a subspace of $V_3(\mathbb{R})$. [D. U. P. 1984]

12. Show that each of the following subsets of the vector space $\mathbb{R}^3$ is a subspace of $\mathbb{R}^3$:

(i) $W = \{(a, b, c) \mid a + b = 0\}$; [D. U. H. T. 1986]

(ii) $W = \{(a, b, c) \mid b + c = 0\}$;

(iii) $W = \{(a, b, c) \mid c + a = 0\}$.

13. Let $W = \{(a, b, 1) \mid a, b \in \mathbb{R}\}$ be a subset of the vector space $\mathbb{R}^3$. Then show that W is not a subspace of $\mathbb{R}^3$.

[D. U. H. T. 1990]

14. Let $W = \{(a, b, c) \mid a \geq b\}$ be a subset of the vector space $\mathbb{R}^3$. Then show that W is not a subspace of $\mathbb{R}^3$. [D. U. H. T. 1988]

15. Show that $W = \{(a, a, a) \mid a \in \mathbb{R}\}$ is a subspace of $\mathbb{R}^3$.

[R. U. H. 1985]

16. show that each of the following subsets of the vector space $\mathbb{R}^3$ is a subspace of $\mathbb{R}^3$:

(i) $W_1 = \{(a, b, 0) \mid a, b \in \mathbb{R}\}$ (ii) $W_2 = \{(0, b, c) \mid b, c \in \mathbb{R}\}$.

17. Let V be a vector space of all n-square matrices over a real field $\mathbb{R}$. Show that W is a subspace of V if W consists of all skew-symmetric matrices (i.e $A^T = -A$). [R. U. H. 1986]

18. Show that W is a subspace of $\mathbb{R}^4$ where

(i) $W = \{(a, b, c, 0) \mid a, b, c \in \mathbb{R}\}$

(ii) $W = \{(x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4) \mid \alpha_1 x_1 + \alpha_2 x_2 + \alpha_3 x_3 + \alpha_4 x_4 = 0, \alpha_i \in \mathbb{R}\}$

19. Write the vectors (1, 0, 0) and (0, 0, 1) as linear combinations of the vectors (1, 0, – 1), (0, 1, 0), (1, 0, 1)

Answers : $(1, 0, 0) = \frac{1}{2}(1, 0, -1) + 0\,(0, 1, 0) + \frac{1}{2}(1, 0, 1)$

$(0, 0, 1) = -\frac{1}{2}(1, 0, -1) + 0\,(0, 1, 0) + \frac{1}{2}(1, 0, 1)$

20. Write (5, 6, 0) as a linear combination of (–1, 2, 0), (3, 1, 2), (4, –1, 0) and (0, 1, –1) **[D. U. Prel. 1983]**

Answer : $(5, 6, 0) = 2(-1, 2, 0) + 1\,(3, 1, 2) + 1\,(4, -1, 0) + 2(0, 1, -1)$.

21. Whether or not the vector (1, 2, 6) is a linear combination of the vectors $u_1 = (2, 1, 0)$, $u_2 = (1, -1, 2)$ and $u_3 = (0, 3, -4)$ **[C. U. P. 1979]**

Answer : (1, 2, 6) can not be written as a linear combination of u_1, u_2 and u_3.

22. Write the vectors (2, 3, –7, 3) and (– 4, 6, –13, 4) as a linear combination of the vectors

$v_1 = (2, 1, 0, 3)$, $v_2 = (3, -1, 5, 2)$, $v_3 = (-1, 0, 2, 1)$

Answer : (i) $(2, 3, -7, 3) = 2v_1 - v_2 - v_3$

(ii) $(-4, 6, -13, 4) = 3v_1 - 3v_2 - v_3$.

23. Determine whether or not the vector (3, 9, –4, –2) is a linear combination of the vector set {(1, –2, 0, 3), (2, 3, 0, –1), (2, –1, 2, 1)} **[D. U. P. 1984] [D. U. H. T. 1989]**

Answer : $(3, 9, -4, -2) = 1\,(1, -2, 0, 3) + 3(2, 3, 0, -1)$
$-2(2, -1, 2, 1)$.

24. Express the polynomial $p = t^2 + 4t - 3$ over $\mathbb{R}$ as a linear combination of the polynomials

$p_1 = t^2 - 2t + 5$, $p_2 = 2t^2 - 3t$ and $p_3 = t + 3$.

Answer : $p = -3p_1 + 2p_2 + 4p_3$.

25. In the vector space $\mathbb{R}^3$ express the $v = (1, -2, 5)$ as a linear combination of the vectors vectors $v_1 = (1, 1, 1)$, $v_2 = (1, 2, 3)$ and $v_3 = (2, -1, 1)$.

Answer : $v = -6v_1 + 3v_2 + 2v_3$.

26. Determine whether (4, 2, 1, 0) is a linear combination of each of the following sets of vectors. If so find one such combination.

(i) $\{(1, 2, -1, 0), (1, 3, 1, 2), (6, 1, 0, 1)\}$

(ii) $\{(3, 1, 0, 1), (1, 2, 3, 1), (0, 3, 6, 6)\}$

(iii) $\{(6, -1, 2, 1), (1, 7, -3, -2), (3, 1, 0, 0), (3, 3, -2, -1)\}$

Answers : (i) (4, 2, 1, 0) is not a linear combination

(ii) (4, 2, 1, 0) is not a linear combination.

(iii) (4, 2, 1, 0) is a linear combination and

$(4, 2, 1, 0) = 2(6, -1, 2, 1) + 1(1, 7, -3, -2)$
$-3(3, 1, 0, 0) + 0(3, 3, -2, -1)$

27. Express the matrix $A = \begin{bmatrix} 5 & 1 \\ -2 & 3 \end{bmatrix}$ as a linear combination of the matrices $A_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$, $A_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$ and $A_3 = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ -1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$. [D. U. H. T. 1988]

Answer : $A = 2A_1 + 3A_2 + 4A_3$

28. Express (if possible) the matrix $A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ -1 & -2 \end{bmatrix}$ as a linear combination of the matrices

$A_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$, $A_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$ and $A_3 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$.

[D. U. H. T. 1991; R. U. S. 1989]

Answer : A can not be expressed as a linear combination of A_1, A_2 and A_3.

29. Which of the following matrices are linear combinations of the matrices

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ -1 & 3 \end{bmatrix}, B = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 2 & 4 \end{bmatrix}, C = \begin{bmatrix} 4 & -2 \\ 0 & -2 \end{bmatrix}?$$

(i) $\begin{bmatrix} 6 & 3 \\ 0 & 8 \end{bmatrix}$ (ii) $\begin{bmatrix} 6 & -1 \\ -8 & -8 \end{bmatrix}$

Answers : (i) $\begin{bmatrix} 6 & 3 \\ 0 & 8 \end{bmatrix} = 2A + B + C.$

(ii) $\begin{bmatrix} 6 & -1 \\ -8 & -8 \end{bmatrix} = 2A - 3B + C.$

CamScanner

30. In $\mathbb{R}^3$, let $S = \{(1, 2, 1), (3, 5, 0)\}$ and $T = \{(1, 2, 1), (3, 5, 0), (2, 3, -1)\}$

Examine whether $< S > = < T >$. [D. U. P. 1982]

30 (a) Show that the vectors $u_1 = (1, 1)$ and $u_2 = (1, -1)$ span $\mathbb{R}^2$.

31. Determine whether or not the following vectors span $\mathbb{R}^3$

(i) $u_1 = (1, 1, 2), u_2 = (1, -1, 2), u_3 = (1, 0, 1)$

(ii) $v_1 = (-1, 1, 0), v_2 = (-1, 0, 1), v_3 = (1, 1, 1)$

Answer : (i) u_1, u_2, u_3 span $\mathbb{R}^3$

(ii) v_1, v_2, v_3 span $\mathbb{R}^3$.

32. Show that the space generated by the vectors $u_1 = (1, 2, -1, 3), u_2 = (2, 4, 1, -2)$ and $u_3 = (3, 6, 3, -7)$ and the space generated by the vectors $v_1 = (1, 2, -4, 11)$ and $v_2 = (2, 4, -5, 14)$ are equal. [C. U. P. 1973]

33.(i) Show that $\mathbb{R}^3 = \{(1, 2, 1), (2, 1, 0), (1, -1, 2)\}$

[D. U. H. T. 1992]

(ii) Find a condition on a, b, c so that $v = (a, b, c)$ is a linear combination of $v_1 = (1, -3, 2)$ and $v_2 = (2, -1, -1)$, that is, so that v belongs to span (v_1, v_2).

Answer : $a + b + c = 0$.

34. Let U and W be the subspaces of $\mathbb{R}^3$ defined by

$U = \{(a, b, c) : a = b = c\}$ and $W = \{(0, b, c)\}$

Show that $R^3 = U \oplus W$. [D. U. S. 1983]

35. Show that each of the following subsets S is a subspace of the indicated space V :

(i) $V = \mathbb{R}^3$, S is the collection of all triples (x, y, z) such that $x = y$ and $z = 0$.

(ii) $V = \mathbb{R}^4$, S is the collection of all 4-tuples (x, y, z, t) such that $x - y = z + t$.

36. Show that xz plane $W = (a, 0, c)$ in $\mathbb{R}^3$ is generated by

(i) $(1, 0, 1)$ and $(2, 0, -1)$

(ii) $(1, 0, 2)$, $(2, 0, 3)$ and $(3, 0, 1)$.

37. (i) Prove that $S = \{(x, y, z, t) \in \mathbb{R}^4 \mid x + y - z + t = 0$ and $2x = y\}$ is a subspace of $\mathbb{R}^4$.

(ii) Prove that $T = \{(x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_n) \in \mathbb{R}^n \mid x_1 + x_2 + \ldots + x_n = 0\}$ is a subspace of $\mathbb{R}^n$.

38. Let W_1 and W_2 be the subspaces of $\mathbb{R}^3$ defined by $W_1 = \{(a, b, 0) \mid a, b \in \mathbb{R}\}$

and $W_2 = \{(0, 0, c) \mid c \in \mathbb{R}\}$. Show that $\mathbb{R}^3 = W_1 \oplus W_2$.

39. Let W_1 and W_2 be the subspaces of $\mathbb{R}^3$ defined by $W_1 = \{(a, 0, 0) \mid a \in \mathbb{R}\}$ and $W_2 = \{(0, b, c) \mid b, c \in \mathbb{R}\}$.

Show that $\mathbb{R}^3 = W_1 \oplus W_2$.

40. Let S and T be subspaces of $\mathbb{R}^4$ defined by

$S = \{(a, 0, 0, 0) \mid a \in \mathbb{R}\}$ and $T = \{(0, b, c, d) \mid b, c, d \in \mathbb{R}\}$.

Show that $\mathbb{R}^4 = S \oplus T$.

41. Let $V(\mathbb{R}) = \left\{\begin{bmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{bmatrix} : a, b, c, d \in \mathbb{R}\right\}$. Then show that $V(\mathbb{R}) = W_1 \oplus W_2$ where;

$$W_1 = \left\{\begin{bmatrix} a & b \\ 0 & d \end{bmatrix} : a, b, d \in \mathbb{R}\right\}.$$

$$W_2 = \left\{\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ c & 0 \end{bmatrix} : c \in \mathbb{R}\right\}.$$

42. Let V be the vector space over the field F.

Show that $V = W_1 \oplus W_2$ where W_1 and W_2 are the subspaces of symmetric and skew-symmetric matrices respectively over F.

CamScanner

6.14 Linear dependence and linear independence.

Definition : Let V be a vector space over the field F. The vectors $v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_m \in V$ are said to be **linearly dependent** over F or simply **dependent** if there exists a non-trivial linear combination of them equal to the zero vector 0.

That is, $\alpha_1 v_1 + \alpha_2 v_2 + \ldots + \alpha_m v_m = 0$ where $\alpha_i \neq o$ for at least one i.

On the other hand, the vectors $v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_m$ in V are said to be **linearly independent** over F or simply **independent** if the only linear combination of them equal to 0 (zero vector) is the trivial one. that is,

$\alpha_1 v_1 + \alpha_2 v_2 + \ldots + \alpha_m v_m = 0$ if and only if

$\alpha_1 = \alpha_2 = \ldots = \alpha_m = o.$

A single non-zero vector v is necessarily independent. since $\alpha v = 0$ if and only if $\alpha = o$.

Theorem 6.13 The non-zero vectors $v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_n$ in a vector space V are linearly dependent if and only if one of the vectors v_k is a linear combination of the preceding vectors $v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_{k-1}$.

Proof : If $v_k = \alpha_1 v_1 + \alpha_2 v_2 + \ldots + \alpha_{k-1} v_{k-1}$.

then $\alpha_1 v_1 + \alpha_2 v_2 + \ldots + \alpha_{k-1} v_{k-1} + (-1) v_k + o v_{k+1} + \ldots + o v_n = 0.$

and hence the vectors $v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_n$ are linearly dependent.

Conversely, suppose that the vectors $v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_n$ are linearly dependent, then $\alpha_1 v_1 + \alpha_2 v_2 + \ldots + \alpha_n v_n = 0$ where the scalars $\alpha_i \neq o$, then $\alpha_1 v_1 + \alpha_2 v_2 + \ldots + \alpha_k v_k + 0 v_{k+1} + \ldots + 0 v_n = 0$

or, $\alpha_1 v_1 + \alpha_2 v_2 + \ldots + \alpha_k v_k = 0.$

Now if k = 1, this implies that $\alpha_1 v_1 = 0.$

with $\alpha_1 \neq 0$, so that $v_1 = 0$, giving a contradiction, because the v_1 is a non-zero vector. Hence $k > 1$ and we may

write $v_k = -\left(\frac{\alpha_1}{\alpha_k}\right) v_1 - \left(\frac{\alpha_2}{\alpha_k}\right) v_2 - \ldots - \left(\frac{\alpha_{k-1}}{\alpha_k}\right) v_{k-1}$

giving v_k as a linear combination of $v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_{k-1}$.

Thus the theorem is proved.

Lemma 1. Let V be a vector space which is spanned by a finite set of vectors, say $\{v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_n\}$. Let $U = \{u_1, u_2, \ldots, u_k\}$ be an independent set in V. Then $k \leq n$.

Proof : Since $\{v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_n\}$ spans V, each vector in U is a linear combination of $\{v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_n\}$, i.e.

$$\left.\begin{array}{l} u_1 = \alpha_{11}v_1 + \alpha_{21}v_2 + \ldots + \alpha_{n1}v_n \\ u_2 = \alpha_{12}v_1 + \alpha_{22}v_2 + \ldots + \alpha_{n2}v_n \\ \ldots \quad \ldots \quad \ldots \quad \ldots \quad \ldots \\ u_k = \alpha_{1k}v_1 + \alpha_{2k}v_2 + \ldots + \alpha_{nk}v_n \end{array}\right\} \quad (1)$$

Suppose that $k>n$, then the system

$$\left.\begin{array}{l} \alpha_{11}x_1 + \alpha_{12}x_2 + \ldots + \alpha_{1k}x_k = 0 \\ \alpha_{21}x_1 + \alpha_{22}x_2 + \ldots + \alpha_{2k}x_k = 0 \\ \ldots \quad \ldots \quad \ldots \quad \ldots \\ \alpha_{n1}x_1 + \alpha_{n2}x_2 + \ldots + \alpha_{nk}x_k = 0 \end{array}\right\} \quad (2)$$

has at least one non-trivial solution, say $(b_1, b_2, \ldots, b_k)$

$$\left.\begin{array}{l} \alpha_{11}b_1 + \alpha_{12}b_2 + \ldots + \alpha_{1k}b_k = 0 \\ \alpha_{21}b_1 + \alpha_{22}b_2 + \ldots + \alpha_{2k}b_k = 0 \\ \ldots \quad \ldots \quad \ldots \quad \ldots \quad \ldots \\ \alpha_{n1}b_1 + \alpha_{n2}b_2 + \ldots + \alpha_{nk}b_k = 0 \end{array}\right\} \quad (3)$$

Then $b_1u_1 + b_2u_2 + \ldots + b_ku_k$

$$= b_1(\alpha_{11}v_1 + \alpha_{21}v_2 + \ldots + \alpha_{n1}v_n) +$$

$$b_2(\alpha_{12}v_1 + \alpha_{22}v_2 + \ldots + \alpha_{n2}v_n)$$

$$\ldots \quad \ldots \quad \ldots \quad \ldots \quad \ldots$$

$$+ b_k(\alpha_{1k}v_1 + \alpha_{2k}v_2 + \ldots + \alpha_{nk}v_n)$$

$$= (\alpha_{11}b_1 + \alpha_{12}b_2 + \ldots + \alpha_{1k}b_k)v_1 +$$
$$(\alpha_{21}b_1 + \alpha_{22}b_2 + \ldots + \alpha_{2k}b_k)v_2 +$$
$$\ldots \quad \ldots \quad \ldots \quad \ldots \quad \ldots$$
$$+ (\alpha_{n1}b_1 + \alpha_{n2}b_2 + \ldots + \alpha_{nk}b_k)v_n$$
$$= 0v_1 + 0v_2 + \ldots + 0v_n = 0.$$

Thus if $k>n$, we can choose $b_1, b_2, \ldots, b_k$ not all zero such that $b_1u_1 + \ldots + b_ku_k = 0$ i. e. $\{u_1, u_2, \ldots, u_k\}$ is a dependent set which is a contradiction to the given condition. So we conclude that $k \leq n$. Hence the lemma is proved.

Lemma 2. Let $\{u_1, u_2, \ldots, u_r\}$ be an independent set in a vector space V. Let W be the subspace spanned by $\{u_1, u_2, \ldots, u_r\}$. Let v be a vector which is in V, but not in W then

$\{u_1, u_2, \ldots, u_r, v\}$ is an independent set.

Proof : Let $\alpha_1u_1 + \alpha_2u_2 + \ldots + \alpha_r u_r + \alpha v = 0$ (1)

We will show that $\alpha_1 = \alpha_2 = \ldots = \alpha_r = \alpha = o$.

If $\alpha \neq o$, solve for v. This gives.

$$v = -\frac{\alpha_1}{\alpha}u_1 - \frac{\alpha_2}{\alpha}u_2 - \ldots - \frac{\alpha_r}{\alpha}u_r \qquad (2)$$

The right hand side of this expressin (2) is a linear combination of $u_1, u_2, \ldots, u_r$ and hence in W, but the left hand side of (2) is not in W; which is a contradiction. So we conclude that $\alpha = o$. This gives $\alpha_1u_1 + \alpha_2u_2 + \ldots + \alpha_ru_r = 0$.

Since $\{u_1, u_2, \ldots, u_r\}$ is an independent set, we must have $\alpha_1 = \alpha_2 = \ldots = \alpha_r = o$.

Hence we have shown that $\alpha_1 = \alpha_2 = \ldots = \alpha_r = \alpha = o$.

Therefore, $\{u_1, u_2, \ldots, u_r, v\}$ is an independent set.

So the lemma is proved.

Theorem 6.14 The non-zero rows of a matrix in echelon form are linearly independent.

Proof : Suppose that the set of non-zero rows say $\{R_m, R_{m-1}, \ldots, R_1\}$ is linearly dependent. Then one of the rows say R_m is a linear combination of the preceding rows i. e.

$$R_m = \alpha_{m+1} R_{m+1} + \alpha_{m+2} R_{m+2} + \ldots + \alpha_n R_n \quad (1)$$

Now suppose that the kth component of R_m is its first non-zero entry. Then since the matrix is in echelon form, the kth components of $R_{m+1}, \ldots, R_n$ are all zero and so the kth component of (1) is $\alpha_{m+1} 0 + \alpha_{m+2} 0 + \alpha_{m+2} 0 + \ldots + \alpha_n 0 = 0$. But this contradicts the assumption that the kth component of R_m is not zero. Thus $R_1, R_2, \ldots, R_n$ are linearly independent.

Hence the theorem is proved.

Theorem 6.15 Let $v_1, v_1, \ldots, v_m$ be m linearly independent vectors and a vector u is a linear combination of $v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_m$ i.e. $u = \alpha_1 v_1 + \alpha_2 v_2 + \ldots + \alpha_m v_m$ where α_i are scalars. Then the above representation of u is unique.

Proof : Given $u = \alpha_1 v_1 + \alpha_1 v_2 + \ldots + \alpha_m v_m \quad (1)$

Suppose that the representation of u is not unique.

Then let $u = \beta_1 v_1 + \beta_2 v_2 + \ldots + \beta_m v_m \quad (2)$

where β_i are scalars.

Now by subtracting (2) from (1), we get

$$0 = u - u = (\alpha_1 - \beta_1) + (\alpha_2 - \beta_2) v_2 + \ldots + (\alpha_m - \beta_m) v_m$$

But the vectors $v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_m$ are linearly independent.

So that this implies $\alpha_1 - \beta_1 = 0, \ldots, \alpha_m - \beta_m = 0$

i. e. $\alpha_1 = \beta_1, \ldots, \alpha_m = \beta_m$.

This proves that $u = \alpha_1 v_1 + \alpha_2 v_2 + \ldots + \alpha_m v_m$ is the unique representation of u as a linear combination of $v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_m$.

Theorem 6.16 Supose that the set $\{v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_m\}$ is linearly independent, but the set $\{v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_m, w\}$ is linearly dependent. Then w is a linear combination of the vectors

$v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_m$

Proof : Since the set $\{v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_m, w\}$ is linearly dependent there exist scalars $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \ldots, \alpha_m, \beta$ not all o (zero), such that

$$\alpha_1 v_1 + \alpha_2 v_2 + \ldots + \alpha_m v_m + \beta w = 0.$$

If $\beta = o$ then one of the α_i is not zero and

$\alpha_1 v_1 + \alpha_2 v_2 + \ldots + \alpha_m v_m = 0$. But this contradicts the hypothesis that $\{v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_m\}$ is linearly independent. Accordingly $\beta \neq o$ and so

$$w = \left(-\frac{\alpha_1}{\beta}\right) v_1 + \left(-\frac{\alpha_2}{\beta}\right) v_2 + \ldots + \left(-\frac{\alpha_m}{\beta}\right) v_m$$

That is, w is linear combination of the vectors $v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_m$.

Theorem 6.17 Let $u_1, u_2, \ldots, u_n$ be any n linearly independent vectors in a vector space V. Then any (n + 1) vectors $v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_{n+1}$, each of which is a linear combination of $u_1, u_2, \ldots, u_n$ are linearly dependent.

Proof : We prove the result by induction on n. If any of the v_i' s is zero, then trivially given (n + 1) vectors are linearly dependent. So we suppose that none of the v_i, s is zero. Now as v_1 and v_2 are both linear combinations of $u_1, u_2, \ldots, \ldots, u_n$ with $n = 1$, we get $v_1 = \alpha_1 u_1$, $v_2 = \alpha_2 u_1$ with $\alpha_1 \neq o$. $\alpha_2 \neq o$.

This gives $u_1 = \frac{v_1}{\alpha_1}$, $u_1 = \frac{v_2}{\alpha_2}$

or, $\frac{v_1}{\alpha_1} - \frac{v_2}{\alpha_2} = u_1 - u_1 = 0.$

or, $v_1 - \alpha_1 \alpha_2^{-1} v_2 = 0$

Hence v_1 and v_2 are linearly dependent.

To apply induction suppose that the result holds for any k linearly independent vectors where $k < n$. We can now write

$$v_1 = \alpha_{11} u_1 + \alpha_{12} u_2 + \ldots + \alpha_{1n} u_n$$
$$v_2 = \alpha_{21} u_1 + \alpha_{22} u_2 + \ldots + \alpha_{2n} u_n$$
$$\ldots \quad \ldots \quad \ldots \quad \ldots \quad \ldots$$
$$v_{n+1} = \alpha_{n+11} u_1 + \alpha_{n+12} u_2 + \ldots + \alpha_{n+1n} u_n$$

for some scalars α_{ij} in F.

If $\alpha_{in} = o$ for every $i = 1, 2, \ldots, n + 1$ then each of v_i is a linear combination of $(n - 1)$ vectors $u_1, u_2, \ldots, u_{n-1}$ and the induction hypothesis will yield that $v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_n$ are also linearly dependent and consequently $v_1, v_2 \ldots, v_{n+1}$ are also linearly dependent.

So we suppose that at least one of $\alpha_{in} \neq o$.

Let $\alpha_{in} \neq o$, then for each $i = 2, 3, \ldots, n + 1$

$$v_i - \alpha_{in}\alpha_{in}^{-1}v_1 = (\alpha_{i1} - \alpha_{in}\alpha_{11}\alpha_{1n}^{-1})\, u_1 +$$

$$(\alpha_{i2} - \alpha_{in}\alpha_{12}\alpha_{1n}^{-1})\, u_2 + \ldots + (\alpha_{in-1} - \alpha_{in}\alpha_{1n-1}\alpha_{1n}^{-1})\, u_{n+1}$$

So by induction hypothesis the vectors

$w_i = v_i - \alpha_{in}\alpha_{in}^{-1}v_1$ $(2<i<n + 1)$ are linearly dependent. Consequently, there exist $\beta_2, \beta_3, \ldots, \beta_{n+1}$ in F, not all zero, such that $\beta_2 w_2 + \beta_3 w_3 + \ldots + \beta_{n+1}w_{n+1} = 0$ i. e.

$$\beta_2 (v_2 - \alpha_{2n}\alpha_{1n}^{-1}v_1) + \beta_3 (v_3 - \alpha_{3n}\alpha_{1n}^{-1}v_1) +$$

$$\ldots + \beta_{n+1} (v_{n+1} - \alpha_{n+1n}\alpha_{1n}^{-1}v_1) = 0$$

i. e. $-(\beta_2\alpha_{2n}\alpha_{1n}^{-1} + \beta_3\alpha_{3n}\alpha_{1n}^{-1} + \ldots + \beta_{n+1}\alpha_{n+1n}\alpha_{1n}^{-1})\, v_1$

$$+ \beta_2 v_2 + \beta_3 v_3 + \ldots + \beta_{n+1} v_{n+1} = 0.$$

This gives that $v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_{n+1}$ are linearly dependent. Hence the theorem is proved.

Theorem 6.18 Every set of vectors containing a dependent subset is dependent and every subset of an independent set is independent.

Proof : First portion

Suppose that the set $S = \{v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_m\}$

constains a dependent subset, say $\{v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_r\}$

Since $\{v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_r\}$ is linearly dependent, there exist scalars $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \ldots, \alpha_r$ not all o, such that

$$\alpha_1 v_1 + \alpha_2 v_2 + \ldots + \alpha_r v_r = 0$$

Hence there exist scalars $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \ldots, \alpha_r, o, \ldots, o$ not all o (zero), such that $\alpha_1 v_1 + \alpha_2 v_2 + \ldots + \alpha_r v_r + o\, v_{r+1} + \ldots + o v_m = 0$. Accordingly, S is dependent.

Second portion : Let $T = \{v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_m\}$ be an independent set then $\beta_1 v_1 + \beta_2 v_2 + \ldots + \beta_m v_m = 0$ implies that

$$\beta_1 = \beta_2 = \ldots = \beta_m = o$$

Now let $\{v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_k\}$ $k < m$ be a subset of T, then there exist scalars $\beta_1, \beta_2, \ldots, \beta_k$ where each $\beta_i = o$, $i = 1, 2, \ldots, k$ such that $\beta_1 v_1 + \beta_2 v_2 + \ldots + \beta_k v_k = 0$. Therefore, the subset $\{v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_k\}$ is independent.

WORKED OUT EXAMPLES

Example 16. Prove that the set of vectors

$\{(2, 1, 2), (0, 1, -1), (4, 3, 3)\}$ is linearly dependent.

Proof : First Process

Set a linear combination of the given vectors equal to zero by using unknown scalars x, y, z :

$$x(2, 1, 2) + y(0, 1, -1) + z(4, 3, 3) = (0, 0, 0)$$

$$\text{or,} \quad (2x, x, 2x) + (0, y, -y) + (4z, 3z, 3z) = (0, 0, 0)$$

$$\text{or,} \quad (2x + 0 + 4z, x + y + 3z, 2x - y + 3z) = (0, 0, 0)$$

Equating corresponding components and forming the linear system, we get

$$\left.\begin{aligned} 2x + 0 + 4z &= 0 \\ x + y + 3z &= 0 \\ 2x - y + 3z &= 0 \end{aligned}\right\} \qquad (1)$$

Reduce the system to echelon form by the elementary transformations. Interchange first and second equations. Then we get the equivalent system

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x + y + 3z &= 0 \\ 2x + 0 + 4z &= 0 \\ 2x - y + 3z &= 0 \end{aligned}\right\} \qquad (2)$$

We multiply first equation by 2 and then subtract from the second and third equations respectively. Then we get the equivalent system

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x + y + 3z &= 0 \\ -2y - 2z &= 0 \\ -3y - 3z &= 0 \end{aligned}\right\} \qquad (3)$$

Divide second and third equations by–2 and–3 respectively.

Then we get the equivalent system

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x + y + 3z &= 0 \\ y + z &= 0 \\ y + z &= 0 \end{aligned}\right\} \qquad (4)$$

Since second and third equations are identical, we can disergard one of them. Then we have the equivalent system

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x + y + 3z &= 0 \\ y + z &= 0 \end{aligned}\right\} \qquad (5)$$

This system is in echelon form and has only two non-zero equations in three unknowns, hence the system has non-zero solution. Thus the original vectors are linearly dependent.

Second process : Form the matrix whose rows are the given vectors and reduce the matrix to row echelon form by using the elementary row operations.

$$\begin{bmatrix} 2 & 1 & 2 \\ 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 4 & 3 & 3 \end{bmatrix}$$

we multiply first row by 2 and then subtract from the third row.

$$\sim \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 1 & 2 \\ 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$$

we subtract second row from the third row.

$$\sim\begin{bmatrix} 2 & 1 & 2 \\ 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

This matrix is in row echelon form and has a zero row; hence the given vectors are linearly dependent.

Example 17. Show that the set of vectors

{(3, 0, 1, – 1), (2, –1, 0, 1), (1, 1, 1, –2)} is linearly dependent.

[D. U. S. 1984]

Proof : First process

Set a linear combination of the given vectors equal to the zero vector using unknown scalars x, y, z :

$x(3, 0, 1, -1) + y(2, -1, 0, 1) + z(1, 1, 1, -2) = (0, 0, 0, 0)$

or, $(3x, 0, x, -x) + (2y, -y, o, y) + (z, z, z, -2z) = (0, 0, 0, 0)$

or, $(3x + 2y + z, 0 - y + z, x + 0 + z, -x + y - 2z) = (0, 0, 0, 0)$

Form the homogeneous linear equations by equating the corresponding components.

$$\left.\begin{aligned} 3x + 2y + z &= 0 \\ -y + z &= 0 \\ x + 0 + z &= 0 \\ -x + y - 2z &= 0 \end{aligned}\right\} \quad (1)$$

Reduce the system to echelon form by elementary ransformations. Interchange first and third equations.

Then we have the equivalent system

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x + 0 + z &= 0 \\ -y + z &= 0 \\ 3x + 2y + z &= 0 \\ -x + y - 2z &= 0 \end{aligned}\right\} \quad (2)$$

we multiply second equation by –1.

We multiply first equation by 3 and then subtract from the third equation. We also add first equation with the fourth equation. Then we get the equivalent system.

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x + 0 + z &= 0 \\ y - z &= 0 \\ 2y - 2z &= 0 \\ y - z &= 0 \end{aligned}\right\} \qquad (3)$$

Again, divide third equation by 2. Then we get the equivalent system

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x + 0 + z &= 0 \\ y - z &= 0 \\ y - z &= 0 \\ y - z &= 0 \end{aligned}\right\} \qquad (4)$$

Since second, third and fourth equations are identical, we can disregard any two of them. Thus the system (4) reduces to

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x + 0 + z &= 0 \\ y - z &= 0 \end{aligned}\right\} \qquad (5)$$

This system is in echelon form and has only two non-zero equations in three unknowns ; hence the system has a non-zero solution. Thus the original vectors are linearly dependent.

Second Process : Form the matrix whose rows are the given vectors and reduce the matrix to row echelon form by using elementary row operations :

$$\begin{bmatrix} 3 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 2 & -1 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 & -2 \end{bmatrix}$$

Interchange first and third rows,

$$\sim \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 & -2 \\ 2 & -1 & 0 & 1 \\ 3 & 0 & 1 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$$

We multiply first row by 2 and 3 and then subtract from the second and third rows respectively.

$$\sim\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 & -2 \\ 0 & -3 & -2 & 5 \\ 0 & -3 & -2 & 5 \end{bmatrix}$$

We subtract second row from third row.

$$\sim\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 & -2 \\ 0 & -3 & -2 & 5 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

This matrix is in row echelon form and has a zero row; hence the given vectors are linearly dependent.

Example 18. Show that the vectors (2, – 1, 4) (3, 6, 2) and (2, 10, – 4) are linearly independent.

Proof : First Process

Set a linear combination of the given vectors equal to the zero vector using unknown scalars x, y, z :

$x(2, -1, 4) + y(3, 6, 2) + z(2, 10, -4) = (0, 0, 0)$

or, $(2x, -x, 4x) + (3y, 6y, 2y) + (2z, 10z, -4z) = (0, 0, 0)$

or, $(2x + 3y + 2z, -x + 6y + 10z, 4x + 2y - 4z) = (0, 0, 0)$

Form a homogeneous system of linear equations equating the corresponding components :

$$\left.\begin{aligned} 2x + 3y + 2z &= 0 \\ -x + 6y + 10z &= 0 \\ 4x + 2y - 4z &= 0 \end{aligned}\right\} \quad (1)$$

Reduce the system to echelon form by the elementary transfromations. Interchange first and second equations. Then we have the equivalent system

$$\left.\begin{aligned} -x + 6y + 10z &= 0 \\ 2x + 3y + 2z &= 0 \\ 4x + 2y - 4z &= 0 \end{aligned}\right\} \quad (2)$$

CamScanner

We multiply first equation by -1 and we divide third equation by 2. Then we have the equivalent system

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x - 6y - 10z &= 0 \\ 2x + 3y + 2z &= 0 \\ 2x + y - 2z &= 0 \end{aligned}\right\} \qquad (3)$$

We multiply first equation by 2 and then subtract from the second and third equations. Then the system reduces to

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x - 6y - 10z &= 0 \\ 15y + 22z &= 0 \\ 13y + 18z &= 0 \end{aligned}\right\} \qquad (4)$$

We multiply second equation by $\frac{13}{15}$ and then subtract from the third equation. Then we have the equivalent system

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x - 6y - 10z &= 0 \\ 15y + 22z &= 0 \\ -\tfrac{8}{15}z &= 0 \end{aligned}\right\} \qquad (5)$$

which is in echelon form.

In echelon form there are exactly three equations in three unknowns; hence the system has only the zero solution $x = 0$, $y = 0$, $z = 0$. Accordingly, the vectors are linearly independent.

Second Process

Form the matrix whose rows are the given vectors and reduce the matrix to row echelon form by elementary row operations.

$$\begin{bmatrix} 2 & -1 & 4 \\ 3 & 6 & 2 \\ 2 & 10 & -4 \end{bmatrix}$$

We divide third row by 2 and then interchange with the first row.

$$\sim \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 5 & -2 \\ 3 & 6 & 2 \\ 2 & -1 & 4 \end{bmatrix}$$

We multiply first row by 3 and 2 and then subtract fro the second and third rows respectively.

$$\sim \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 5 & -2 \\ 0 & -9 & 8 \\ 0 & -11 & 8 \end{bmatrix}$$

We multiply second row by $\frac{11}{9}$ and then subtract from th third row.

$$\sim \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 5 & -2 \\ 0 & -9 & 8 \\ 0 & 0 & -\frac{16}{9} \end{bmatrix}$$ which is in row echelon form.

Since the echelon matrix has no zero-row, the vectors are linearly independent.

Example 19. Let u, v and w are independent vectors. Show that u + v, u − v, u − 2v + w are also independent.

[D. U. S, 1980, 1983]

Proof : Set a linear combination of the given vectors equal to the zero vector using three unknown scalars x, y, z :

$x(u + v) + y(u - v) + z(u - 2v + w) = 0$

or, $xu + xv + yu - yv + zu - 2zv + zw = 0$

or, $(x + y + z)u + (x - y - 2z)v + zw = 0$ (1)

Since u, v and w are linearly independent, the co-efficients n the above relation (1) are each 0 (zero), that is,

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x + y + z &= 0 \\ x - y - 2z &= 0 \\ z &= 0 \end{aligned}\right\}$$

The only solution to the above system is $x = 0$, $y = 0$, $z = 0$. lence the given vectors u + v, u − v and u − 2v + w are ndependent.

Example 20. Test the dependency of the following sets :

(i) {(1, 2, − 3), (2, 0, − 1), (7, 6, − 11)}

(ii) {(2, 0, −1), (1, 1, 0), (0, − 1, 1)} **[D. U. P. 1984]**

Solution : (i) Set a linear combination of the given vectors equal to zero vector using three unknown scalars x, y, z :

$$x(1, 2, -3) + y(2, 0, -1) + z(7, 6, -11) = (0, 0, 0)$$

$$\text{or, } (x, 2x, -3x) + (2y, 0, -y) + (7z, 6z, -11z) = (0, 0, 0)$$

$$\text{or, } (x + 2y + 7z, 2x + 0 + 6z, -3x - y - 11z) = (0, 0, 0)$$

Equating the corresponding components and forming the linear system, we get

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x + 2y + 7z &= 0 \\ 2x + 0 + 6z &= 0 \\ -3x - y - 11z &= 0 \end{aligned}\right\} \quad (1)$$

Reduce the system to echelon form by the elementary operations. We multiply first equation by 2 and then subract from the second equation. We also multiply the first equation by 3 and then add with the third equation. Then we have the equivalent system

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x + 2y + 7z &= 0 \\ -4y - 8z &= 0 \\ 5y + 10z &= 0 \end{aligned}\right\} \quad (2)$$

We divide second equation by -4 and the third equation by 5. then we have the equivalent system

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x + 2y + 7z &= 0 \\ y + 2z &= 0 \\ y + 2z &= 0 \end{aligned}\right\} \quad (3)$$

Since second and third equations are identical, we can disregard one of them, Then the system (3) reduces to

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x + 2y + 7z &= 0 \\ y + 2z &= 0 \end{aligned}\right\} \quad (4)$$

The system, in echelon form, has only two non-zero equations in the three unknowns; hence the system has a non-zero solution. Thus the original vectors are linearly dependent.

CamScanner

(ii) Set a linear combination of the given vectors equal to the zero vector using unknown scalars x, y, z :

$x(2, 0, -1) + y(1, 1, 0) + z(0 - 1, 1) = (0, 0, 0)$

or, $(2x, 0, -x) + (y, y, 0) + (0, -z, z) = (0, 0, 0)$

or, $(2x + y + 0, 0 + y - z, -x + 0 + z) = (0, 0, 0)$

Equating corresponding components, and forming the linear system we get

$$\left.\begin{aligned} 2x + y + 0 &= 0 \\ 0 + y - z &= 0 \\ -x + 0 + z &= 0 \end{aligned}\right\} \qquad (1)$$

Reduce the system to echelon form by the elementary operations. We multiply third equation by — 1 and then interchange with the first equation. Then we get the equivalent system

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x + 0 - z &= 0 \\ 0 + y - z &= 0 \\ 2x + y + 0 &= 0 \end{aligned}\right\} \qquad (2)$$

We multiply first equation by 2 and then subtract from the third equation. Then we get the equivalent system

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x + 0 - z &= 0 \\ y - z &= 0 \\ y + 2z &= 0 \end{aligned}\right\} \qquad (3)$$

We subtract second equation from the third equation. Then the system (3) reduces to

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x + 0 - z &= 0 \\ y - z &= 0 \\ 3z &= 0 \end{aligned}\right\} \qquad (4)$$

From the third equation we get $z = 0$.

Putting $z = 0$ is the second and first equations we get $y = 0$. $x = 0$ respectively. Thus $x = 0$, $y = 0$, $z = 0$. Hence the given vectors are linearly independent.

CamScanner

Example 21. Let V be the vector space of all 2×3 matrices over the real field $\mathbb{R}$. Show that $A, B, C \in V$:

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -2 & 3 \\ 2 & 4 & 1 \end{bmatrix}, B = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -1 & 4 \\ 4 & 5 & -2 \end{bmatrix}$$

and $C = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & -8 & 7 \\ 2 & 10 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$ are linearly dependent.

[D.U.H.T. 1986]

Proof : Let $xA + yB + zC = 0$ where $x, y, z \in \mathbb{R}$.

Then $x\begin{bmatrix} 1 & -2 & 3 \\ 2 & 4 & 1 \end{bmatrix} + y\begin{bmatrix} 1 & -1 & 4 \\ 4 & 5 & -2 \end{bmatrix} + z\begin{bmatrix} 3 & -8 & 7 \\ 2 & 10 & -1 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$

or, $\begin{bmatrix} x & -2x & 3x \\ 2x & 4x & x \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} y & -y & 4y \\ 4y & 5y & -2y \end{bmatrix}$

$$+ \begin{bmatrix} 3z & -8z & 7z \\ 2z & 10z & -z \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

or, $\begin{bmatrix} x + y + 3z & -2x - y - 8z & 3x + 4y + 7z \\ 2x + 4y + 2z & 4x + 5y + 10z & x - 2y - z \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$

Equating corresponding components and forming the linear system, we get

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x + y + 3z &= 0 \\ 2x + 4y + 2z &= 0 \\ -2x - y - 8z &= 0 \\ 4x + 5y + 10z &= 0 \\ 3x + 4y + 7z &= 0 \\ x - 2y - z &= 0 \end{aligned}\right\}$$

Reduce the system to echelon form by the elementary operations. We multiply 1st equation by 2, – 2, 4, 3 and 1 and then subtract from 2nd, 3rd, 4th 5th and 6th equations respectively. Then we have the equivalent system.

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x + y + 3z &= 0 \\ 2y - 4z &= 0 \\ y - 2z &= 0 \\ y - 2z &= 0 \\ y - 2z &= 0 \\ -y + 2z &= 0 \end{aligned}\right\}$$

We multiply 2nd equation by $\frac{1}{2}$ and 6th equation by -1. Then we have the equivalent system

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x + y + 3z &= 0 \\ y - 2z &= 0 \\ y - 2z &= 0 \\ y - 2z &= 0 \\ y - 2z &= 0 \\ y - 2z &= 0 \end{aligned}\right\}$$

Now 2nd, 3rd, 4th, 5th & 6th equations are identical, we can disregard any four of them.

Thus we have the equivalent system

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x + y + 3z &= 0 \\ y - 2z &= 0 \end{aligned}\right\}$$

This system is in echelon form having two equations in three unknowns. So the system has $3 - 2 = 1$ free variable which is z. Thus the system has non-zero solutions.

Let $z = 1$, then $y = 2$ and $x = -5$.

$\therefore -5A + 2B + C = 0$

Hence the given matrices A, B and C are linearly dependent.

Example 22. Let P(t) be the vector space of all polynomials of degree ≤ 3 over the real field $\mathbb{R}$. Determine whether the following polynomials in P(t) are linearly dependent or independent :

$u = t^3 + 4t^2 - 2t + 3$, $v = t^3 + 6t^2 - t + 4$ and

$w = 3t^3 + 8t^2 - 8t + 7$.

Solution : Set a linear combination of the given polynomials u, v and w equal to the zero polynomial using the unknown scalars x, y and z; that is, $xu + yv + zw = 0$.

Thus $x(t^3+4t^2-2t+3)+y(t^3+6t^2-t+4)+z(3t^3+8t^2-8t+7)=0$

or, $xt^3+4xt^2-2xt+3x+yt^3+6yt^2-yt+4y+3zt^3+8zt^2$
$-8zt+7z=0$

or, $(x+y+3z)t^3+(4x+6y+8z)t^2+(-2x-y-8z)t+3x+4y+7z=0$

Setting the coefficients of the powers of t each equal to 0 (zero), we get the following homogeneous linear system :

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x+y+3z&=0\\ 4x+6y+8z&=0\\ -2x-y-8z&=0\\ 3x+4y+7z&=0 \end{aligned}\right\}$$

Reduce this system to echelon form by the elementary operations. We multiply 1st equation by 4, −2 and 3 and then subtract from 2nd, 3rd and 4th equations respectively. Then we have the equivalent system

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x+y+3z&=0\\ 2y-4z&=0\\ y-2z&=0\\ y-2z&=0 \end{aligned}\right\}$$

Interchange 2nd and 4th equations. Then we have the equivalent system

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x+y+3z&=0\\ y-2z&=0\\ y-2z&=0\\ 2y-4z&=0 \end{aligned}\right\}$$

We multiply 2nd equation by 1 and 2 and then subtract from the 3rd & 4th equations respectively. Then we have the equivalent system

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x+y+3z&=0\\ y-2z&=0\\ 0+0&=0\\ 0+0&=0 \end{aligned}\right\} \Rightarrow \left.\begin{aligned} x+y+3z&=0\\ y-2z&=0 \end{aligned}\right\}$$

This system is in echelon form having two equations in three unknowns. So the system has 3 – 2 = 1 frree variable which is z.

Hence the system has non -zero solutions. that is,

$xu + yv + zw = 0$ does not imply that $x = y = z = 0$.

Thus the given polynomials u, v and w are linearly dependent.

EXERCISES–6(B)

1. Show that the vectors (1, 0, 0), (0, 1, 0) and (1, 1, 0) in V_3 (IR) are linearly dependent. **[D.U.P. 1980]**

2. Which of the following sets of vectors in $\mathbb{R}^3$ are linearly independent?

(i) {(1, 0, 1), (–3, 2, 6), (4, 5, –2)}

(ii) {(1, –4, 2), (3, –5, 1), (2, 7, 8), (–1, 1, 1)}

Answers : (i) Independent (ii) Dependent.

3. Prove that the following sets of vectors in $\mathbb{R}^3$ are linearly independent;

(i) {(1, 0, 2), (–1, 1, 0), (0, 2, 3)}

(ii) {(1, 1, 1), (0, 1, 1,) (0, 0, 1)}

4. (i) Prove that the set of vectors (2, 1, 1), (3, – 4, 6) and (4, –9, 11) is linearly dependent in $\mathbb{R}^3$. **[D. U. S. 1983]**

(ii) Test the set {1, 0, 1), (0, 2, 2), (3, 7, 1)} for linear dependence on $\mathbb{R}^3$.

Answer : (ii) the set is linearly independent.

5. Show that the set of vectors

S = {(1, 0, 0), (0, 1, 0), (0, 0, 1), (1, 1, 1)} in $\mathbb{R}^3$ is linearly dependent but that any set of three of them is linearly independent.

6. Test whether the following sets are linearly independent :

(i) $\{(0, 0, 1), (1, 1, -2), (3, 4, 1)\}$

(ii) $\{(1, -1, 3) (1, 4, 5), (2 -3, 7)\}$

(iii) $\{(1, 1, -1), (1, 2, 3), (4, 5, -3)\}$ **[D.U.S. 1981, D.U. P. 1981]**

Answers : (i) Independent (ii) Independent (iii) dependent.

7. Examine the linear dependence of the following two subsets of $\mathbb{R}^3$:

(i) $S = \{(1, 0, -1), (-3, 2, 6), (4, 5, -2)\}$

(ii) $T = (1, 1,1), (0, 0, 0), (1, 1, 0)\}$ **[D. U. P. 1983]**

Answers : (i) S is linearly independent.

(ii) T is linearly dependent.

8. (i) Decide whether $S = \{(1, -4, 2), (3, -5, 1), (-1, 1, 1)\}$ is a linearly independent subset of $\mathbb{R}^3$. **[D. U. P. 1982]**

(ii) Consider the subset $\{(1, 3, 2), (1, -7, -8) (2, 1, -1)\}$ of $\mathbb{R}^3$. Test the dependence of the subset. **[D. U. P. 1979]**

Answers : (i) S is linearly independent.

(ii) The subset is linearly dependent.

9. Show that the vectors $u = (6, 2, 3, 4)$, $v = (0, 5, -3, 1)$ and $w = (0, 0, 7, -2)$ are linearly independent. **[D.U. S. 1980]**

10. If the vector set $\{v_1, v_2, v_3\}$ is independent prove that

(a) the set $\{v_1 + v_2 - 2v_3, v_1 - v_2 - v_3, v_1 + v_3\}$ is independent and (b) the set $\{v_1 + v_2 - 3v_3, v_1 + 3v_2 - v_3, v_2 + v_3\}$ is dependent.

[D. U. P. 1984]

11. Determine whether or not the following vectors in $\mathbb{R}^3$ are linearly dependent or independent :

(i) $v_1 = (1, -2, 1), v_2 = (2, 1, -1), v_3 = (7, -4, 1)$ **[C.U.P. 1973]**

(ii) $u = (1, -2, 4, 1), v = (2, 1, 0, -3)$ and $w = (3, -6, 1, 4)$

[C. U. P. 1978]

Answers : (i) vectors are linearly dependent.

(ii) vectors are linearly independent.

CamScanner

12. Determine whether each of the following sets are linearly dependent or linearly independent :

(i) {(0, 1, 0, 1) (1, 2, 3, –1) (8, 4, 3, 2), (0, 3, 2, 0)}

(ii) {(1, 3, 2), (1, –7, –8), (2, 1, –1)} [D. U. Prel. 1983]

Answers : (i) vectors are linearly independent.

(ii) vectors are linearly dependent

13. (i) Show that the set {(4, 4, 0, 0), (0, 0, 6, 6) (–5, 0, 5, 5)} is linearly independent in $\mathbb{R}^4$.

(ii) Prove that the set {(1, 0, 2, 4), (0, 1. 9, 2), (–5, 2, 8, – 16)} is linearly dependent in $\mathbb{R}^4$.

14. Determine whether the following sets of vectors in $\mathbb{R}^4$ are linearly independent :

(i) {(3, 0, 4, 1), (6, 2, –1, 2), (–1, 3, 5, 1), (–3, 7, 8, 3)}

(ii) {(4, – 4, 8, 0), (2, 2, 4, 0), (6, 0, 0, 2), (6, 3, – 3, 0)}

Answers : (i) The set is linearly independent.

(ii) The set is linearly independent.

15. Show that the following sets of vectors in $\mathbb{R}^3$ are linearly dependent :

(i) {(1, 1, –1), (1, 2, 3), (3, 5, –3)} [D. U. S. 1981]

(ii) {(2, 1, 1), (3, –4, 6) (4, – 9, 11)} [D. U. S. 1983]

16. Show that the following sets of vectors in $\mathbb{R}^3$ are linearly independent :

(i) {(1, –1, 3), (1, 4, 5), (2, – 3,7)} [D. U. H. 1974]

(ii) {(1, –2, 1), (2, 1, –1), (7, –4, 1)} [C. U. P. 1973]

17. Determine whether the following sets of vectors in $\mathbb{R}^3$ are linearly dependent or independent :

(i) {(1, –2, 1), (2, 1, –1), (7, –4, 1)} [C. U. P. 1973]

(ii) {(–1, 1, 1), (1, –4, 2) (3, –5, 1)} [D. U. P. 1982]

Answers : (i) Linearly dependent

(ii) Linearly independent.

CamScanner

18. Prove that the following set of vectors in $\mathbb{R}^3$ is linearly dependent :

$\{(3, 0, -3), (-1, 1, 2), (4, 2, -2), (2, 1, 1)\}$.

19. Which of the following sets of vectors in $\mathbb{R}^3$ is linearly dependent :

(i) $\{(2, -1, 4)\ (3, 6, 2), (2, 10, -4)\}$

(ii) $\{(1, 3, 3), (0, 1, 4), (5, 6, 3), (7, 2, -1)\}$

Answers : (i) Linearly independent (ii) Linearly dependent

20. Determine whether the following sets of vectors in $\mathbb{R}^4$ are linearly dependent or independent :

(i) $\{(1, 2, 1, -2), (0, -2, -2, 0)\ (0, 2, 3, 1), (3, 0, -3, 6)\}$

(ii) $\{(3, 0, 4, 1), (6, 2, -1, 2), (-1, 3, 5, 1), (-3, 7, 8, 3)\}$

Answers :

(i) Linearly independent (ii) Linearly independent.

21. For which real values of λ do the following vectors form a linearly dependent set in $\mathbb{R}^3$?

$$v_1 = \left(\lambda, -\frac{1}{2}, -\frac{1}{2}\right),\ v_2 = \left(-\frac{1}{2}, \lambda, -\frac{1}{2}\right) \text{ and } v_3 = \left(-\frac{1}{2}, -\frac{1}{2}, \lambda\right).$$

Answer : $\lambda = -\frac{1}{2}$, $\lambda = 1$.

22. Show that the set of vectors in $\mathbb{R}^4$

$\{(2, 1, -1, 1), (3, -2, 4, 5), (-1, 3, 2, 6), (4, 2, 5, 12)\}$ is linearly dependent.

23. If u, v and w are linearly independent vectors in a vector space V (F), then show that the vectors

(i) $u + v,\ v + w,\ w + u$

(ii) $u + v,\ u - v,\ u - 2v + w$

are also linearly independent.

24. Show that the vectors

(1, 1, 2, 4), (2, −1, −5, 2), (1, −1, −4, 0) and (2, 1, 1, 6)

are linearly dependent in $\mathbb{R}^4$.

25. Let V be the vector space of all 2×2 matrices over the real field $\mathbb{R}$. Show that the matrices A, B, C $\in$ V are linearly independent where

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}, B = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \text{ and } C = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$ [R.U.M. Sc. P. 1988]

26. In vector space V ($\mathbb{R}$) of all 2×2 matrices determine whether the following matrices are linearly dependent :

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 3 & 1 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 3 & -1 \\ 2 & 2 \end{bmatrix} \text{ and } \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -5 \\ -4 & 0 \end{bmatrix}.$$

Answer : Linearly dependent

27. Let V($\mathbb{R}$) be the vector space of all 2×3 matrices over the real field $\mathbb{R}$. Show that the following matrices in V($\mathbb{R}$) are linearly independent :

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 1 & -1 \\ 3 & -2 & 4 \end{bmatrix}, B = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & -3 \\ -2 & 0 & 5 \end{bmatrix} \text{ and } C = \begin{bmatrix} 4 & -1 & 2 \\ 1 & -2 & 3 \end{bmatrix}.$$

28. Let V_2 ($\mathbb{R}$) be the vector space of all polynomials of degree ≤ 2. Show that the set

$\{t^2 + t + 2, 2t^2 + t, 3t^2 + 2t + 2\}$ of polynomials is linearly dependent. [D. U. P. 1987]

29. Let V($\mathbb{R}$) be the vector space of all polynomials of degree ≤ 3. Determine whether the following polynomials are linearly dependent or independent :

(i) $t^3 + 2t^2 + 4t - 1, 2t^3 - t^2 - 3t + 5, t^3 - 4t^2 + 2t + 3$

(ii) $t^3 - 3t^2 - 2t + 3, 2t^3 - 5t^2 - 5t + 7, t^3 - 2t^2 - 3t + 3$

Answers : (i) Linearly independent

(ii) Linearly independent.

6.15 Basis and dimension of a vector space

Definition : Let V be a vector space and $\{v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_n\}$ a finite set of vectors in V.

We call $\{v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_n\}$ a **basis** for V if and only if

(i) $\{v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_n\}$ is linearly independent.

(ii) $\{v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_n\}$ spans v.

Definition : Let $e_1 = (1, 0, 0, \ldots, 0)$, $e_2 = (0, 1, 0, \ldots, 0)$, ...

$e_n = (0, 0, \ldots, 0, 1)$. Then $\{e_1, e_2, \ldots, e_n\}$ is a linearly independent set in $\mathbb{R}^n$. Since any vector $v = \{v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_n\}$ in $\mathbb{R}^n$ can be written as $v = v_1e_1 + v_2e_2 + \ldots + v_ne_n$, $\{e_1, e_2, \ldots, e_n\}$ spans $\mathbb{R}^n$. Therefore, $\{e_1, e_2, \ldots, e_n\}$ is a basis. It is called the **standard basis** or **usual basis** for $\mathbb{R}^n$.

Definition : A non-zero vector space V is called **finite dimensional** if it contains finite set of vectors $\{v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_n\}$ which forms a basis for V. If no such set exists, V is called **infinite dimensional.**

Definition : The **dimension** of a finite dimensional vector space is the number of vectors in any basis of it.

Or, equivalently, the **dimension** of a vector space is equal to the maximum number of linearly independent vectors contained in it.

Definition : If $v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_n$ are vectors of a vector space V such that every vector $v \in V$ can be written in the form $v = \alpha_1 v_1 + \alpha_2 v_2 + \ldots + \alpha_n v_n$ where α_i are scalars, then $v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_n$ is called a **generating system** of the vector space V.

Theorem 6.19 If V is a vector space of dimension n, every generating system of V contains n, but not more than n, linearly independent vectors.

Proof : Let $v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_m$ be any generating system of V. Let r be the greatest number of linearly independent vectors that can be chosen from $v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_m$. Then we may assume that $v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_r$ are linearly independent but that $v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_r, v_{r+j}$ are linearly dependent for $j = 1, 2, 3, \ldots, m-r$, Hence we have a non-trivial relation $\alpha_1 v_1 + \alpha_2 v_2 + \ldots + \alpha_r v_r + \alpha_{r+j} v_{r+j} = 0$ ... (1) in which $\alpha_{r+j} \neq 0$, since otherwise the above equation (1) would be a non-trival relation between $v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_r$ contrary to the linear independence of these vectors. Hence the above equation (1) defines v_{r+j} as a linear combination of $v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_r$ for $j = 1, 2, \ldots, m-r$. Therefore, it follows that $v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_r$, is also a generating system of V.

Now any set of more than r vectors of V is linearly dependent. Since the dimension of V is n, V certainly contains n linearly independent vectors. We must have $n \leq r$. But since V contains r linearly independent vectors $u_1, u_2, \ldots, u_r$ we also have $r \leq n$. Hence $r = n$ and the theorem is proved.

Theorem 6.20 If V is a vector space of dimension n, every basis of V contains exactly n linearly independent vectors, conversely, any n linearly independent vectors of V constitute a basis of V.

Proof : Since every basis is a generating system, it contains n but not more than n linearly independent vectors. Since the vectors of a basis are linearly independent, therefore, it contains exactly n vectors in all.

Conversely, let $v_1\ v_2, \ldots, v_n$ be any n linearly independent vectors of V and let v be any other vector of V. Since n is the dimension of V, the (n + 1) vectors $v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_n, v$ are linearly dependent and there exist a non-trival relation of the form

$\alpha_1 v_1 + \alpha_2 v_2 + \ldots + \alpha_n v_n + \alpha v = 0$. Moreover $\alpha \neq 0$. Since otherwise we would have a non-trival relation among $v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_n$. Hence we have

$$v = -\frac{\alpha_1}{\alpha} v_1 - \frac{\alpha_2}{\alpha} v_2 - \ldots - \frac{\alpha_n}{\alpha} v_n.$$

It follows that every vector $v \in V$ is a linear combination of $v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_n$ and hence these n vectors form a generating system. Since they are linearly independent, they also form a basis of V. Hence the theorem is proved.

Theorem 6.21 Let V be a vector space of dimension n and let $v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_r$, $(r < n)$ be any r linearly independent vectors of V. Then there exist $n - r$ vectors $v_{r+1}, v_{r+2}, \ldots, v_n$ of V which together with $v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_r$ constitute a basis of V.

Proof : Since $r < n$, the vectors $v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_r$, do not generate the whole space V. Hence there exists a vector v_{r+1}, of V that is not in the space generated by $v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_r$. The vectors $v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_r, v_{r+1}$ are therefore linearly independent, for if

$$\alpha_1 v_1 + \alpha_2 v_2 + \ldots + \alpha_r v_r + \alpha_{r+1} v_{r+1} = 0.$$

We must have $\alpha_{r+1} = 0$. Since otherwise v_{r+1} would belong to the space generated by $v_1, v_2, \ldots\ldots, v_r$. Then it follows that $\alpha_1 = \alpha_2 = \ldots \alpha_r = 0$ since $v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_r$ are linearly independent.

Now if $r + 1 < n$, we can repeat this argument to obtain a vector v_{r+2} such that $v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_r, v_{r+1}, v_{r+2}$ are linearly independent and so on until we have n linearly independent vectors $v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_r, v_{r+1}, v_{r+2}, \ldots, v_n$. These n vectors constitute a basis of V. Hence the theorem is proved.

Theorem 6.22 If $\{v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_n\}$ is a basis of the vector space V, then every vector $v \in V$ can be expressed uniquely in the form $v = \alpha_1 v_1 + \alpha_2 v_2 + \ldots + \alpha_n v_n$.

Proof : Since $\{v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_n\}$ is a basis of V, any vector $v \in V$ can be written as a linear combination of the vectors $v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_n$ i. e, $v = \alpha_1 v_1 + \alpha_2 v_2 + \ldots + \alpha_n v_n$ where α_i are scalars. Therefore, we have only to show that the co-efficients $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \ldots, \alpha_n$ are uniquely determined by v. Suppose that

$$v = \alpha_1 v_1 + \alpha_2 v_2 + \ldots + \alpha_n v_n = \beta_1 v_1 + \beta_2 v_2 + \ldots + \beta_n v_n$$

Then $(\alpha_1 - \beta_1)\ v_1 + (\alpha_2 - \beta_2)\ v_2 + \ldots + (\alpha_n - \beta_n)\ v_n = 0$

Since $v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_n$ are linearly independent, it follows that $\alpha_1 - \beta_1 = 0$, $\alpha_2 - \beta_2 = 0$, $\alpha_n - \beta_n = 0$, that is, $\alpha_1 = \beta_1$, $\alpha_2 = \beta_2, \ldots, \alpha_n = \beta_n$. Hence the theorem is proved.

Theorem 6.23 Let W be a subspace of an n-dimensional vector space V. Then dim W < n, In particular, if dim W = n then W = V.

Proof : Since V is of dimension n, any n + 1 or more vectors are linearly dependent.

Furthermore, since a basis of W consists of linearly independent vectors, it can not contain more than n elements. Accordingly dim W ≤ n. In particular, if $\{w_1, w_2, \ldots, w_n\}$ is a basis of W, then since it is an independent set with n elements, it is also a basis of V. Thus W = V, when dim W = n. Hence the theorem is proved.

Theorem 6.24 If S and T are subspaces of a finite dimensional vector space V over the field F then

$$\dim (S + T) = \dim S + \dim T - \dim (S \cap T)$$

Proof : Let dim S = s, dim T = t and dim $(S \cap T)$ = r.

Let $\{u_1, u_2, \ldots, u_r\}$ be a basis of $S \cap T$. Since $S \cap T$ is a subspace of S, We can extend the above basis to a basis of S, say $\{u_1, u_2, \ldots, u_r, v_1, \ldots, v_{s-r}\}$. This basis has s elements since dim S = s Similarly, we can extend the basis $\{u_1, u_2 \ldots, u_r\}$ to a basis of T; say $\{u_1, u_2, \ldots, u_r, w_1, w_2, \ldots, w_{t-r}\}$

Let $A = \{u_1, u_2, \ldots, u_r, v_1, \ldots, v_{s-r}, w_1, \ldots, w_{t-r}\}$.

Clearly, A has exactly $s + t - r$ elements. Thus the theorem is proved if we can show that A is a basis of $S + T$. Since $\{u_i, v_j\}$ generates S and $\{u_i, w_k\}$ generates T, the union $A = \{u_i, v_j, w_k\}$ generates $S + T$. Now we have only to show that A is linearly independent.

Suppose that $\alpha_1 u_1 + \alpha_2 u_2 + \ldots + \alpha_r u_r + \beta_1 u_1 + \ldots + \beta_{s-r} v_{s-r} \cdot$

$$+ \gamma_1 w_1 + \ldots + \gamma_{t-r} w_{t-r} = 0. \qquad (1)$$

where $\alpha_i, \beta_j, \gamma_k$ are scalars in F.

Let $v = \alpha_i u_1 + \ldots + \alpha_r u_r + \beta_1 v_1 + \ldots + \beta_{s-r} v_{s-r}$ (2)

Then form (1) we get

$v = -\gamma_1 w_1 - \gamma_2 w_2 - \ldots - \gamma_{t-r} w_{t-r},$ (3)

Since $\{u_i, v_j\} \in S$, $v \in S$ by (2) and

Since $\{w_k\} \subset T$, $v \in T$, by (3)

Accordingly $v \in S \cap T$.

Now since $\{u_i\}$ is a basis of $S \cap T$, there exist scalars $\delta_1, \ldots, \delta_r$ such that $v = \delta_1 u_1 + \delta_2 u_2 + \ldots + \delta_r u_r$. Thus by (3), we have

$\delta_1 u_1 + \alpha_2 u_2 + \ldots + \delta_r u_r + \gamma_1 w_1 + \ldots + \gamma_{t-r} w_{t-r} = 0.$

But $\{u_i, w_k\}$ is a basis of T and so is independent. Hence the above equation forces $\gamma_1 = 0, \ldots, \gamma_{t-r} = 0$. Substituting this into (1), we get $\alpha_i u_1 + \ldots + \alpha_r u_r + \beta_1 v_1 + \ldots + \beta_{s-r} v_{s-r} = 0.$

But $\{u_i, v_j\}$ is a basis of S and so is independent. Hence the above equation forces $\alpha_1 = 0, \ldots, \alpha_r = 0, \beta_1 = 0, \ldots, \beta_{s-r} = 0.$

So the equation (1) implies that α_i, β_j and γ_k are all 0 (zero). So $A = \{u_i, v_j, w_k\}$ is linearly independent and form a basis of $S + T$.

Thus $\dim (S + T) = s + t - r = \dim S + \dim T - \dim (S \cap T)$.

Hence the theorem is proved.

Corollary : If S and T are two subspaces of a finite dimensional vector space V such that $S \cap T = \{0\}$ then $\dim (S + T) = \dim S + \dim T$.

Proof : Since $S \cap T = \{0\}$, $\dim (S \cap T) = 0$

Thus $\dim (S + T) = \dim S + \dim T - \dim (S \cap T)$ implies that $\dim (S + T) = \dim S + \dim T$. Hence the corollary is proved.

6.16 Quotient space

Definition : Let W be any subspace of a vector space V over the field F. Let v be any element of V. Then the set $W + v = \{\omega + v : \omega \in W\}$ is called a **right coset** of W in V generated by v.

Obviously, W + v and v + W are both subsets of V. Since addition in V is commutative, therefore, we have W + v = v + W. Hence we shall call W + v as simply a **coset** of W in V generated by v.

Properties : (i) $o \in V \Rightarrow W + o = W$

(ii) $\omega \in W \Rightarrow W + \omega = W$

(iii) If $W + v_1$ and $W + v_2$ are two cosets of W in V, then $W + v_1 = W + v_2 \Rightarrow v_1 - v_2 \in W$

Theorem 6.25 If W is any subspace of a vector space V over the field F, then the set V/W of all cosets $W + v_1$ where v_1 is any arbitrary element of V, is a vector space over F for the vector addition and scalar multiplication compositions defined as follows :

$(W + v_1) + (W + v_2) = W + (v_1 + v_2)$ for every $v_1, v_2 \in V$.

and $\alpha (W + v_1) = W + \alpha v_1$ where $\alpha \in F$ and $v_1 \in V$.

Proof : Let $v_1, v_2 \in V$ then $v_1 + v_2 \in V$ and also

$\alpha \in F$, $v_1 \in V \Rightarrow \alpha v_1 \in V$. Therefore, $W + (v_1 + v_2) \in V/W$ and also $W + \alpha v_1 \in V/W$.

Thus V/W is closed with respect to addition of cosets and scalar multiplication as defined above.

Let $W + v_1 = W + v_1'$ where $v_1, v_1' \in V$

and $W + v_2 = W + v_2'$ where $v_2, v_2' \in V$.

Now we have $W + v_1 = W + v_1' \Rightarrow v_1 - v_1' \in W$

and $W + v_2 = W + v_2' \Rightarrow v_2 - v_2' \in W$.

Since W is a subspace of V, we have

$$v_1 - v_1' \in W,\ v_2 - v_2' \in W \Rightarrow v_1 - v_1' + v_2 - v_2' \in W$$
$$\Rightarrow (v_1 + v_2) - (v_1' + v_2') \in W$$
$$\Rightarrow W + (v_1 + v_2) = W + (v_1' + v_2')$$
$$\Rightarrow (W + v_1) + (W + v_2) = (W + v_1') + (W + v_2')$$

Therefore, **addition of cosets** in V/W is well-defined.

Again, $\beta \in F$, $v_1 - v_1' \in W \Rightarrow \beta(v_1 - v_1') \in W$

$$\Rightarrow \beta v_1 - \beta v_1' \in W$$
$$\Rightarrow W + \beta v_1 = W + \beta v_1'.$$

Therefore, **scalar multiplication** in V/W is also well defined.

(i) Addition is commutative

Let $W + v_1$, $W + v_2$ be any two elements of V/W.

Then $(W + v_1) + (W + v_2) = W + (v_1 + v_2) = W + (v_2 + v_1)$

$$= (W + v_2) + (W + v_1)$$

(iii) Addition is associative

Let $W + v_1$, $W + v_2$ and $W + v_3$ be any three elements of V/W.

Then $(W + v_1) + [(W + v_2) + (W + v_3)]$

$$= (W + v_1) + [W + (v_2 + v_3)]$$
$$= W + [v_1 + (v_2 + v_3)]$$
$$= W + [(v_1 + v_2) + v_3]$$
$$= [W + (v_1 + v_2)] + (W + v_3)$$
$$= [(W + v_1) + (W + v_2)] + (W + v_3)$$

(iii) Existence of additive identity

If O is the zero vector of V, then

$W + O = W \in V/W$. If $W + v_1$ is any element of V/W,

then $(W + O) + (W + v_1) = W + (O + v_1) = W + v_1$

$\therefore W + O = W$ is the additive identity;

(iv) Existence of additive inverse.

If $W + v_1$ is any element of V/W, then

$W + (-v_1) = W - v_1 \in V/w$. Also we have

$(W + v_1) + (W - v_1) = W + (v_1 - v_1) = W + O = W.$

$\therefore W - v_1$ is the additive inverse of $W + v_1$.

Thus V/W is an **abelian group** with respect to addition composition.

Further for scalar multiplication, we observe that if $\alpha, \beta \in F$ and $W + v_1, W + v_2 \in V/W$, then

(v) $\alpha[(W + v_1) + (W + v_2)] = \alpha[W + (v_1 + v_2)]$

$= W + \alpha(v_1 + v_2)$ Since $\alpha W = W$

$= W + (\alpha v_1 + \alpha v_2)$

$= (W + \alpha v_1) + (W + \alpha v_2)$

$= \alpha(W + v_1) + \alpha(W + v_2).$

(vi) $(\alpha + \beta)(W + v_1) = W + (\alpha + \beta)v_1$

$= W + (\alpha v_1 + \beta v_1)$

$= (W + \alpha v_1) + (W + \beta v_1)$

$= \alpha(W + v_1) + \beta(W + v_1)$

(vii) $\alpha\beta(W + v_1) = W + (\alpha\beta)v_1 = W + \alpha(\beta v_1)$

$= \alpha(W + \beta v_1) = \alpha[\beta(W + v_1)]$

(viii) $1(W + v_1) = W + 1v_1 = W + v_1$ where $1 \in F$.

Thus V/W is a vector space over the field F for the addition of cosets and scalar multiplication. The vector space V/W is called the **Quotient space** of V relative to W.

The coset $W + O = W$ is the **zero vector** of this vector space.

6.17 Dimension of Quotient Space.

Theorem 6.26 If W is a subspace of a finite dimensional vector space V over the field F; then dim V/W = dim V − dim W.

Proof : Let m be the dimension of the subspace W of the vector space V. Let $S = \{w_1, w_2, \ldots, w_m\}$ be a basis of W. Since S is linearly independent subset of V, therefore, it can be extended to a basis of V.

Let $S' = \{w_1, w_2, \ldots, w_m, v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_r\}$ be a basis of V.

Then dim V = m + r.

$\therefore$ dim V − dim W = (m + r) − m = r.

So we have to prove that dim V/W = r.

Now we claim that the set of r cosets

$S_1 = \{W + v_1, W + v_2, \ldots, W + v_r\}$ is a basis of V/W.

First we have to show that S_1 is linearly independent.

The zero vector of V/W is W.

Let $\alpha_1 (W + v_1) + \alpha_2 (W + v_2) + \ldots + \alpha_r (W + v_r) = W$

$\Rightarrow (W + \alpha_1 v_1) + (W + \alpha_2 v_2) + \ldots + (W + \alpha_r v_r) = W$

$\Rightarrow W + (\alpha_1 v_1 + \alpha_2 v_2 + \ldots + \alpha_r v_r) = W$

$\Rightarrow \alpha_1 v_1 + \alpha_2 v_2 + \ldots + \alpha_r v_r \in W$

$\Rightarrow \alpha_1 v_1 + \alpha_2 v_2 + \ldots + \alpha_r v_r = \beta_1 w_1 + \beta_2 w_2 + \ldots + \beta_m w_m$

Since $\{w_1, w_2, \ldots, w_m\}$ is a basis of W.

$\Rightarrow \alpha_1 v_1 + \alpha_2 v_2 + \ldots + \alpha_r v_r - \beta_1 w_1 - \beta_2 w_2 - \ldots - \beta_m w_m = 0$

$\Rightarrow \alpha_1 = 0, \alpha_2 = 0, \ldots, \alpha_r = 0$

Since the vectors $v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_r, w_1, w_2, \ldots, w_m$ are linearly independent. Thus the set $S_1 = \{W + v_1, W + v_2, \ldots, W + v_r\}$ is linearly independent.

Now we have to show that $L(S_1) = V/W$. i.e S_1 spans V/W.

Let W + v be any element of V/W. Then $v \in V$ can be expressed as

$v = \gamma_1 w_1 + \gamma_2 w_2 + \ldots + \gamma_m w_m + \delta_1 v_1 + \delta_2 v_2 + \ldots + \delta_r v_r$

$= w + \delta_1 v_1 + \delta_2 v_2 + \ldots + \delta_r v_r$

where $w = \gamma_1 w_1 + \gamma_2 w_2 + \ldots + \gamma_m w_m \in W$.

So $W + v = W + (w + \delta_1 v_1 + \delta_2 v_2 + \ldots + \delta_r v_r)$

$$= (W + w) + \delta_1 v_1 + \delta_2 v_2 + \ldots, + \delta_r v_r$$

$$= W + \delta_1 v_1 + \delta_2 v_2 + \ldots + \delta_r v_r$$

Since $w \in W \therefore W + w = W$

$$= (W + \delta_1 v_1) + (W + \delta_2 v_2) + \ldots + (W + \delta_r v_r)$$

$$= (\delta_1 (W + v_1) + \delta_2 (W + v_2) + \ldots + \delta_r (W + v_r)$$

Thus any element $W + v$ of V/W can be expressed as linear combination of $S_1 = \{W + v_1, W + v_2, \ldots, W + v_r\}$

$\therefore V/W = L(S_1)$

So S_1 is a basis of V/W

Thus $\dim V/W = r = \dim V - \dim W$.

Hence the theorem is proved.

6.18 Coordinates of a vector relative to a basis

Let $\{v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_n\}$ be a basis of an n dimensional vector space V over the field F. Then any vector $v \in V$ can be expressed uniquely in the form $v = x_1 v_1 + x_2 v_2 + \ldots + x_n v_n$

where $x_i \in F$ $(1 \le i \le n)$ and $(x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_n)$ are called the **co-ordinates** of v relative to the given basis. There is clearly one-one correspondence between the vector $v \in V$ and ordered n-tuples $(x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_n)$ with elements in F.

One can easily verify that if v, w have co-ordinates $(x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_n)$, $(y_1, y_2, \ldots, y_n)$ respectively and $\alpha \in F$, then $v + w$ has co-ordinates $(x_1 + y_1, x_2 + y_2, \ldots, x_n + y_n)$ and αv has co-ordinates $(\alpha x_1, \alpha x_2, \ldots, \alpha x_n)$.

6.19 Solution space of a homogeneous system of linear equations

$$\left.\begin{array}{l} a_{11}x_1 + a_{12}x_2 + \ldots + a_{1n}x_n = 0 \\ a_{21}x_1 + a_{22}x_2 + \ldots + a_{2n}x_n = 0 \\ \ldots \quad \ldots \quad \ldots \quad \ldots \quad \ldots \\ \ldots \quad \ldots \quad \ldots \quad \ldots \quad \ldots \\ a_{m1}x_1 + a_{m2}x_2 + \ldots + a_{mn}x_n = 0 \end{array}\right\} \qquad (1)$$

is a **homogeneous system** of m linear equations in n unknowns over the real field $\mathbb{R}$. The solution set W of (1) constitutes a subspace of $\mathbb{R}^n$ and this subspace is called the **solution space** of the system of linear equations.

As for examples

(i) The solution set $W = \{(2a, a) : a \in \mathbb{R}\}$ of $x - 2y = 0$ is a solution space and W is a subspace of $\mathbb{R}^2$.

(ii) The solution set $W = \{(-2a, -a, a)\ a \in \mathbb{R}\}$ of the linear system of equations $\left.\begin{array}{r} x - y + z = 0 \\ y + z = 0 \end{array}\right\}$ is a solution space and W is a subspace of $\mathbb{R}^3$.

Remark : The solution set W of the non-homogeneous linear system $\sum_{j=1}^{n} a_{ij} x_j = b_i \ (i = 1, 2, \ldots, m)$ (2)

over the real field $\mathbb{R}$ does not constitute a subspace of $\mathbb{R}^n$.

Theorem 6.27 (Without proof)

The following three statements are equivalent :

(i) The system of linear equations $AX = B$ has a solution

(ii) B is a linear combination of the columns of A

(iii) The coefficient matrix A and the augmented matrix (A, B) have the same rank.

6.20 Basis and dimension for the general solution of a homogeneous linear system.

Let W denote the general solution of a homogeneous linear system. The non-zero solution vectors $u_1, u_2, \ldots, u_s$ are said to form a **basis** of W if every solution vector $\omega \in W$ can be expressed uniquely as a linear combination of $u_1, u_2, \ldots, u_s$. The number s of such basis vectors is called the **dimension** of W, written as dim W = s. [If W = {0}, we define dim W = 0]

6.21 Procedure of finding the basis and dimension of the solution space of a homogeneous linear system.

Let W be the general solution of a homogeneous linear system and suppose an echelon form of the system has s free variables. Let $u_1, u_2, \ldots, u_s$ be the solutions obtained by setting one of the free variables equal to one (or any non-zero constant) and the remaining free variables equal to zero.

Then dim W = s and $u_1, u_2, \ldots, u_s$ form a basis of W.

Theorem 6.28 The dimension of the solution space W of the homogeneous system of linear equations AX = 0 is n–r where n is the number of unknowns and r is the rank of the coefficient matrix A.

Proof : Suppose $u_1, u_2, \ldots, u_r$ form a basis for the column space of A (There are r such vectors since rank of A is r). By theorem 6.27, each system $AX = u_i$ has a solution say v_i. Hence

$Av_1 = u_1, Av_2 = u_2, \ldots, Av_r = u_r$ (1)

Suppose dim W = s and $w_1, w_2, \ldots, w_s$ form a basis of W.

Let $B = \{v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_r, w_1, w_2, \ldots, w_s\}$

We claim that B is a basis of $\mathbb{R}^n$.

Thus we need to prove that B spans $\mathbb{R}^n$ and that B is linearly independent.

(i) Proof of "B spans $\mathbb{R}^n$ "

Suppose $v \in \mathbb{R}^n$ and $Av = u$. Then $u = Av$ belongs to the column space of A and hence Av is a linear combination of the u_i, say $Av = \alpha_1 u_1 + \alpha_2 u_2 + \ldots + \alpha_r u_r$ (2)

Let $v' = v - \alpha_1 v_1 - \alpha_2 v_2 - \ldots - \alpha_r v_r$. Then using (1) and (2) we have

$$\begin{aligned} A(v') &= A(v - \alpha_1 v_1 - \alpha_2 v_2 - \ldots - \alpha_r u_r) \\ &= Av - \alpha_1 Av_1 - \alpha_2 Av_2 - \ldots - \alpha_r Av_r \\ &= Av - (\alpha_1 u_1 + \alpha_2 u_2 + \ldots + \alpha_r u_r) \\ &= Av - Av = 0 \end{aligned}$$

Thus v' belongs to the solution space W and hence v' is a linear combination of w_i, say

$$v' = \beta_1 w_1 + \beta_2 w_2 + \ldots + \beta_s w_s = \sum_{j=1}^{s} \beta_j w_j.$$

$$\text{Then } v = v' + \sum_{i=1}^{r} \alpha_i v_i = \sum_{i=1}^{r} \alpha_i v_i + \sum_{j=1}^{s} \beta_j w_j$$

Thus v is a linear combination of the elements in B and hence B spans $\mathbb{R}^n$.

(ii) Proof of "B is linearly independent"

Suppose $\gamma_1 v_1 + \gamma_2 v_2 + \ldots + \gamma_r v_r + \delta_1 w_1 + \delta_2 w_2 + \ldots + \delta_s w_s = 0$ (3)

Since $w_j \in W$, each $Aw_j = 0$. Using this fact and (1) and (3), we get

$$0 = A(0) = A\left(\sum_{i=1}^{r} \gamma_i v_i + \sum_{j=1}^{s} \delta_j w_j\right) = \sum_{i=1}^{r} \gamma_i Av_i + \sum_{j=1}^{s} \delta_j Aw_j$$

$$= \sum_{i=1}^{r} \gamma_i u_i + \sum_{j=1}^{s} \delta_j 0 = \gamma_1 u_1 + \gamma_2 u_2 + \ldots + \gamma_r u_r.$$

Since $u_1, u_2, \ldots, u_r$ are linearly independent, each $\gamma_i = 0$

Substituting this in (3), we get $\delta_1 w_1 + \ldots + \delta_s w_s = 0$.

However, $w_1, w_2, \ldots, w_s$ are linearly independent. Thus each $\delta_j = 0$. Therefore, B is linearly independent. Accordingly, B is a basis of $\mathbb{R}^n$. Since B has r + s elements, we have r + s = n. Consequently dim W = s = n − r. Hence the theorem is proved.

Example 23. Prove that the vectors (1, 2, 0), (0, 5, 7) and (−1, 1, 3) form a basis for $\mathbb{R}^3$.

Proof : The given vectors will be a basis of $\mathbb{R}^3$ if and only if they are linearly independent and every vector in $\mathbb{R}^3$ can be written as a linear combination of (1, 2, 0) (0, 5, 7) and (−1, 1,3).

First we shall prove that the vectors are linearly independent.

For arbitrary scalars x, y, z, let

$x(1, 2, 0) + y(0, 5, 7) + 2(-1, 1, 3) = (0, 0, 0)$

or, $(x, 2x, 0) + (0, 5y, 7y) + (-z, z, 3z) = (0, 0, 0)$

or, $(x - z, 2x + 5y + z, 7y + 3z) = (0, 0, 0)$.

Equating corresponding components and forming linear system, we have

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x \qquad\quad - z &= 0 \\ 2x + 5y + z &= 0 \\ 7y + 3z &= 0 \end{aligned}\right\} \qquad (1)$$

Reduce the system to echelon form by the elementary transformations. We multiply first equation by 2 and then subtract from the second equation.

Thus we get the equivalent system

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x - z &= 0 \\ 5y + 3z &= 0 \\ 7y + 3z &= 0 \end{aligned}\right\} \qquad (2)$$

or, we can write

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x - z \qquad &= 0 \\ 3z + 5y &= 0 \\ 3z + 7y &= 0 \end{aligned}\right\} \qquad (3)$$

We subtract second equation from the third equation. Then we get the equivalent system

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x - z &= 0 \\ 3z + 5y &= 0 \\ 2y &= 0 \end{aligned}\right\} \qquad (4)$$

This system is in echelon form and has exactly three equations in the three unknowns; hence the system has only the zero solution i. e. $x = 0$, $y = 0$, $z = 0$. So the given veotors are linearly independent.

[By the application of matrices we can also show that the given vectors are linearly independent]

To show that the given vectors span R^3, we must show that an arbitrary vector $v = (a, b, c)$ can expressed as a linear combination $v = (a, b, c) = x(1, 2, 0) + y(0, 5, 7) + z(-1, 1, 3)$

Then forming linear system, we get

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x \quad - z &= a \\ 2x + 5y + z &= b \\ 7y + 3z &= c \end{aligned}\right\} \qquad (5)$$

Reduce this system to echelon form by this elementary operations.

We multiply first equation by 2 and then subtract from the second equation. Thus we have the equivalent system

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x \quad - z &= a \\ 5y + 3z &= b - 2a \\ 7y + 3z &= c \end{aligned}\right\} \qquad (6)$$

We subtract second equation from the third equation. Then we get the equivalent system

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x \quad - z &= a \\ 5y + 3z &= b - 2a \\ 2y \quad &= c - b + 2a \end{aligned}\right\} \qquad (7)$$

From the third equation, we have $y = \frac{1}{2}(c - b + 2a)$

Substituting the value of y in the second equation

we get $z = \frac{1}{6}(7b - 5c - 14a)$

Again substituting $z = \frac{1}{6}(7b - 5c - 14a)$ in the first equation, we get $x = \frac{1}{6}(7b - 5c - 8a)$

Therefore, $v = (a, b, c) = \frac{1}{6}(7b - 5c - 8a)(1, 2, 0)$
$+ \frac{1}{2}(c - b + 2a)(0, 5, 7) + \frac{1}{6}(7b - 5c - 14a)(-1, 1, 3)$

Thus every vector in $\mathbb{R}^3$ can be expressed as a linear combination of the vectors (1, 2, 0), (0, 5, 7) and (–1, 1, 3). Hence the vectors (1, 2, 0), (0, 5, 7) and (–1, 1, 3) form a basis of $\mathbb{R}^3$.

Example 24. (i) Extend {(2, 0, 1), (1, 1, 1)} to a basis of $\mathbb{R}^3$.

[D. U. P. 1984]

(ii) Extend the set {(3, 2, 1), (0, 1, 1)} to a basis of $\mathbb{R}^3$.

[D. U. S. 1982]

Solution : (i) First we have to show that the given set of two vectors is linearly independent. Set a linear combination of the two given vectors equal to zero by using unknown scalars x and y :

$$x(2, 0, 1) + y(1, 1, 1) = (0, 0, 0)$$

or, $(2x, 0, x) + (y, y, y) = (0, 0, 0)$

or, $(2x + y, y, x + y) = (0, 0, 0)$

Equating corresponding components and forming the linear system, we get

$$\left.\begin{aligned} 2x + y &= 0 \\ y &= 0 \\ x + y &= 0 \end{aligned}\right\} \quad \text{Thus we have } x = 0, y = 0.$$

Hence the given two vectors in $\mathbb{R}^3$ are linearly independent. So {(2, 0, 1), (1, 1, 1)} is a part of the basis of $\mathbb{R}^3$ and hence we can extend them to a basis of $\mathbb{R}^3$. Now we

seek three independent vectors in $\mathbb{R}^3$ which include the given two vectors. Thus we can easily verify that (2, 0, 1), (1, 1, 1), (0, 1, 0) are linearly independent. So they form a basis of $\mathbb{R}^3$ which is an extension of the given set of vectors to a basis of $\mathbb{R}^3$.

(ii) First we have to show that the given set of the vectors is linearly independent. Set a linear combination of the two given vectors equal to zero by using unknown scalars x and y :

$$x(3, 2, 1) + y(0, 1, 1) = (0, 0, 0)$$

or, $(3x, 2x, x) + (0, y, y) = (0, 0, 0)$

or, $(3x, 2x + y, x + y = (0, 0, 0)$

Equating corresponding components and forming the linear system, we get

$$\left.\begin{aligned} 3x \quad\;\; &= 0 \\ 2x + y &= 0 \\ x + y &= 0 \end{aligned}\right\} \text{ Thus we have } x = 0, y = 0.$$

Hence the given two vectors in $\mathbb{R}^3$ are linearly independent. So the given set of vectors is a part of the basis of $\mathbb{R}^3$ and hence we can extend them to a basis of R^3. Now we seek three independent vectors in $\mathbb{R}^3$ which include the given vectors. Thus we can easily verify that (3, 2, 1) (0, 1, 1), (1, 0, 0) are linearly independent. So they form a basis of $\mathbb{R}^3$ which is an extension of the given set of vectors to a basis of $\mathbb{R}^3$.

Example 25. Determine a basis and the dimension for the solution space of the following homogeneous system:

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x - 3y + \;\; z &= 0 \\ 2x - 6y + 2z &= 0 \\ 3x - 9y + 3z &= 0 \end{aligned}\right\} \qquad (2)$$

Solution : The given linear system is

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x - 3y + z &= 0 \\ 2x - 6y + 2z &= 0 \\ 3x - 9y + 3z &= 0 \end{aligned}\right\} \qquad (1)$$

Reduce the system to echelon form by the elementary transformations. We multiply first equation by 2 and by 3 and then subtract from the second and the third equations respectively. Then we have the equivalent system

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x - 3y + z &= 0 \\ 0 &= 0 \\ 0 &= 0 \end{aligned}\right\} \Rightarrow x - 3y + z = 0$$

This system is in echelon form and has only one non-zero equation in three unknowns. So the system has $3 - 1 = 2$ free variables which are y and z, Hence the dimension of the solution space is 2 (two).

Set (i) $y = 1,\ z = 0$ (ii) $y = 0,\ z = 1$ to obtain the respective solutions $v_1 = (3, 1, 0), v_2 = (-1, 0, 1)$.

Hence the set $\{(3, 1, 0), (-1, 0, 1)\}$ is a basis of the solution space.

Example 26. Find the solution space W of the following homogeneous system of linear equations :

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x + 2y - z + 4t &= 0 \\ 2x - y + 3z + 3t &= 0 \\ 4x + y + 3z + 9t &= 0 \\ y - z + t &= 0 \\ 2x + 3y - z + 7t &= 0 \end{aligned}\right\}$$

[D. U. H. T. 1983]
[J. U. H. 1988]

Solution : Reduce the given system to echelon form by the elementary operations. We multiply 1st equation by 2, 4 and 2 and then subtract from 2nd, 3nd and 5th equations respectively. Then we have the equivalent system

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x + 2y - z + 4t &= 0 \\ -5y + 5z - 5t &= 0 \\ -7y + 7z - 7t &= 0 \\ y - z + t &= 0 \\ -y + z - t &= 0 \end{aligned}\right\}$$

We multiply 2nd, 3rd and 5th equations by $-\frac{1}{5}$, $-\frac{1}{7}$ and (-1) respectively. Then we have the equivalent system

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x + 2y - z + 4t &= 0 \\ y - z + t &= 0 \\ y - z + t &= 0 \\ y - z + t &= 0 \\ y - z + t &= 0 \end{aligned}\right\}$$

Since 2nd, 3rd, 4th & 5th equations are identical, we can disregard any three of them. Then we have the equivalent system

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x + 2y - z + 4t &= 0 \\ y - z + t &= 0 \end{aligned}\right\}$$

This system is in echelon form having two equations in 4 unknowns. So the system has $4 - 2 = 2$ free variables which are z and t and hence it has non-zero solutions. Let $z = a$ and $t = b$ where a and b are arbitrary real numbers. Putting $z = a$ and $t = b$ in the 2nd equation we get $y = a - b$. Again putting the values of y, z and t in the 1st equation, we get $x = -a - 2b$. Hence the required solution space is

$W = \{(-a - 2b, a - b, a, b) : a, b \in \mathbb{R}\}$.

Example 27. Let S and T be the following subspaces of $\mathbb{R}^4$:

$S = \{(x, y, z, t) \mid y - 2z + t = 0\}$

$T = \{(x, y, z, t) \mid x - t = 0, y - 2z = 0\}$

Find a basis and the dimension of (i) S (ii) T (iii) $S \cap T$.

Solution : (i) We seek a basis of the set of respective solution (x, y, z, t) of the equation $y - 2z + t = 0$.

The free variables are x, z and t. Set

(a) $x = 1, z = 0, t = 0$

(b) $x = 0, z = 1, t = 0$.

(c) $x = 0, z = 0, t = 1$, to obtain the respective solutions

$u_1 = (1, 0, 0, 0), u_2 = (0, 2, 1, 0), u_3 = (0, 1, 0, 1)$

The set $\{u_1, u_2, u_3\}$ is a basis of S and dim S = 3.

(ii) We seek a basis of the set of solutions (x, y, z, t) of the equations

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x - \quad t &= 0 \\ y - 2z &= 0 \end{aligned}\right\}$$

The free variables are z and t. Set (a) $z = 1, t = 0$, (b) $z = 0$, $t = 1$ to obtain the respective solutions $u_1 = (0, 2, 1, 0)$ and $u_2 = (1, 0, 0, 1)$. The set $\{u_1, u_2\}$ is a basis of T and dim T = 2.

(iii) $S \cap T$ consists of those vectors (x, y, z, t) which satisfy all conditions given in S and in T, i. e.

$$\left.\begin{aligned} y - 2z + t &= 0 \\ x - t &= 0 \\ y - 2z \quad &= 0 \end{aligned}\right\}$$

or, $$\left.\begin{aligned} x \quad - \quad\quad t &= 0 \\ y - \quad 2z \quad &= 0 \\ y - \quad 2z + t &= 0 \end{aligned}\right\} \text{Subtract second equation from the third equation.}$$

Then we have $$\left.\begin{aligned} x - t &= 0 \\ y - 2z &= 0 \\ t &= 0 \end{aligned}\right\} \text{Which is in echelon form.}$$

The free variable is z. Set $z = 1$ to obtain the solution $u = (0, 2, 1, 0)$.

Thus $\{u\}$ is a basis of $S \cap T$ and dim $(S \cap T) = 1$.

Example 28. (i) Let U be the subspace of $\mathbb{R}^3$ spanned (generated) by the vectors $(1, 2, 1)$, $(0, -1, 0)$ and $(2, 0, 2)$. Find a basis and the dimension of U.

(ii) Let W be the subspace of $\mathbb{R}^5$ spanned by the vectors (1, – 2, 0, 0, 3), (2, – 5, – 3, –2, 6), (0, 5, 15, 10, 0) and (2, 6, 18, 8,6). Find a basis and the dimension of W.

Solution : (i) Form the matrix whose rows are given vectors and reduce the matrix to row-echelon form by the elementary row operations.

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 1 \\ 0 & -1 & 0 \\ 2 & 0 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$$ we multiply first row by 2 and then subtract from the third row.

$$\sim \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 1 \\ 0 & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & -4 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$ we multiply second row by 4 and subtract from the third row.

$$\sim \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 1 \\ 0 & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$ we multiply second row by 2 and then add with the first row.

$$\sim \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$ we multiply second row by – 1

$$\sim \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

This matrix is in row–echelon form and the non-zero rows in the matrix are (1, 0, 1) and (0, 1, 0). These non-zero rows form a basis of the row space and consequently a basis of U; that is, Basis of U = {(1, 0, 1), (0, 1, 0)} and dim U = 2.

(ii) Form the matrix whose rows are the given vectors and reduce the matrix to row–echelon form by the elementary row operations :

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & -2 & 0 & 0 & 3 \\ 2 & -5 & -3 & -2 & 6 \\ 0 & 5 & 15 & 10 & 0 \\ 2 & 6 & 18 & 8 & 6 \end{bmatrix}$$

Reduce this matrix to row echelon form by the elementary row operations.

we multiply first row by 2 and then subtract from the second and fourth rows respectively.

$$\sim\begin{bmatrix} 1 & -2 & 0 & 0 & 3 \\ 0 & -1 & -3 & -2 & 0 \\ 0 & 5 & 15 & 10 & 0 \\ 0 & 10 & 18 & 8 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

We multiply second row by 5 and then add with the third row.

$$\sim\begin{bmatrix} 1 & -2 & 0 & 0 & 3 \\ 0 & -1 & -3 & -2 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 10 & 18 & 8 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

Interchange third and fourth rows

$$\sim\begin{bmatrix} 1 & -2 & 0 & 0 & 3 \\ 0 & -1 & -3 & -2 & 0 \\ 0 & 10 & 18 & 8 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

We multiply second row by 10 and then add with the third row.

$$\sim\begin{bmatrix} 1 & -2 & 0 & 0 & 3 \\ 0 & -1 & -3 & -2 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -12 & -12 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

We multiply second row by -1 and divide third row by -12.

$$\sim\begin{bmatrix} 1 & -2 & 0 & 0 & 3 \\ 0 & 1 & 3 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

The above matrix is in row echelon form. The non-zero rows (vectors) in the above matrix are (1, −2, 0, 0, 3), (0, 1, 3, 2, 0) and (0, 0, 1, 1, 0). These non-zero rows form a basis for the row space and consequently a basis of W. Thus basis of W = {(1, −2, 0, 0, 3), (0, 1, 3, 2, 0), (0, 0, 1, 1, 0)} and dim W = 3.

Example 29. Let W be the subspace generated by the polynomials $p_1(t) = t^3 + 2t^2 - 2t + 1$,

$p_2(t) = t^3 + 3t^2 - t + 4$ and $p_3(t) = 2t^3 + t^2 - 7t - 7$.

Find a basis and the dimension of W.

Solution : Clearly, W is a subspace of the vector space V (F) of polynomials in t of degree ≤ 3. Thus the set $S_1 = \{1, t, t^2, t^3\}$ is a basis of V (F).

Now the coordinates of the given vectors $p_1(t)$, $p_2(t)$ and $p_3(t)$ relative to the basis S_1 are (1, 2, −2, 1), (1, 3, −1, 4) and (2, 1, −7, −7) respectively.

Forming the matrix whose rows are the above coordinate vectors, we get

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & -2 & 1 \\ 1 & 3 & -1 & 4 \\ 2 & 1 & -7 & -7 \end{bmatrix}$$

Reduce this matrix to row echelon form by the elementary row operations. We multiply 1st row by 1 and 2 and then subtract from 2nd & 3rd rows respectively.

$$\sim \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & -2 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 3 \\ 0 & -3 & -3 & -9 \end{bmatrix}$$

We multiply 2nd row by 3 and then add with the 3rd row.

$$\sim \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & -2 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 3 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

This matrix is in row echelon form having two non-zero rows (coordinate vectors) (1, 2, –2, 1) and (0, 1, 1, 3) which will form a basis of the vector space generated by the coordinate vectors and so the set of corresponding polynomials is $\{t^3 + 2t^2 - 2t + 1, t^2 + t + 3\}$ which will form the basis of W. Thus dim W = 2.

Example 30. Let U and W be the subspaces of $\mathbb{R}^4$ generated by the set of vectors

$\{(1, 1, 0, -1), (1, 2, 3, 0), (2, 3, 3, -1)\}$ and

$\{(1, 2, 2, -2), (2, 3, 2, -3), (1, 3, 4, -3)\}$ respectively.

Find (i) dim (U +W) and (ii) dim (U∩W). **[D. U. H. 1998]**

Solution : (i) U + W is subspace spanned (or generated) by all given six vectors. Hence form the matrix whose rows are the given six vectors and then reduce this matrix to row echelon form by the elementary row operations :

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 2 & 3 & 0 \\ 2 & 3 & 3 & -1 \\ 1 & 2 & 2 & -2 \\ 2 & 3 & 2 & -3 \\ 1 & 3 & 4 & -3 \end{bmatrix}$$

Reduce this matrix to row-echelon form by the elementary row operations.

We subtract 1st row from 2nd, 4th and 6th rows. Also we multiply 1st row by 2 and then subtract from 3rd and 5th rows.

$$\sim \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 0 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 3 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 3 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 2 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 2 & -1 \\ 0 & 2 & 4 & -2 \end{bmatrix}$$

We subtract 2nd row from 3rd, 4th & 5th rows. Also we multiply 2nd row by 2 and then subtract from 6th row.

$$\sim \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 0 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 3 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -1 & -2 \\ 0 & 0 & -1 & -2 \\ 0 & 0 & -2 & -4 \end{bmatrix}$$

We multiply 4th row by 1 and 2 and then subtract from 5th and 6th rows respectively.

$$\sim \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 0 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 3 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -1 & -2 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

We interchange 3rd and 4th rows.

$$\sim \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 0 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 3 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & -1 & -2 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

This matrix is in row-echelon form having three non-zero (1, 1, 0, –1), (0, 1, 3, 1) and (0, 0, –1, –2) which will form a basis of U + W. Thus dim (U + W) = 3.

(ii) Let us first find the dim U and the dim W. Form the matrix whose rows are the generators of U and then reduce the matrix to row-echelon form by the elementary row operations.

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 2 & 3 & 0 \\ 2 & 3 & 3 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$$

We multiply 1st row by 1 and 2 and then subtract from 2nd and 3rd rows respectively.

$$\sim \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 0 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 3 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 3 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

We subtract 2nd row from third row.

$$\sim \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 0 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 3 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

This matrix is in row-echelon form having two non-zero rows (1, 1, 0, −1) and (0, 1, 3, 1) which will form a basis of U.

Thus dim U = 2.

Again form the matrix whose rows are the generators of W and then reduce the matrix to row-echelon form by the elementary row operations.

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 2 & -2 \\ 2 & 3 & 2 & -3 \\ 1 & 3 & 4 & -3 \end{bmatrix}$$

We multiply 1st row by 2 and 1 and then subtract from 2nd and 3rd rows respectively.

$$\sim \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 2 & -2 \\ 0 & -1 & -2 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 2 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$$

We add 2nd row with 3rd row.

$$\sim \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 2 & -2 \\ 0 & -1 & -2 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

This matrix is in row-echelon form having two non-zero rows which will form a basis of W. Thus dim W = 2.

Now by theorem we have

$\dim (U + W) = \dim U + \dim W - \dim (U \cap W)$

or, $\dim (U \cap W) = \dim U + \dim W - \dim (U + W) = 2 + 2 - 3 = 1$

$\therefore \dim (U \cap W) = 1$ (one).

Example 31. Let V be the vector space of 2×2 matrices over the real field $\mathbb{R}$. Find a basis and the dimension of the subspace W of V spanned by

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ -1 & 3 \end{bmatrix}, B = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 5 \\ 1 & -1 \end{bmatrix}, C = \begin{bmatrix} 5 & 12 \\ 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \text{ and } D = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 4 \\ -2 & 5 \end{bmatrix}.$$

Solution : The coordinate vectors of the given matrices relative to the usual basis of V are as follows :

$$[A] = (1, 2, -1, 3), [B] = (2, 5, 1, -1), [C] = (5, 12, 1, 1) \text{ and}$$
$$[D] = (3, 4, -2, 5).$$

Form a matrix whose rows are the coordinate vectors and then reduce this matrix to row-echelon form by the elementary row operations and join successive matrices by the equivalence sign $\sim$:

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 & 3 \\ 2 & 5 & 1 & -1 \\ 5 & 12 & 1 & 1 \\ 3 & 4 & -2 & 5 \end{bmatrix}$$

We multiply 1st row by 2, 5 & 3 and then subtract from 2nd, 3rd and 4th rows respectively.

$$\sim \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 & 3 \\ 0 & 1 & 3 & -7 \\ 0 & 2 & 6 & -14 \\ 0 & -2 & 1 & -4 \end{bmatrix}$$

We multiply 2nd row by 2 and -2 and then subtract from 3rd and 4th rows respectively.

$$\sim \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 & 3 \\ 0 & 1 & 3 & -7 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 7 & -18 \end{bmatrix}$$

Interchange 3rd and 4th rows.

$$\sim \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 & 3 \\ 0 & 1 & 3 & -7 \\ 0 & 0 & 7 & -18 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

This matrix is in row-echelon form having three non-zero rows (1, 2, −1, 3), (0, 1, 3, −7) and (0, 0, 7, −18) which are linearly independent.

Hence the corresponding matrices $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ -1 & 3 \end{bmatrix}$, $\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 3 & -7 \end{bmatrix}$ and $\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 7 & -18 \end{bmatrix}$ form a basis of W and dim W = 3.

Example 32. Let V be the vector space of 2 ×2 matrices over the real field $\mathbb{R}$. Find a basis and the dimension of the subspace W of V spanned by the matrices

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -5 \\ -4 & 2 \end{bmatrix}, B = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 5 \end{bmatrix}, C = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & -4 \\ -5 & 7 \end{bmatrix} \text{ and } D = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -7 \\ -5 & 1 \end{bmatrix}.$$

Solution : The coordinate vectors of the given matrices relative to the usual basis of V are as follows :

[A] = (1, −5, −4, 2), [B] = (1, 1, −1, 5), [C] = (2, −4, −5, 7)

and [D] = (1, −7, −5, 1)

Form a matrix whose rows are the coordinate vectors and then reduce this matrix to row-echelon form by the elementary row operations and join successive matrices by the equivalence sign ~ :

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & -5 & -4 & 2 \\ 1 & 1 & -1 & 5 \\ 2 & -4 & -5 & 7 \\ 1 & -7 & -5 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

We multiply 1st row by 1, 2, and 1 and then subtract from 2nd, 3rd and 4th rows respectively.

$$\sim \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -5 & -4 & 2 \\ 0 & 6 & 3 & 3 \\ 0 & 6 & 3 & 3 \\ 0 & -2 & -1 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$$

We multiply 2nd row by 1 and $-\frac{1}{3}$ and then subtract from 3rd & 4th rows respectively.

$$\sim \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -5 & -4 & 2 \\ 0 & 6 & 3 & 3 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

This matrix is in row-echelon form having two non-zero rows (1, −5, − 4, 2) and (0, 6, 3, 3) which are linearly independent. Hence the corresponding matrices

$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & -5 \\ -4 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$ and $\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 6 \\ 3 & 3 \end{bmatrix}$ form a basis of W and dim W = 2.

Example 33. Prove that the vectors $u_1 = (1, 0, 2)$, $u_2 = (-1, 1, 0)$ and $u_3 = (0, 2, 3)$ form a basis of $\mathbb{R}^3$ and find the co-ordinates of the vectors $v = (1, -1, 1)$ and $w = (-1, 8, 11)$ relative to this basis.

Proof : First Portion

The given vectors will be a basis of $\mathbb{R}^3$ if and only if they are linearly independent and every vector in $\mathbb{R}^3$ can be written as a linear combination of u_1, u_2 and u_3. First we shall prove that the vectors u_1, u_2 and u_3 are linearly independent. For arbitrary scalars x_1, x_2 and x_3

let $x_1 u_1 + x_2 u_2 + x_3 u_3 = 0$

or, $x_1 (1, 0, 2) + x_2 (-1, 1, 0) + x_3 (0, 2, 3) = (0, 0, 0)$

or, $(x_1 - x_2, x_2 + 2x_3, 2x_1 + 3x_3) = (0, 0, 0)$

Equating corresponding components and forming the linear system, we get

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x_1 - x_2 &= 0 \\ x_2 + 2x_3 &= 0 \\ 2x_1 + 3x_3 &= 0 \end{aligned}\right\} \qquad (1)$$

Reduce the system to echelon form by elementary transformations. We multiply first equation by 2 and then subtract from the third equation. Thus the above system reduces to

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x_1 - x_2 \qquad &= 0 \\ x_2 + 2x_3 &= 0 \\ 2x_2 + 3x_3 &= 0 \end{aligned}\right\} \qquad (2)$$

Again we multiply second equation by 2 and then subtract from the third equation. Then we get the equivalent system.

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x_1 - x_2 \qquad &= 0 \\ x_2 + 2x_3 &= 0 \\ - x_3 &= 0 \end{aligned}\right\} \qquad (3)$$

This system is in echelon form and has exactly three equations in three unknowns, hence the system has only the zero solution i. e. $x = 0$, $y = 0$, $z = 0$. Accordingly, the vectors are linearly independent.

To show that u_1, u_2 and u_3 span $\mathbb{R}^3$, we must show that an arbitrary vector $v = (a, b, c)$ can be expressed as a linear combination $v = x_1 u_1 + x_2 u_2 + x_3 u_3$

or, $v = (a, b, c) = x_1 (1, 0, 2) + x_2 (-1, 1, 0) + x_3 (0, 2, 3)$

Forming the linear system, we get

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x_1 - x_2 \qquad &= a \\ x_2 + 2x_3 &= b \\ 2x_1 + \qquad 3x_3 &= c \end{aligned}\right\} \qquad (4)$$

Reduce this system to echelon form by the elementary transformations.

We multiply first equation by 2 and then subtract from the third equation. Thus we have the equivalent system

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x_1 - x_2 \quad\quad &= a \\ x_2 + 2x_3 &= b \\ 2x_2 + 3x_3 &= c-2a \end{aligned}\right\} \qquad (5)$$

We multiply second equation by 2 and then subtract from the third equation. Then we get the equivalent system

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x_1 - x_2 \quad\quad &= a \\ x_2 + 2x_3 &= b \\ - \quad x_3 &= c - 2a - 2b \end{aligned}\right\} \qquad (6)$$

From the third equation, we have $x_3 = 2a + 2b - c$.

Substituting the value of x_3 in the second equation, we get $x_2 = -4a - 3b + 2c$.

Again, substituting the value of x_2 in the first equation, we get $x_1 = -3a - 3b + 2c$. Therefore,

$$v = (-3a - 3b + 2c)\, u_1 + (-4a - 3b + 2c)\, u_2 + (2a + 2b - c), u_3$$

$$\text{or, } (a, b, c) = (-3a - 3b + 2c)\,(1, 0, 2) + (-4a - 3b + 2c)\,(-1, 1, 0) + (2a + 2b - c)\,(0, 2, 3)$$

Thus every vector in $\mathbb{R}^3$ can be expressed as a linear combination of the vectors $(1, 0, 2)$, $(-1, 1, 0)$ and $(0, 2, 3)$.

Hence the vectors u_1, u_2 and u_3 form a basis of $\mathbb{R}^3$.

Second Portion : Let $v = (1, -1, 1) = x_1 u_1 + x_2 u_2 + x_3 u_3$

or, $(1, -1, 1) = x_1\,(1, 0, 2) + x_2\,(-1, 1, 0) + x_3\,(0, 2, 3)$.

Forming linear system, we have

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x_1 - x_2 \quad\quad &= 1 \\ x_2 + 2x_3 &= -1 \\ 2x_1 \quad\quad + 3x_3 &= 1 \end{aligned}\right\} \qquad (7)$$

Solving the system, we get $x_1 = 2, x_2 = 1, x_3 = -1$.

Thus $v = (1, -1, 1) = 2u_1 + 1u_2 + (-1)\, u_3$.

So the vector v has co-ordinates (2, 1, −1).

Similarly, let $w = (-1, 8, 11) = y_1 u_1 + y_2 u_2 + y_3 u_3$

or, $(-1, 8, 11) = y_1\,(1, 0, 2) + y_2\,(-1, 1, 0) + y_3\,(0, 2, 3)$.

Forming linear system, we have

$$\left.\begin{aligned} y_1 - y_2 \qquad &= -1 \\ y_2 + 2y_3 &= 8 \\ 2y_1 \qquad + 3y_3 &= 11 \end{aligned}\right\} \qquad (8)$$

Solving the system, we get $y_1 = 1, y_2 = 2, y_3 = 3$

Thus $w = (-1, 8, 11) = 1u_1 + 2u_2 + 3u_3$

So the vector w has co-ordinates (1, 2, 3).

Example 34. Given the vectors (2, 1, 1), (1, 3, 2), (1, 3, −1) and (1, −2, 3). Test whether they are linearly independent by **Sweep out method.**

Solution : Let $\alpha_1\,(2, 1, 1) + \alpha_2\,(1, 3, 2) + \alpha_3\,(1, 3, -1)$

$$+ \alpha_4\,(1, -2, 3) = O = (0, 0, 0),$$

where $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \alpha_3$ and α_4 are scalars. then

$(2\alpha_1 + \alpha_2 + \alpha_3 + \alpha_4, \alpha_1 + 3\alpha_2 + 3\alpha_3 - 2\alpha_4, \alpha_1 + 2\alpha_2 - \alpha_3 + 3x_4)$ $= (0, 0, 0)$. Equating corresponding components from both sides and forming linear system, we get

$$\left.\begin{aligned} 2\alpha_1 + \alpha_2 + \alpha_3 + \alpha_4 &= 0 \\ \alpha_1 + 3\alpha_2 + 3\alpha_3 - 2\alpha_4 &= 0 \\ \alpha_1 + 2\alpha_2 - \alpha_3 + 3\alpha_4 &= 0 \end{aligned}\right\}$$

CamScanner

α_1	α_2	α_3	α_4	
2	1	1	1	$O \to R_1$
1	3	3	-2	$O \to R_2$
1	2	-1	3	$O \to R_3$
1	$\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{1}{2}$	$O \to R_4 = \frac{R_1}{2}$ 1st pivotal row
0	$\frac{5}{2}$	$\frac{5}{2}$	$-\frac{5}{2}$	$O \to R_5 = R_2 - R_4$
0	$\frac{3}{2}$	$-\frac{3}{2}$	$\frac{5}{2}$	$O \to R_6 = R_3 - R_4$
	1	1	-1	$O \to R_7 = \frac{R_5}{\frac{5}{2}}$ 2nd pivotal row
	0	-3	4	$O \to R_8 = R_6 - \frac{3}{2} R_7$
		1	$-\frac{4}{3}$	$O \to R_9 = \frac{R_8}{-3}$ 3rd pivotal row

From the pivotal rows, we have

$$\alpha_1 + \frac{1}{2}\alpha_2 + \frac{1}{2}\alpha_3 + \frac{1}{2}\alpha_4 = 0 \qquad \text{(i)}$$

$$\alpha_2 + \alpha_3 - \alpha_4 = 0 \qquad \text{(ii)}$$

$$\alpha_3 - \frac{4}{3}\alpha_4 = 0 \qquad \text{(iii)}$$

This system is in echelon form and has three equations in 4 unknowns and hence 4 – 3 = 1 free variable which is α_4.

Thus the system has an infinite number of non-zero solutions.

Let $\alpha_4 = t$, where t is a scalar.

Then $\alpha_3 = \frac{4}{3}t$, $\alpha_2 = -\frac{1}{3}t$, and $\alpha_1 = -t$.

Since all α's are not zero, so the given vectors are linearly dependent.

Example 35. Are these vectors (2, 1, 1), (2, 4, 7), (4, –9, 11) dependent ?. Test by **Sweep out method.**

Solution : Let $\alpha_1 (2, 1, 1) + \alpha_2 (2, 4, 7) + \alpha_3 (4, -9, 11) = (0, 0, 0)$

Or, $(2\alpha_1 + 2\alpha_2 + 4\alpha_3, \alpha_1 + 4\alpha_2 - 9\alpha_3, \alpha_1 + 7\alpha_2 + 11\alpha_3) = (0, 0, 0)$

Equating corresponding components from both sides and forming the linear system, we get

$$\left.\begin{aligned} 2\alpha_1 + 2\alpha_2 + 4\alpha_3 &= 0 \\ \alpha_1 + 4\alpha_2 - 9\alpha_3 &= 0 \\ \alpha_1 + 7\alpha_2 + 11\alpha_3 &= 0 \end{aligned}\right\}$$

α_1	α_2	α_3	
2	2	4	$O \to R_1$
1	4	-9	$O \to R_2$
1	7	11	$O \to R_3$
1	1	2	$O \to R_4 = \frac{R_1}{2}$ 1st pivotal row
0	3	-11	$O \to R_5 = R_2 - R_4$
0	6	9	$O \to R_6 = R_3 - R_4$.
	1	$-\frac{11}{3}$	$O \to R_7 = \frac{R_5}{3}$ 2nd pivotal row
	0	31	$O \to R_8 = R_6 - 6R_7$
		1	$O \to R_9 = \frac{R_8}{31}$ 3rd pivotal row

From the pivotal rows, we have

$$\alpha_1 + \alpha_2 + 2\alpha_3 = 0 \qquad \text{(i)}$$

$$\alpha_2 - \frac{11}{3}\alpha_3 = 0 \qquad \text{(ii)}$$

$$\alpha_3 = 0 \qquad \text{(iii)}$$

Therefore, the system has zero solution i. e $\alpha_1 = \alpha_2 = \alpha_3 = 0$. Hence the given vectors are linearly independent.

Example 36. Find the rank and the basis of a given set of vectors {(2, –1, 5, 4), (0, 1, 2, 3), (4, 0, 6. 1), (0, – 2, 4, 7)

by using **Sweep out method.**

Solution : Rank of a given set of vectors is the number of linearly independent vectors of that set and these linear independent vectors form a basis of that set.

2	-1	5	4	$\to R_1$
0	1	2	3	$\to R_2$
4	0	6	1	$\to R_3$
0	-2	4	7	$\to R_4$
1	$-\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{5}{2}$	2	$\to R_5 = \frac{R_1}{2}$ 1st pivotal row
0	1	2	3	$\to R_6 = R_2 - 0R_5$
0	2	-4	-7	$\to R_7 = R_3 - 4R_5$
0	-2	4	7	$\to R_8 = R_4 - 0R_5$
	1	2	3	$\to R_9 \frac{R_6}{1}$ 2nd pivotal row
	0	-8	-13	$\to R_{10} = R_7 - 2R_9$
	0	8	13	$\to R_{11} = R_8 + 2R_9$
		1	$\frac{13}{8}$	$\to R_{12} = \frac{R_{10}}{-8}$ 3rd pivotal row
		0	0	$\to R_{13} = R_{11} - 8R_{12}$

Now the rank of the given set of vectors is equal to the number of pivotal rows = 3. A basis of the given set of vectors is $\{(1, -\frac{1}{2}, \frac{5}{2}, 2), (0, 1, 2, 3), (0, 0, 1, \frac{13}{8})\}$

Since $\alpha_1 (1, -\frac{1}{2}, \frac{5}{2}, 2) + \alpha_2(0,1,2,3) + \alpha_3 (0, 0, 1, \frac{13}{8}) = (0, 0, 0, 0)$ implies $\alpha_1 = \alpha_2 = \alpha_3 = 0$. (Zero solution).

EXERCISES – 6 (C)

1. Prove that the vectors (1, 1) and (1, 0) form a basis of $\mathbb{R}^2$.

2. (i) Prove that $\{(2, -\frac{1}{2}, 1), (3, 2, 1), (0, 1, 1)\}$ is a basis of $\mathbb{R}^3$.

(ii) Prove that $\{(1, 1, 1, 1), (0, 1, 1, 1), (0, 0, 1, 1) (0, 0, 0, 1)\}$ is a basis of $\mathbb{R}^4$.

3. (i) Extend $\{(2, 0, 0, -1), (1, 3, -1, 0)\}$ to a basis for $\mathbb{R}^4$.

[D. U. S. 1984]

(ii) Extend $\{(1, 2, 0, 3), (2, -1, 0, 0)\}$ to a basis of $\mathbb{R}^4$.

Answers : (i) $\{(1, 3, -1, 0), (2, 0, 0, -1), (0, 0, 1, 0), (0, 0, 0, 1)\}$

(ii) $\{(1, 2, 0, 3), (2, -1, 0, 0), (0, 0, 1, 0), (0, 0, 0, 1)\}$

4. Decide whether $S = \{(2, 1, 1), (1, 0, 0), (5, 1, 1)\}$ is a linearly dependent subset of $\mathbb{R}^3$. What is the dimension of the subspace spanned by S? **[D. U. S. 1982]**

Answer : S is linearly dependent and dimension of the subspace is 2.

5. The subspace U of $\mathbb{R}^4$ is spanned by the vectors $(1, 0, 2, 3)$ and $(0, 1, -1, 2)$ and the subspace V of $\mathbb{R}^4$ is spanned by

$(1, 2, 3, 4), (-1, -1, 5, 0)$ and $(0, 0, 0, 1)$

Find the dimension of U, V, $U \cap V$ and $U + V$.

Answers : $\dim U = 2$, $\dim V = 3$.

$\dim (U \cap V) = 1$, $\dim (U + V) = 4$.

6. Find a basis for the subspace of $\mathbb{R}^4$ spanned by the given vectors :

(i) $(1, 1, -4, -3), (2, 0, 2, -2), (2, -1, 3, 2)$

(ii) $(1, 1, 0, 0), (0, 0, 1, 1), (-2, 0, 2, 2)$ $(0, -3, 0, 3)$.

Answers : (i) $\{(1, 1, -4, -3), (0, 1, -5, -2), (0, 0, 1, -\frac{1}{2})\}$

(ii) $\{(1, 1, 0, 0), (0, 1, 1, 1), (0, 0, 1, 1), (0, 0, 0, 1)\}$.

7. Find the dimension of the subspace generated by the set $\{(1, 2, 1), (3, 1, 2)$ $(1, -3, 4)\}$ of $V_3(\mathbb{R})$. **[D. U. P. 1979]**

Answer : The dimension of the subspace is 3.

8. Let W be the subspace generated by the polynomials $v_1 = t^3 - 2t^2 + 4t + 1$, $v_2 = 2t^3 - 3t^2 + 9t - 1$,

$v_3 = t^3 + 6t - 5$, $v_4 = 2t^3 - 5t^2 + 7t + 5$.

Find the basis and dimension of W.

[C.U. P. 1973, '86 ; J. U. H. 1986]

Answer : Basis : $\{t^3 - 2t^2 + 4t + 1, t^2 + t - 3\}$ and $\dim W = 2$.

9. Find a basis and the dimension of the subspace W of $P_4(t)$ spanned by the polynomials

(i) $P_1(t) = t^3 + 2t^2 - 3t + 2$, $p_2(t) = t^3 + 2t^2 - 2t + 3$, and

$P_3(t) = 2t^3 + 3t^2 - 5t - 5$.

(ii) $P_1(t) = t^3 + t^2 - 3t + 2$, $P_2(t) = 2t^3 + t^2 + t - 4$, and

$P_3(t) = 4t^3 + 3t^2 - 5t + 2$.

Answers : (i) Basis of $W = \{t^3 + 2t^2 - 3t + 2, t^2 - t + 9, t + 1\}$.

$\dim W = 3$

(ii) Basis of $W = \{t^3 + t^2 - 3t + 2, t^2 - 7t + 8, 2\}$

$\dim W = 3$

10. Determine whether the given set of vectors is a basis for $\mathbb{R}^3$ over $\mathbb{R}$: (i) $(1, 1, 0), (1, 0, 1), (0, 1, 1)\}$

(ii) $\{(-1, 1, 2), (2, -3, 1), (10, -14, 0)\}$

Answers : (i) Set of vectors is a basis for $\mathbb{R}^3$.

(ii) Set of vectors is not a basis for $\mathbb{R}^3$.

11. Let $\{v_1, v_2, v_3\}$ be basis for a vector space V. Show that $\{u_1, u_2, u_2\}$ is also a basis, where $u_1 = v_1$, $u_2 = v_1 + v_2$ and $u_3 = v_1 + v_2 + v_3$.

12. Let W be the subspace of $\mathbb{R}^4$ generated by the vectors $(1, -2, 5, -3)$, $(2, 3, 1, -4)$ and $(3, 8, -3, -5)$. Find a basis and the dimension of W. **[D. U. S. 1983]**

Answer : Basis $\{(1, -2, 5, -3), (0, 7, -9, 2)\}$, $\dim W = 2$.

13. Consider the following subspaces of $\mathbb{R}^5$:

$U = \text{span}\{(1, 3, -2, 2, 3), (1, 4, -3, 4, 2), (2, 3, -1, -2, 9)\}$

$W = \text{span}\{(1, 3, 0, 2, 1), (1, 5, -6, 6, 3), (2, 5, 3, 2, 1)\}$

Find a basis and the dimension of **[D. U. H. 1987]**

(i) $U + W$ (ii) $U \cap W$.

Answers : (i) Basis of $U + W$

$= \{(1, 3, -2, 2, 3), (0, 1, -1, 2, -1), (0, 0, 2, 0, -2)\}$

$\dim (U + W) = 3$.

(ii) Basis of $U \cap W = \{(1, 4, -3, 4, 2)\}$

$\dim (U \cap W) = 1$.

14. Let S and T be the following subspaces of $\mathbb{R}^4$:

$S = \{(x, y, z, t) \mid y + z + t = 0\}$

$T = \{(x, y, z, t) \mid x + y = 0, z = 2t\}$

Find the basis and the dimension of

(i) S (ii) T (iii) $S \cap T$.

Answers : (i) Basis :

$\{(1, 0, 0, 0), (0, -1, 1, 0), (0, -1, 0, 1)\}$, $\dim S = 3$.

(ii) Basis : $\{(-1, 1, 0, 0), (0, 0, 2, 1)\}$, $\dim T = 2$.

(iii) Basis : $\{(3, -3, 2, 1)\}$, $\dim (S \cap T) = 1$.

15. Let $W = \{(a, b, c) \mid a, b, c \in R \text{ and } 2a + b + 2c = 0\}$

Find a basis and dimension of W. **[D. U. Prel. 1983]**

Answer : $\{(1, 1, -1), (-1, 2, 0)\}$ is a basis of W and $\dim W = 2$.

16. Prove that in $\mathbb{R}^3$ the vectors $(1, -1, 0), (0, 1, -1)$ form a basis for the subspace $U = \{(x, y, z) \in \mathbb{R}^3 \mid x + y + z = 0\}$.

17. Find a basis of each of the following subspaces of $\mathbb{R}^3$:

(i) $U = \{(x, y, z) \mid x - z = 0\}$

(ii) $V = \{(x, y, z) \mid x = 0, \text{ and } y + z = 0\}$

Answers : (i) $\{(2, 1, 2), (1, 0, 1)\}$ is a basis of U.

(ii) $\{(0, -1, 1), (0, 1, -1)\}$ is a basis of V.

18. Let V be the vector space of all 2×2 matrices over the real field F. Prove that V has dimension 4 by exhibiting a basis for V which has four elements.

19. Let V be the vector space of 2×2 matrices over the real field $\mathbb{R}$. Find a basis and the dimension of the subspace W of V spanned by the matrices $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 1 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$, $B = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 2 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$ and $C = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 3 \\ 3 & 4 \end{bmatrix}$

Answers : Basis of $W = \left\{ \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 1 & 2 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ -1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \right\}$

$\dim W = 2$.

20. Let V be the vector space of 2×2 matrices over the real field $\mathbb{R}$. Find a basis and the dimension of the subspace W of V spanned by the matrices

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ -1 & 3 \end{bmatrix}, B = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 5 \\ 1 & -1 \end{bmatrix} \text{ and } C = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 4 \\ -2 & 5 \end{bmatrix}.$$

Answers : Basis of $W = \left\{ \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ -1 & 3 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 3 & -7 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 7 & -18 \end{bmatrix} \right\}$

$\dim W = 3.$

21. Let V be the vector space of 2×2 matrices over the real field $\mathbb{R}$. Determine whether

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}, B = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}, C = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \text{ and } D = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

form a basis for V.

Answer : They form a basis for V.

22. Find the dimension and a basis of the solution space W of the following system

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x + 2y + 2z - s + 3t &= 0 \\ x + 2y + 3z + s + t &= 0 \\ 3x + 6y + 8z + s + 5t &= 0 \end{aligned}\right\}$$

[D. U. S. 1980]

Answer : $\dim W = 3.$

Basis : $\{(-2, 1, 0, 0, 0), (5, 0, -2, 1, 0), (-7, 0, 2, 0, 1)\}$

23. Determine a basis and the dimension for the solution space of the following homogeneous system

$$\left.\begin{aligned} 2x_1 + 2x_2 - x_3 + x_5 &= 0 \\ -x_1 - x_2 + 2x_3 - 3x_4 + x_5 &= 0 \\ x_1 + x_2 - 2x_3 - x_5 &= 0 \\ x_3 + x_1 + x_5 &= 0 \end{aligned}\right\}$$

[D. U. P. 1984]

Answer : Basis : $\{(-1, 1, 0, 0, 0), (-1, 0, -1, 0, 1)\}$

dimension = 2.

24. Find a basis and the dimension of the solution space for the following homogeneous linear equations :

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x_1 + 2x_2 - x_3 + 4x_4 &= 0 \\ 2x_1 - x_2 + 3x_3 + 3x_4 &= 0 \\ 4x_1 + x_2 + 3x_3 + 9x_4 &= 0 \\ x_2 - x_3 + x_4 &= 0 \\ 2x_1 + 3x_2 - x_3 + 7x_4 &= 0 \end{aligned}\right\}$$ **[D. U. P. 1984]**

Answer : Basis : {(–1, 1, 1, 0), (–2, –1, 0, 1)}

dimension = 2.

25. Find a basis and the dimension of the solution space for the following homogeneous linear system :

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x + 2y - z + 3s - 4t &= 0 \\ 2x + 4y - 2z - s + 5t &= 0 \\ 2x + 4y - 2z + 4s - 2t &= 0 \end{aligned}\right\}$$ **[R. U. H. 1985]**

Basis : {(2, –1, 0, 0, 0), (1, 0, 1, 0, 0)}

dimension = 2.

26. Find a basis and the dimension of the following system of linear equations :

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x_1 + 2x_2 - 2x_3 + 2x_4 - x_5 &= 0 \\ x_1 + 2x_2 - x_3 + 3x_4 - 2x_5 &= 0 \\ 2x_1 + 4x_2 - 7x_3 + x_4 + x_5 &= 0 \end{aligned}\right\}$$ **[D. U. H. 1988]** **[R. U. H. 1988]**

Answers : Basis : {(–2, 1, 0, 0, 0), (–4, 0, –1, 1, 0), (3, 0, 1, 0, 1)}

dimension = 3.

27. Prove that the vectors $u_1 = (1, 2, 1 -2)$, $u_2 = (0, -2, -2, 0)$, $u_3 = (0, 2, 3, 1)$ and $u_4 = (3, 0, -3, 6)$ form a basis of $\mathbb{R}^4$ and find the coordinates of the vectors $v = (5, 0, -8, -1)$ and $w = (-9, 20, 34, -25)$ relative to this basis.

Answer : v and w have coordinates [2, – 1, – 3, 1] and [3, –2, 5, –4] respectively.

28. Using **Sweep out method** prove that the following set of vectors is linearly independent :

$\{(1, 3, 2), (1, -7, -8), (-3, -1, -4)\}$.

29. Find the rank and the basis of a given set of vectors $\{(3, 1, 5), (2, 2, 1), (4, 1, 9)\}$ by using **Sweep out method.**

Answer : Rank is 3

$$\text{Basis} = \{(1, \tfrac{1}{3}, \tfrac{5}{3}), (0, 1, -\tfrac{7}{4}), (0, 0, 1)\}.$$

30. Show that the set $S = \{(1, 0, 0), (1, 1, 0), (1, 1, 1)\}$ is a basis of $\mathbb{R}^3$ and hence find the coordinates of the vector (a, b, c) with respect to the above basis.

Answer : $(a - b, b - c, c)$.

31. Show that if $\{u, v, w\}$ is a basis of $\mathbb{R}^3$, then $\{u + v, v + w, w + u\}$ is a basis of $\mathbb{R}^3$.

32. If W_1 is a subspace of $\mathbb{R}^4$ generated by a set of vectors $S_1 = \{(1, 1, 0, -1), (1, 2, 3, 0), (2, 3, 3, -1)\}$ and W_2 is a subspace of $\mathbb{R}^4$ generated by the set of vectors

$S_2 = \{(1, 2, 2, -2), (2, 3, 2, -3), (1, 3, 4, -3)\}$.

find (i) $\dim (W_1 + W_2)$ (ii) $\dim (W_1 \cap W_2)$.

Answers : (i) $\dim (W_1 + W_2) = 3$. (ii) $\dim (W_1 \cap W_2) = 1$.

33. Prove that the vectors $v_1 = (1, 2, 0)$, $v_2 = (0, 5, 7)$, and $v_3 = (-1, 1, 3)$ form a basis of $\mathbb{R}^3$ and find the coordinates of the vector $v = (2, 3, 1)$. **[J. U. H. 1990, 91]**

Answer : $[v] = [0, 1, -2]$.

34. Let S be the following basis of the vector space W of 2×2 real symmetric matrices :

$$\left\{\begin{bmatrix} 1 & -1 \\ -1 & 2 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 4 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 3 & -2 \\ -2 & 1 \end{bmatrix}\right\}$$

Find the coordinate vector of the matrix $A \in W$ relative to the above basis where (a) $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -5 \\ -5 & 5 \end{bmatrix}$ and (b) $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 2 & 4 \end{bmatrix}$.

Answer : (a) $[2, -1, 1]$ (b) $[3, 1, -2]$.